Farmer, Brace & Co.'s Publications.

REV. P. BULLIONS' GRAMMARS AND CLASSICS.

1. Practical Lessons in English Grammar and Composition.
2. The Principles of English Grammar, (for Common Schools.)
3. Introduction to Analytical and Practical English Grammar
4. Analytical and Practical English Grammar for High Schools.
5. Exercises in Parsing and Analysis.
6. Spencer's Latin Lessons.
7. The Principles of Latin Grammar.
8. Latin Reader, with Introduction, &c., on a new plan.
9. Cæsar's Commentaries, with Introduction, Notes, Index, &c.
10. Sallust's Conspiracy of Cataline, &c. &c. with map.
11. Cicero's Orations, with map, notes, &c.
12. Latin Exercises.
13. First Lessons in Greek.
14. The Principles of Greek Grammar.
15. Greek Reader, with Introduction, &c.
16. Cooper's Virgil.

In constructing the above Grammars, the author has expressed the principles of the different languages as nearly as possible in the same words, and has arranged them in the same order. Thus the progress of the pupil is greatly facilitated, the study of one Grammar becomes an important aid in the study of another, an opportunity is afforded of seeing wherein they agree and wherein they differ, and a profitable exercise is furnished in comparative or general grammar.

"We are using Dr. Bullions' Grammars, English, Latin and Greek, and shall introduce all his works. We like them much."

(Prof.) Rev. C. Martin Hampden, Sydney College.

"We shall adopt Bullions' entire works."

Jerome Allen, Magnoketa Academy.

"I like much Dr. Bullions' whole series."

J. B. Wickersham.

"Send us 500 Bullions' Analytical English Grammar to introduce into the English Department of Antioch College. We use the Greek and Latin."

A. S. Dean.

A very large number of similar testimonials from all parts of the country are in the hands of the publishers.

Dr McCaul



GALLIA ANTIQUA.
Roman Miles
Meridian of
Londinum
BRITANNIA
CANTIUM
Venta
Fretum
Caleti
Juliobona
Rotomagus
Veloc
Lexovii
Noviomagus
Mediolanum
Aulerci Eburovices
Durocases
Carnutes
Autricu
Saii
Diablintes
Neodunum
Aulerci Cenomani
Suindunum
Cenabum
Aurelia
Vagoritum
Redones
Condate
Curiosolites
Alauna
Crociatonum
Unelli
Viducas
Arægenus
Baiocasses
Abrincatui
Ingena
Riduna
Sarnia
Cæsarea
Osismii
Brivates Portus
Uxantis
Sena
Vorganium
Corisopiti
Veneti
Dariorigum
Venetica Insulae
Vindilis
Namnetes
Condivicnum
Liger Fl.
Andes
Juliomagus
Fines
Cæsarodunum
Ambacia
Turones
Ratiatum
Segora
Pictones vel Pictavii
Bituriges
Limonum
Argentomag
Rauranum
Sermanicomagus
Pictonum Pr.
Uliarus I.
Aunedonacum
Santones
Augustoritum
Mediolanum
Tamnum
Lemovices
Icutisua
Noviomagus
Blavia
Vesunna
Petrocorii
Noviomagus
Boiates
Bituriges Vivisci
Trajectus
Uxellodunum
Cadurci
Garumna
Cossio
Nitiobriges
Aginnum
Divona
Cocosa
Sotiates
Elusa
Lactora
Elusates
Augusta
Aquæ Augustæ
Tarbelli
Beneharnum
Ausci
Talosa
Turba
Bigerriones
Sibusates
Lugdunum
Garumna
Easo
Imus Pyrenæus
Pyrenæi Montes
HISPANIA
OCEANUS GALLICUS
AQUITANIA
CELTICA
50
48
46
44
4
2
0


Batavi
Vahalis Fl
Noviomagus
Confluens
Batavorum Opp
Menapii
Calone
Asciburgium
Tenchtheri
Levaci
Toxandri
Colonia Agrippina
Eburones
Juliacum
Atuatuca
Antunnacum
Confluentes
Segui
Condrusi
Mosella Fl
Magontiacum
Mosa Fl
Arduenna
Augusta
Vangiones
Noviomagus
Mediolanum
Treveri
Bibrax
Suessiones
Verodunenses
Mediomatrici
Nemetes
Noviodunum
Durocortorum
Verodunum
Divodurum
Rhenus Fl
Meldi
Durocatalaunum
Catalauni
Tricasses
Matrona Fl
Tullum
Argentoratum
Melodunum
Sequana Fl
Leuci
Noviomagus
Augustobona
Mons Brisiacus
Agendicum
Didattium
Senones
Andematunnum
Brigantinus Lac
Lingones
Rauraci
Basilia
Alesia
Segobodium
Augusta
Turicum
Aballo
Dibio
Vesontio
Salodurum
Condate
Mandubii
Bibracte
Aventicum
Curia
Ædui
Decetia
Dubis Fl
HELVETII
Lausonius
Colonia Equestris
Boii
Matisco
Ambarri
Nantuates
Seduni
Octodurus
Veragri
Genava
Rodumna
Alpes Graiae
Augustonemetum
Gergovia
Forum Segus
Graioceli
Ocelum
Arverni
Allobroges
Brivas
Ursoli
Valentia
Vellavi
Dea
ITALIA
Gabali
Vocontii
Ebrodunum
Vasio
Segustero
Dinia
Arausio
Avenio
Forum Julii
Aquae Sextiae
Nemausus
Arelate
Massilia
Telo Martius
Stoechades Ins
Antipolis
Nicaea
Albium
GALLIA CISALPINA
GERMANIA
GALLICUS SINUS
Greenwich 4 6 8
50
48
46
44
4 Longitude East from 0 Greenwich 6

THE FIRST SIX BOOKS

OF

CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES

ON THE

GALLIC WAR,

ADAPTED TO

BULLIONS' LATIN GRAMMAR;

WITH AN INTRODUCTION, ON THE IDIOMS OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE; COPIOUS EXPLANATORY NOTES; AND AN INDEX OF PROPER NAMES, ETC.

REVISED AND CORRECTED.

By Rev. PETER BULLIONS, D. D.,

PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES IN THE ALBANY ACADEMY; AUTHOR OF THE SERIES OF GRAMMARS, GREEK, LATIN AND ENGLISH, ON THE SAME PLAN, &c., &c.

TWENTIETH EDITION.

NEW YORK:
PRATT, WOODFORD, FARMER, AND BRACE.
NO. 4, COURTLANDT-STREET.
1855.

PREFACE.

Cæsar is usually, and with great propriety, among the first books but into the hands of pupils commencing the study of Latin. In adapting a portion of this work, as well as the Latin Reader, to his Latin Grammar, the chief object of the Editor has been to lead the student, in the beginning of his course, to a minute and thorough acquaintance with the principles of the language. The text of Oudendorp has been generally followed. For the sake of convenience, and also because, with many, Cæsar is the first book studied after the Grammar, the Introduction on the Latin Idioms prefixed to the Latin Reader has been prefixed here also. To this as well as to the Grammar reference is constantly made at the foot of the page, for the purpose of explaining and illustrating principles as they occur; and if the pupil will only take the pains to examine these references as he proceeds, he will gradually, and with comparatively little labor, become so familiar with the grammatical structure and idioms of the language that his future progress will be much more rapid and pleasant than it can be without such a course of training.

To the text copious notes have been added, for the purpose of ex plaining more particularly some constructions of the language,—aiding the pupil in the selection of an appropriate term, or, in giving variety to his expression,—and, in some cases, of assisting him to apprehend more clearly the meaning of the author. These, together with the references to the Introduction and Grammar above speci fied, contain such and so much assistance as an industrious and intelligent pupil, at this stage of his progress, in preparing his lessons, may be supposed to need from his teacher; so that by a proper use of this work, both the teacher will be relieved in a great measure from that labor, and interruption of other duties which the ren-

dering of this assistance would require, and the pupil will have always at hand the assistance needed. These notes are taken chiefly from Dymock's Cæsar, Glasgow edition. A few have been added from other sources.

The Vocabulary or index at the end of the work is abridged from the same author, and contains various and important information especting the persons and places mentioned in the text, and also especting many things belonging to the antiquities and polity of the Romans and their method of conducting military operations. In this part several wood cuts have been introduced to aid the pupil in forming correct ideas of some of the engines and operations of war, as they existed in the days of Cæsar.

The map of Ancient Gaul has been prepared with special reference to this work, and exhibits the divisions of that country, with the names of nations, tribes, and towns, mentioned by Cæsar, as they existed in his time, so far as their position can be ascertained from authentic sources. The modern names of the same places will be found, generally, by consulting the Index.

A correct pronunciation as it regards quantity should be attended to from the beginning. In order to aid the pupil in forming correct habits in this too much neglected part of study, the quantity of the penult syllable has been marked in all words of more than two syllables, except where the penult vowel is followed by two consonants or a double consonant, in which case it is always long; or where the penult vowel is followed by another vowel, in which case it is almost always short; or when the syllable being common, that is, either short or long, there is no danger of the quantity being given wrong. In words of two syllables there is little danger of wrong pronunciation, and if, in words of more than two syllables, the quantity of the penult is correctly given, there is little danger of error elsewhere.

With a view to render the work as full as was deemed necessary, and at the same time to bring the price so low as to make it more generally accessible, only the first six books of the Commentaries on the Gallic war have been taken. These contain all that portion of this author usually read in academies and schools, and to have taken more would only have increased the size and the price of the book without any corresponding benefit to the purchaser.

The Editor takes this opportunity to renew his grateful acknowledgements to the many learned men, and instructors of youth, for

the favor with which his humble labors have been received by them, and for the many important suggestions communicated, by which he has been enabled to add essentially to their value and usefulness. A Greek Reader adapted to the Greek Grammar is now preparing, and will be published as speedily as possible.

Albany Academy,
February 26, 1845.

INTRODUCTION.

SENTENCES.

1. A sentence is such an assemblage of words as makes complete sense; as, *Man is mortal.*

2. Sentences are of two kinds, *simple* and *compound.*

3. A simple sentence contains but one subject and one verb; as, *Life is short. Time flies.*

4. A compound sentence contains two or more simple sentences combined; as, *Life, which is short, should be well employed.*

5. In the combining of words to form a sentence, observe carefully the following

General Principles of Syntax.

1. In every sentence there must be a *verb* in the indicative, subjunctive, imperative, or infinitive mood, and a *subject*, expressed or understood.

2. Every adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle, must have a substantive expressed or understood with which it agrees, § 98 and § 146.*

3. Every relative must have an antecedent or word to which it refers, and with which it agrees, § 99.

4. Every nominative has its own verb expressed or understood, of which it is the subject, §§ 100, 101, 102. Or is placed after the substantive verb in the predicate, § 103.

5. Every finite verb; i. e., every verb in the indicative, subjunctive or imperative mood, has its own nominative, expressed or understood, §§ 101, 102, and when the infinitive has a subject it is in the accusative, § 145. The infinitive without a subject does not form a sentence or proposition, § 143.

6. Every oblique case is governed by some word, expressed or understood, in the sentence of which it forms a part

* The references are to the sections in the Latin Grammar.

Resolution or Analysis.

Every simple sentence consists of two parts, the subject and the predicate, § 94, 6. 7. 8. In analyzing a sentence, it is necessary to distinguish between the *Grammatical* subject and predicate, and the *Logical* subject and predicate.

The *Grammatical subject* is the name or thing spoken of, without, or separated from, all modifying words or clauses, and which stands as the nominative to the verb, or the accusative before the infinitive.

The *Logical subject* is the same word in connection with the qualifying or restricting expressions, which go to make up the full and precise idea of the thing spoken of.

The *Grammatical predicate* is the word or words containing the simple affirmation made respecting the subject.

The *Logical predicate* is the grammatical predicate combined with all those words or expressions that modify or restrict it in any way; thus:

In the sentence, "An inordinate desire of admiration often produces a contemptible levity of deportment;" the Grammatical subject is "*desire;*" the Logical "*An inordinate desire of admiration.*" The Grammatical predicate is "*produces,*" the Logical, "*produces often a contemptible levity of deportment.*"

In Latin and English, the *general* arrangement of a sentence is the same, i. e., the sentence commonly begins with the subject and ends with the predicate. But the order of the words in each of these parts, is usually so different in Latin, from what it is in English, that one of the first difficulties a beginner has to encounter with a Latin sentence, is to know how "to take it in," or to arrange it in the proper order of the English. This is technically called *construing* or *giving the order.* To assist in this, some advantage may be found by carefully attending to the following

Directions for Beginners.

Direct. I. As all the other parts of a sentence depend upon the two leading parts, namely, the subject or NOMINATIVE, and the predicate or VERB; the first thing to be done with every sentence, is to find out these. In order to this,

1. Look for the leading verb, which is always in the present, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect, or future of the indicative, or in the imperative mood,* and usually at or near the end of the sentence.

2. Having found the verb, observe its number and person; this will aid in finding its nominative, which is a noun or pronoun in the same number and person with the verb, commonly before it, and near the beginning of the sentence, though not always so, § 151. R. I. with exceptions.

Direct. II. Having thus found the nominative and verb, and ascertained their meaning, the sentence may be resolved from the Latin into the English order, as follows:

1. Take the *Vocative*, *Exciting*, *Introductory*, or *connecting words*, if there are any.

2. The NOMINATIVE.

3. Words *limiting* or *explaining* it, i. e., words agreeing with it, or governed by it, or by one another, where they are found, till you come to the *verb*.

4. The VERB.

5. Words *limiting* or *explaining* it, i. e., words which modify it, are governed by it, or depend upon it.

6. Supply everywhere the words *understood*.

7. If the sentence be compound, take the parts of it severally as they depend one upon another, proceeding with each of them as above.

Direct. III. In arranging the words for translation, in the subordinate parts of a sentence, observe the following

Rules for construing.

I. An oblique case, or the infinitive mood, is put after the word that governs it.

Exc. The relative and interrogative are usually put before the governing word, unless that be a preposition; if it is, then after it.

II. An adjective, if no other word depend upon it or be coupled with it, is put *before* its substantive; but if another word depend upon it, or be governed by it, it is usually placed after it.

---

* All the other parts of the verb are generally used in subordinate clauses. So, also, is the pluperfect indicative. In oblique discourse, the leading verb is in the infinitive, § 141. Rule VI.

III. The participle is usually construed after its substantive, or the word with which it agrees.

IV. The relative and its clause, should, if possible, come immediately after the antecedent.

V. When a question is asked, the nominative comes after the verb; (in English between the auxiliary and the verb.) Interrogative words, however, such as *quis*, *quotus*, *quantus uter*, &c., *come before the verb.*

VI. After a transitive active verb, look for an accusative, and after a preposition, for an accusative or ablative, and arrange the words accordingly.

VII. Words in apposition must be construed as near together as possible.

VIII. Adverbs, adverbial phrases, prepositions with their cases, circumstances of time, place, cause, manner, instrument, &c., should be placed, in general, after the words which they modify. The case absolute commonly before them, and often first in the sentence.

IX. The words of different clauses must not be mixed together, but each clause translated by itself, in its order, according to its connection with, or dependence upon, those to which it is related.

X. Conjunctions should be placed before the last of two words, or sentences connected.

LATIN IDIOMS.*

PARTICULAR DIRECTIONS AND MODELS FOR TRANSLATION.

The following explanations and directions are intended chiefly for reference. But it will be of great advantage for the pupil to become familiar with them by going through them two or three times, *in course*, simultaneously with his reading lessons.

1. Before translating, every sentence should be read over till it can be read correctly and with ease, paying special attention to the quantity and pronunciation. The words should then be arranged according to the preceding general directions, and translated as they are arranged, separately or in clusters, as may be found convenient; always remembering to place adjectives and adjective pronouns with their substantives before translating. The sense and grammatical construction being thus ascertained, the translation may then be read over without the Latin, and due attention paid to the English idiom. The whole sentence, whether simple or compound, may then be analyzed as directed § 152, and last of all, every word parsed separately as directed, § 153.

2. In order to arrange and translate with ease, it is necessary to be familiar with, and readily to distinguish the different cases, genders, and numbers of nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and participles, and to translate them correctly and promptly, in these cases and numbers, &c.; and also to distinguish and correctly translate the verb in its various moods, tenses, numbers, persons, &c. This can be acquired only by continual practice and drilling, which should be kept up till the utmost readiness is attained.

3. The English prepositions used in translating the different cases in Latin, for the sake of convenience, may be called signs of those cases; and in translating these, the English *definite* or *indefinite* article is to be used as the sense requires. The signs of the cases are as follows:

Nom.	(No sign.)	Acc.	(No sign.)
Gen.	*Of.*	Voc.	*O.* or no sign.
Dat.	*To* or *for.*	Abl.	*With*, *from*, *in*, *by*, &c.

* A *Latin idiom*, strictly speaking, is a mode of speech peculiar to the Latin language. It is here used in a more extended sense, to denote a mode of speech different from the English, or which, if rendered word for word, and with the ordinary signs of cases, moods tenses, &c., would not make a correct English sentence.

In certain constructions the idiom of the English language requires the oblique cases in Latin to be translated in a manner different from the above. The chief of these constructions are the following:

4. *The Genitive.*

1. The genitive denoting the place where, R. XXXVI., is translated *at;* as, *Romæ*, "*At* Rome."

2. Denoting *price*, sometimes *for;* as, *Vendĭdit* *pluris*, "He sold it *for more;*" or without a sign; as, *Constĭtit* *pluris*, "It cost *more.*

5. *The Dative.*

1. After a verb of taking away, R. XXIX.; the dative is translated *from*; as, *Eripuit me morti*, "He rescued me *from death;*" *Eripĭtur morti*, "He is rescued *from death.*" R. XXXII–III. See § 123, Exp.

2. Denoting the doer after a passive verb, R. XXXIII., it is translated *by;* as, *Vix audior ulli*, "I am scarcely heard *by any one.*"

3. Denoting the possessor, R. XV., Obs. 1, it is translated as the genitive; as, *Ei in mentem venit*, "It came into the mind *to him*," i. e., *of him*, or into *his* mind.

4. After verbs signifying "to be present," *at*; as, *Adfuit precĭbus*, He was present *at prayers.* § 112, R. I.

6. *The Ablative.*

1. The ablative denoting a property or quality of another substantive, R. VII., is translated *of;* as, *Vir mirâ magnitudĭne*, "A man *of wonderful size.*"

2. The place where, R. XXXVI. Exc., commonly *at*, sometimes *in.*

3. After the comparative degree, § 120, R. XXIV., *than;* as, *Dulcior melle*, "Sweeter *than honey.*"

4. Denoting the material of which a thing is made, § 128, Obs. 2, *of;* as, *Factus ebŏre*, "Made *of ivory.*"

5. After *dignus* and words denoting origin; also after *opus and usus*, signifying need, *of;* as. *Dignus honōre*. "Worthy *of honor.*"

6. Denoting time how long, sometimes *in;* as, *Uno die fecit*, "He did it *in one day;*" sometimes without a sign; as, *Uno die abfuit*, "He was absent *one day.*"

7. Time when, *at*, *on;* as, *Solis occāsu*, "*At the setting* of the sun;" *Idĭbus Aprīlis*, "*On the ides* of April."

8. After verbs of depriving, § 125, *of;* as, *Eum veste spoliāvit*, "He stripped him *of his garment.*"

Cases without Signs.

7. When the genitive, dative, or ablative, is governed by an intransitive verb which is translated by a transitive verb in English, (§ 38, Obs. 4.,) or by an adjective denoting likeness, the sign of the case is omitted; as,

1. Gen.	*Miserēre mei*,	Pity *me.*
2. Dat.	*Præfuit exercĭtui*,	He commanded *the army.*
3. "	*Placuit regi*,	It pleased *the king.*
4. Abl.	*Utĭtur fraude*,	He uses *deceit.*
5. "	*Potĭtus est imperio*,	He obtained the *government.*
6. Dat.	*Simĭlis patri*,	Like his *father.*

Obs. But when rendered by an intransitive verb in English, the sign of the case must be used; as,

7. *Insidiantur nobis*, They lie in wait *for us.*

8. When a verb governs two datives, by R. XIX., the dative of the end or design is sometimes rendered without the sign; as,

1. *Est mihi voluptāti*, It is to me [for] *a pleasure;* i. e., It is [or brings] a pleasure to me.

9. The ablative absolute, R. LX., (See No. 109,) and frequently time how long, R. XL., are without the sign; as,

1. *Bello finĭto*, *The war* being ended.
2. *Sex mensĭbus abfuit*, He was absent *six months.*

10. When the ablative is governed by a preposition, the English of that preposition takes the place of the sign of the ablative, and no other will be used; thus,

1. *Ab exercĭtu*,	*From* the army.	4. *Cum dignitāte*,	*With* dignity.
2. *Ex urbe*,	*Out of* the city.	5. *Pro castris*,	*Before* the camp.
3. *In agro*,	*In* the field.	6. *Tenus pube*,	*Up to* the middle.

11. In order to specify more particularly, the English idiom sometimes requires the possessive pronouns, *my*, *thy*, *his*, *her*, *its*, *our*, *your their*, (not expressed in Latin unless contrasted with others,) to be supplied before a noun, and espe-

cially if they refer to the subject of the sentence. The sense will shew when this is to be done and what pronoun is to be used; as,

1. *Filius simĭlis patri,*	A son like *his* father.
2. *Reverēre parentes,*	Reverence *your* parents.

12. Nouns in apposition, (§ 97, R. I.,) must be brought as near together as possible, and the sign of the case, when used, prefixed to the first only; as,

1 Nom. *Cicĕro Orātor,*	Cicero the orator.
2. Gen. *Cicerōnis oratōris,*	*Of* Cicero the orator.
3. Dat. *Cicerōni oratōri,*	*To* Cicero the orator,
4. Abl. *Cicerōne oratōre,*	*With* Cicero the orator.

13. The noun in apposition is sometimes connected with the noun before it by the words *as*, *being*, &c.; as,

1. *Misit* me comĭtem,	He sent *me as a companion.*
2. *Hic puer venit,*	*He* came, *when* [or *being*] *a boy.*

Adjectives and Substantives.

14. In translating an adjective or adjective pronoun and a substantive together, the adjective is commonly placed first, and the sign of the case is prefixed to it, and not to the noun, § 98, R. II.; as,

1. Nom. *Altus mons,*	A high mountain.
2. Gen. *Alti montis,*	Of a high mountain.
3. Dat. *Alto monti,*	To [for] a high mountain.
4. Abl. *Alto monte,*	With a high mountain.

15. When two or more adjectives, coupled by a conjunction belong to one substantive, they may be placed either before or after it; as,

1. *Jupĭter optĭmus et maxĭmus,*	Jupiter the best and greatest; *or*
Optĭmus et maxĭmus Jupĭter,	The best and greatest Jupiter.
2. *Viri sapientis et docti,*	Of a man wise and learned; *or*
Sapientis et docti viri,	Of a wise and learned man.

16. The adjective must be placed after its substantive when the former has a negative joined with it, or another word in the sentence governed by it, or dependent upon it. So also *solus*; as,

1. *Dux perĭtus belli,*	A general skilled in war.
2. *Filius simĭlis patri,*	A son like his father.
3. *Poēta dignus honōre,*	A poet worthy of honor
4. *Homĭnes soli sapiunt,*	Men alone are wise.
5. *Avis tam parum decōra,*	A bird so little beautiful.
6. *Littŏre non molli neque arenōso,*	With a shore not soft nor sandy.

17. The adjectives *primus*, *medius*, *ultĭmus*, *extrēmus*, *infĭmus*, *imus*, *summus*, *suprēmus*, *relĭquus*, *ceter*, or *cetĕrus*, and some others describing a *part* of an object, are translated as substantives, with the sign of the case prefixed, and *of* before the substantive following, § 98, Obs. 9; as

1. *Mediâ nocte*,	*In the middle of* the night.
2. *Ad summum montem*,	*To the top of* the mountain.

18, When these adjectives (No. 17,) describe the whole and not a part only, they are translated as No. 11.; as,

Summum bonum,	The chief good.
Suprēmus dies,	The last day.

19. An adjective without a substantive usually has a substantive understood, but obvious from the connexion, § 98, Obs. 5. Masculine adjectives, (if plural,) commonly agree with *homĭnes*, or, if possessives, with *amīci*, *cives*, or *milĭtes*, understood; and neuters, with *factum*, *negotium*, *verbum*, *tempus*, &c.; as,

1. *Boni (homĭnes) sunt rari*,	Good men are rare,
2. *Cæsar misit suos (milĭtes,)*	Cæsar sent his soldiers.
3. *Cocles transnāvit ad suos (cives,)*	Cocles swam over to his fellow-citizens.
4. *Labor vincit omnia (negotia)*	Labor overcomes all things.
5. *In postĕrum (tempus,)*	In time to come,—for the future.
6. *In eo (loco) ut.*	In such a situation that.

20. Adjectives commonly used without a substantive, (but still belonging to a substantive understood,) may be regarded as substantives. They are such as *mortāles*, *boni*, *mali*, *supĕri*, *infĕri*, *Græcus*, *Romānus*, &c. (See § 98, Obs. 5,); as,

1. *Mali odērunt bonos*,	*The wicked* hate *the good.*
2. *Græcos Romāni vicĕrunt*,	*The Romans* conquered *the Greeks.*

21. Adjective words when partitives, or used partitively, take the gender of the noun expressing the whole, and govern it in the genitive plural, (if a collective noun, in the genitive singular,) § 107, Rule X. In this case verbs and adjectives agree with the partitive as if it were a noun; as,

1. *Alĭquis philosophōrum dixit*,	*Some one of the philosophers* has said.
2. *Una musārum veniet*,	*One of the muses* will come
3. *Multi nobilium juvĕnum*,	*Many noble young men.*

22. The comparative degree not followed by an ablative, or the conjunction *quam*, (than) is usually translated by the positive with *too* or *rather* prefixed. For explanation see § 120, Obs. 5.; as,

1. *Iracundior est*, (scil. *æquo*,)	He is *too* (or *rather*) *passionate*
2. *Ægrius ferēbat*,	He took it *rather ill*.
3. *Altius volāvit*,	He flew *too high*.

Obs. In a comparison, *eò* or *tanto* with a comparative in one clause, and *quò* or *quanto* in the other, may be rendered "the;" (See No. 44. 7. 8.) as,

4 *Quò plures, eò feliciōres*,	*The* more *the* happier.

23. The superlative degree expressing comparison, is usually preceded by the article *the* in English, (§ 25,) as,

1. *Doctissĭmus Romanōrum*,	*The most learned* of the Romans.
2. *Fortissĭmus miles in exercĭtu*,	*The bravest* soldier in the army.

24. When the superlative does not express comparison, but only eminence or distinction, it is translated with the article *a* or *an* prefixed in the singular, and without an article in the plural; or by the positive, with *very*, *eminently*, &c., prefixed, (§ 25,); as,

1. *Homo doctissĭmus.*	*A* most learned (or *a very learned*) man.
2. *Homĭnes doctissĭmi*,	Most learned (or *very learned*) men.

25. *Alius* repeated with a different word in the same clause, renders that clause double, and requires it to be translated as in the following examples:

1. *Alius aliâ viâ*,	One by one way, another by another.
2. *Aliud aliis vidētur*,	One thing seems good to some, another to others, i. e. Some think one thing, and some another. (See other varieties. § 98.Obs. 11.)

The same usage occurs with words derived from *alius*. See Gr. § 98, Obs. 12.

26. The distributive numeral adjectives are usually translated by the cardinal number indicated, with "each," or "to each," annexed; sometimes by repeating the cardinal thus, "one by one;" "two by two," &c., § 24, 11; as,

1. *Consŭles binas naves habēbant*,	The consuls had *each two* ships, or, had *two* ships *each*.
2. *Quâ singŭli carri ducerentur.*	Where wagons could be led *one by one*.
3. *Tigna bina*,	Beams *two by two*, or in pairs.
4. *Singŭlis singŭlas partes destribuit æquāles*	He distributed equal parts, *one to each*.
5. *Singŭlis mensĭbus hoc fecit*,	This he did *every* (or *each*) *month*.
6. *Plures singŭli uxōres habent*,	They have *each* many wives.

Pronouns.

27. 1st. The adjective pronoun, *hic*, *hæc*, *hoc*, with a noun following, is used as an adjective, and means, in the singular, "*this*,"—in the plural, "*these*."—*Ille*, *illa*, *illud*,—*is*, *ea*, *id*,—*iste*, *ista*, *istud*, with a noun, in the singular, mean "*that*,"—in the plural, "*those*."

2d. Without a noun following they are all used substantively, and mean, in the singular, *he*, *she*, *it*; in the plural, *they*; thus,

1. *Hic vir*, This man.
2. *Illa femĭna*, That woman.
3. *Ea urbs*, That city.
4. *Hic fecit*, *He* did it.
5. *Illa vēnit*, *She* came.
6. *Ea* (Dido) *condĭdit eam*, *She* built *it*, (Carthage.)

Obs. In sentences containing an enumeration of particulars, the same pronoun is sometimes used in successive clauses, but they require to be translated differently, (§ 98, Obs. 12,); thus,

7. *Hic*, 8. *Is*, 9. *Ille*, 10. *Alter*,	"one," "the one."	—— *hic*, —— *is*, —— *ille*, —— *alter*,	"another," "the other."

When antithesis or contrast is stated, *hic* is translated "this," and refers to the nearer antecedent, *ille*, "that," and refers to the more distant; as,

11. *Hic minor natu est, ille major*, *This* is the younger, *that*, the older.

28. *Is*, *ea*, *id*, followed by *ut*, or the relative, *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, in the next clause, means "*such*," and implies comparison. The relative after it may be translated, *that I*, *that thou*, *that he*, *that they*, &c., according as the antecedent requires, or it may be translated *as*, and its verb by the infinitive (§ 31, Obs. 2.); thus,

1. *Is homo erat ut, &c.*, He was *such* a man that, &c.
2. *Neque is sum qui terrear*, I am not *such that* I may be frightened. Or better thus, I am not *such a one as* to be frightened.

Obs. The adverb *eò* with *ut* following it means "so far," "to such a degree," "to such a point," "in such a state;" as,

3 *Eò pervēnit ut*, "He came *so far*, (i. e. made such progress,) that;"

Possessive Pronouns.

29. The possessive pronoun is equivalent in meaning to the genitive of the substantive pronoun, and may often be so translated; as,

1. *Beneficio s u o populīque Romāni,*	By the kindness *of himself* and of the Roman people.
2. *Cum m e a nemo scripta legat, vulgo recitāre timentis,*	Since no one reads the writings *of me*, fearing to recite them publicly.

30. The possessives, *suus*, *sua*, *suum*, in Latin, agrees in gender, number, and case, with the noun denoting the *object possessed*, but in English must be translated by a pronoun denoting the *possessor*; thus,

1. *Pater dilĭgit s u o s libĕros,*	A father loves *his* children.
2. *Parentes dilĭgunt s u a m sobŏlem,*	Parents love *their* offspring.
3. *Frater dilĭgit s u a m sorōrem,*	A brother loves *his* sister.
4. *Soror dilĭgit s u u m fratrem,*	A sister loves *her* brother.

Obs. In the first sentence, "*suos*," agrees with "*libĕros*," but must be translated "*his*," denoting "*pater*," the possessor. In the second, *suam*, though singular, to agree with *sobŏlem*, must be translated "*their*," so as to denote the possessors, "*parentes*," &c.

Usage of Sui, Suus;—Ille, Iste, Hic, Is.

31. The reflexive, *sui*, and its possessive, *suus*, generally refer to the subject of the leading verb* in the sentence; *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, never refer to that subject, but to some other person or thing spoken of; thus,

1. *C a t o occĭdit s e,*	*Cato* killed *himself*.
2. *P a t e r dilĭgit s u o s libĕros,*	A *father* loves *his* (own) children.
3. *P a r e n t e s dilĭgunt s u a m sobŏlem,*	*Parents* love *their* (own) offspring.
4. *Dicit s e valēre,*	*He* says that *he* is well.

Obs. In the second and third sentence, *suos*, "his," and *suam*, "their," referring to some other person than *pater* or *parentes*, would be made by the genitive of *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*. In the first and fourth, *se* would be made *eum*. For the difference between these words usually translated "he," see Gr. § 28, Obs. 3.

* See Gr. § 28, Obs. 3, 1st., with note.

Note. If a second subject and verb be introduced, the reflexive governed by that verb will belong to the new subject, unless the whole clause refer to the words, wishes, or actions, of the first subject; as,

5. *Scipio civitatĭbus Italiæ reddĭdit omnia quæ s u a recognoscēbant,*	Scipio restored to the States of Italy, all the things which they recognised as *their own.*

Usage of Ipse.

32. *Ipse* renders the word with which it is joined emphatic, whether expressed or understood, and is equal to the English, *myself, thyself, himself, themselves,* &c., annexed to it; sometimes to the word *very* prefixed. With *numbers* it denotes exactness, and sometimes it is used by itself as a reflexive instead of *sui,* § 28, Obs. 3, 2d.; as,

1. *I p s e faciam,* (i. e. *ego ipse,*)	I will do it *myself.*
2. *I p s e fruĕris otio,* (i. e. *tu ipse,*)	Thou *thyself* enjoyest ease.
3. *Jacŭlo cadit i p s e,* (i. e. *ille ipse,*)	He *himself* falls by a dart.
4. *Cæsar i p s e vēnit,*	Cæsar *himself* came.
5. *Tempus i p s u m convēnit,*	The *very* time was agreed on.
6. *Ad i p s a s portas,*	To the *very* gates.
7. *Decem i p s i dies,*	Ten *whole* days.
8. *Precātus est ut i p s u m liberāret,*	He begged that he would liberate *him.*
9. *Donum i p s i datum,*	A present given *to him.*

33. When joined with the personal pronouns, used in a reflexive sense, and in an oblique case, it sometimes agrees with them in case, but more commonly with the subject of the verb in the nominative or accusative. It is always, however, to be translated with the oblique case, to which it adds the force of the word *self,* or simply of emphasis; thus,

1. *Se ipse interfēcit* (or *se ipsum,*)	He slew him*self.*
1. *Nosce te i p s e* (or *te i p s u m,*)	Know thy*self.*
2. *Mihi i p s e* (or *i p s i,*) *faveo,*	I favor my*self.*
3. *Agam per me i p s e,*	I will do it my*self.*
4. *Virtus est per se i p s a laudabĭlis,*	Virtue is to be praised for it*self.*
5. *Se i p s o s omnes natūrâ dilĭgunt.*	All men naturally love them*selves.*

RELATIVE AND ANTECEDENT.

General Principle.

34. Every sentence containing a relative and its antecedent, is a compound sentence, of which the relative with its

clause forms one of the parts, and is used further to describe or limit its antecedent word in the other part. That word may be the subject, or belong to the predicate, or to some circumstance connected with either. But to whichsoever of these it belongs, the relative and its clause must all be translated *together*, and in immediate connexion with its antecedent word. Hence the following

General Rule of Arrangement.

35. The relative with its clause should be placed immediately after, or as near as possible to the antecedent, and, unless unavoidable, another substantive should not come between them; thus,

Latin Arrangement.

1. *Urbi immĭnet mons, qui ad Arcadiam procurrit.* Here "*qui*" with its clause, "*ad Arcadiam procurrit,*" belongs to, and further describes the antecedent subject, "*mons.*" As then the subject with all that belongs to it must be taken before the verb, (Gr. § 152, Direct. 2, 2d, 3d,) the above sentence should be arranged for translation, thus: *Mons qui procurrit ad Arcadiam, immĭnet urbi,* A *mountain, which* extends to Arcadia, hangs over the city.

Or, the English order may be inverted, thus: *Urbi imminet mons, qui procurrit ad Arcadiam,* Over the city hangs a *mountain, which,* &c.

But not, *Mons immĭnet urbi, qui,* &c., because this arrangement would place "*urbi*" between the antecedent, "*mons,*" and the relative, "*qui,*" and so lead to a false translation. The following sentence also affords an example:

2. *Proxĭme urbem Eurōtas fluvius delabĭtur, ad cujus ripas Spartāni se exercēre solēbant.* Arrange, *Proxĭme urbem delabĭtur,* &c., Close to the city flows; or, *Eurōtas fluvius, ad cujus ripas,* &c.

36. When another noun necessarily comes between the relative and its antecedent, there is more danger of ambiguity in English than in Latin, as the gender and number of the Latin relative will generally direct to the proper antecedent, to which in English we are directed chiefly by the

sense. The following sentence affords an example of this kind: *Ad Byzantium fugit, oppĭdum naturâ munītum et arte, quod copiâ abundat.*

37. The antecedent in Latin is often understood when the English idiom requires it to be supplied. It is generally understood, and should be supplied in the proper case:

1st. When it is intentionally left indefinite, or is obvious from the gender and number of the relative, and the connexion in which it stands, as in No. 19; as,

1. *Sunt (homĭnes) quos juvat,*	There are *men* whom it delights
2. *Hic est (id) quod quærĭmus,*	*That* which we seek is here.
" *Hic sunt, (ea) quæ quærĭmus*	*Those* things which we seek are here.
3. *(Is) qui cito dat, bis dat,*	*(He)* who gives promptly, gives twice.

Note. In the preceding sentences the antecedent supplied is in parentheses.

2d. The antecedent is usually understood before the relative, when it is expressed after it, and in the same case, (§ 99, Obs. 1, 2d.); as,

4. *(Pars) quæ pars terrēna fuit,*	The *part* which was earthy.
5. *(Locus) in quem locum venit,*	The *place* into which he came.
" *Apud Actium (locum) qui locus est, &c.*	At Actium a *place* which is, &c.

Note. 1. When the antecedent word is expressed in the relative clause, as in the examples Nos. 4, and 5, or is repeated, as in the following, No. 6, (§ 99, Obs. 1, 3d.,) it is omitted in translating; as,

6 *Erant omnīno duo itinĕra, quibus itinerĭbus domo exīre possent,*	There were only two ways by which they could go from home.

Note 2. *Quisquis, quidquid, or quicquid,* (and also *quicunque, quæcunque, quodcunque,*) "whoever, whatever," used as a relative without an antecedent, includes a general or indefinite antecedent, in such case as the construction requires, and is equivalent to *omnis,* or *quivis qui,*—*omne,* or *quidvis quod*; as,

7. *Fortūnam quæcunque* (i. e. *quamvis fortūnam quæ*) *accĭdat experiantur,*	They would hazard *whatever* fortune (i. e. *any* fortune *which*) might happen.
8. *Quidquid tetigĕrat aurum fiĕbat,*	*Whatever* (i. e. *every thing which*) he had touched became gold.

Note 3. When the antecedent is a proposition, or clause of a sentence, § 99, Exp., the relative is put in the neuter gender, and sometimes has *id* before it referring to the same clause; as,

9. *Servi, quod* (or *id quod*) *nunquam ante factum, manumissi et milites facti sunt;*	The slaves, *which* never had been done before, were set free and made soldiers.

38. In the beginning of a sentence, a relative, with or without *quum*, or other conjunctive term, and referring to some word, clause, or circumstance, in a preceding sentence, usually has the antecedent word repeated, or, if evident, understood; and instead of *who* or *which*, may be rendered *this*, *that*, *these*, *those*, or, *and this*, *and that*, &c., according as the closeness of the connexion may require, (§ 99, Obs. 8,); as,

1. *Quæ urbs quum infestarētur,*	*And* since (or because) *this* city was infested.
" *Qui legāti quum missi essent,*	When *these* ambassadors had been sent.
2. *Quæ contentio cuncta permiscuit,*	*This* contention threw all things into confusion.
3. *Quibus nunciis acceptis,*	*These* tidings being received.
4. *Quod quum ille cernĕret,*	*And* when he saw *this*.
5. *Quo facto,*	*This* being done (or accomplished)
6. *Quæ dum omnia contemplabantur,*	*And* while they were contemplating all *these* things.
7. *Quod quum impetrâsset,*	*And* when he had obtained *this*.
8. *A quo consilio quum revocāret.*	When he recalled him from *this* design.
9. *Quo ictu ille extinctus est,*	*And* by *this* blow he was killed.

Note. To this construction belongs *quod*, (apparently for *propter* or *ad quod*, § 128,) in the beginning of a sentence, referring to something previously stated, and meaning, "*on account of*, *with respect to*, or *as to*, THIS THING;" as,

10. *Quod diis gratias habeo,*	*On account of this, (for this thing, wherefore,)* I give thanks to the gods.
11. *Quod dicĕret se ventūrum,*	*As to what* (as to that thing which) he said, that he would come.

39. When the antecedent word is not repeated, as in No. 38, the relative, with or without *quum*, or other conjunctive term, may be rendered *he*, *she*, *it*, *they*, or *and he*, *and she*, &c., according as the antecedent word requires, (§ 99, Obs. 8,); as,

1. *Q u i quum admitterĕret,*	*And* when *he* admitted.
2. *Q u æ quum vidisset,*	*And* when *she* had seen.
Q u æ quum visa esset,	When *she* had been (*or* was) seen.
3. *Q u a m quum dare nollet,*	*And* when he would not give *it*
4. *Q u i b u s quum occurrisset,*	When he had met *them.*
5. *Q u i* (*quæ;* pl. *qui, quæ,*) *respondit,*	*And he,* (*she, they*) replied.
6. *Q u i* (or *quæ*) *quum adessent.*	*And* when *they* were present.
7. *Q u e m Meleāger interfēcit,*	*And* Meleager slew *him.*
8. *Q u a m quum ducĕret,*	*And* when he was leading *her.*
9. *Ad q u e m quum venissent,*	*And* when they had come to *him.*
10. *Q u e m ut vidit,*	As soon as, (or when) he saw *him.*

40. When the relative in any case is followed by the subjunctive mood, and the two clauses, viz: the antecedent and relative, involve a *comparison;* or the latter expresses the *purpose, object,* or *design,* of something expressed by the former, the relative is better translated by the conjunction *that* and the personal pronoun; thus, *that I, that thou, that he, that they,* &c., as the antecedent word may require, (See Gr. § 141, R. II. and Explanation,);

1. *Missus sum q u i te adducĕrem,*	I have been sent *that I* might bring you.
2. *Neque is q u i facias id,*	You are not such a person *that you* should do that.
3. *Quis est tam lynceus q u i, &c.*	Who is so sharp sighted *that he.*
4. *Misit legātos q u i cognoscĕrent,*	He sent ambassadors *that they* might find out.
5. *Fruges mandāvit q u a s dissemināret,*	She gave him fruits *that* he might scatter *them.*

41. In the expressions, *quippe qui, ut qui, utpŏte qui,* the relative is better translated by the personal pronoun which represents the antecedent, (§ 141, Obs. 4,); as,

1. *Quippe q u i nunquam legĕrim,*	For, (or because) *I* have never read them.

42. After *dignus, indignus, idoneus,* and the like, in the predicate, the relative and subjunctive mood may be rendered by the infinitive, (§ 141, Obs. 2. 1st.); as,

1. *Dignus q u i a m ē t u r ,*	Worthy *to be loved.*
2. *Si dignum q u i n u m e r ē t u r creari̇tis,*	If you shall elect a person worthy *to be reckoned,* &c.

43. Sometimes the natural order of the sentence is inverted, so that the relative clause stands first and the antecedent follows it. In translating, the antecedent clause should generally be placed first; as,

1. *Qui bonis non recte utĭtur, ei bona mala fiunt,*	Good things become evil to *him who* does not use good things well.
2. *Qui cito dat, (is) bis dat,*	*He* gives twice *who* gives quickly

Correlative Adjectives.

44. The demonstratives, *tot*, so many, and *totidem*, just so many; *tantus*, as great, so great, as much, so much; *talis*, such; are followed by their relatives, *quot*, *quantus*, *qualis*, signifying *as*, to denote comparison; as,

1. *Tot homĭnes quot,*	*As many* men *as.*
2. *Totĭdem naves quot,*	*Just so many* ships *as*
3. *Tantus exercĭtus quantus,*	*As great* (or *so great*) an army *as.*
4. *Talis homo qualis,*	*Such* a man *as.*

So also the correlative adverbs.

5. *Toties*	——	*quoties,*	As often	——	as.
6. *Tam*	——	*quam,*	So	——	as.
7. *Eò*	——	*quò*	By so much	——	as.
8. *Tanto*	——	*quanto,*	By so much	——	as; or
			In proportion	——	as.

45. Instead of the relative in such sentences, the conjunctions *ac*, *atque*, (§ 149, Obs. 6,) *ut*, and the relative *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, are sometimes used and may generally be translated, "as," or "that."

1. *Honos talis paucis est delātus ac mihi,*	Such honor has been bestowed upon few persons, *as* upon me.
2. *Cum totĭdem navĭbus atque profectus erat, rediit,*	He returned with just as many ships *as* he had departed with.
3. *Nulla est tanta vis quæ non frangi possit,*	No power is so great *as* (or, *that it*) cannot be broken.

46. When the relative only is expressed in sentences implying comparison, the *demonstrative* (No. 44,) must be supplied and the sentence translated as above; as,

1. *Crocodīlus parit (tanta) ova quanta ansĕres,*	The crocodile lays (*as large*) eggs *as* geese lay.
2. *(Tot) millia quot unquam venēre Mycēnis,*	*As many* thousands *as* ever came from Mycenæ.

47. Sometimes, as in No. 43, the natural order of the sentence is inverted, so that the relative clause stands first and the antecedent follows it. In translating, the antecedent clause should be placed first; as,

1. *Quot homĭnes tot causæ,* arrange *Tot causæ quot homĭnes,*	*As* many causes *as* there are men.

48. The relatives, *quot*, *quoties*, *quantus*, *qualis*, used *interrogatively*, or *in an exclamation*, or *indefinitely*, in the indirect interrogation, and without implying comparison, have no reference to an antecedent term either expressed or understood, and are translated respectively, "how many," "how often," "how great," or "how much," "what," or "of what kind;" as,

1. *Inter. Quot annos habet?*	*How many* years has he? i. e. how old is he?
2. *Indef. Nescio quot,*	I know not *how many.*
3. *Excl. Cum quantâ gravitāte!*	With *how much* gravity.
4. *Indef. Doce quales sint,*	Tell us *of what kind* they are.

THE VERB AND ITS SUBJECT.

General Principle.

49. Every finite verb (§ 95, 5,) has its own subject, expressed or understood, in the nominative case.

Obs. The subject of the verb is the person or thing spoken of, and may be a *noun*, a *pronoun*, a *verb in the infinitive mood*, a *clause of a sentence*, or any thing which, however expressed, is the subject of thought or speech. (§ 101, Exp.)

General Rule of Arrangement.

50. The subject and all the words agreeing with it, governed by it, connected with it, or dependent upon it, must be arranged in the order of their connection and dependence, and translated before the verb.

1. *Canis latrat,*	*The dog* barks.
2. *Ego Scribo,*	*I* write.
3. *Ludĕre est jucundum,*	*To play* is pleasant.
4. *Dulce est pro patriâ mori,*	*To die for one's country* is sweet.
5. *Totus Græcōrum exercĭtus Aulĭde convenĕrat,*	*The whole army of the Greeks* had assembled at Aulis.
6. *Vir sapit qui pauca loquĭtur,*	*The man who speaks little* is wise.

51. When the subject of a verb is the infinitive, either alone or with its subject; or a clause of a sentence, connected by *ut*, *quod*, or other conjunctive term, the English pronoun, *it*, is put with the verb referring to that infinitive or clause following it, and which is its proper subject; as,

1. *Facĭle est jubēre,*	*It* is easy to command.
2. *Nuntiātum est classem devinci,*	*It* was announced that the fleet was conquered.
3. *Semper accĭdit ut absis*	*It* always happens that you are absent.
4. *Quî fit ut metuas,*	How happens *it* that you fear.
5. *Nunquam Romānis placuisse imperatōrem a suis militĭbus interfĭci,*	That *it* never had pleased the Romans, *that a commander should be killed by his own soldiers.*

52. The verb must always be translated in its proper tense, and in the same person and number with its nominative. (See paradigms of the verb, §§ 54–70.) But when it has two or more nouns or pronouns in the singular, taken together, or a collective noun expressing many as individuals, as its subject, the verb must be translated in the plural; as,

1. *Et pater et mater venērunt,*	Both his father and mother *have come.*
2. *Turba quoquoversum ruunt,*	The crowd *rush* in every direction.

53. The nominative to a verb in the first or second person, being evident from the termination, is seldom expressed in Latin; but must be supplied in translating; as,

1. *Scribo,*	*I* write.	3. *Scribĭmus,*	*We* write.
2. *Legis,*	*Thou* readest.	4. *Legĭtis,*	*You* read.

54. When the verb in the third person has no nominative expressed, it refers to some noun or pronoun evident from the connection; and, both in translating and parsing, the pronoun *ille*, or *is*, in the *nominative* case, and in the *gender* and *number* of the noun or pronoun referred to, must be supplied; as,

1. (*Ille*) *scribit,* (He) writes. 2. (*Illi*) *scribunt,* (They) write.

55. When the same word is the subject of several verbs closely connected in the same construction, it is expressed with the first and understood to the rest, both in Latin and English; thus,

1. *Cæsar venit, vidit, et vicit,*	*Cæsar* came, saw, and conquered.
2. *Dicĭtur Cæsărem venisse, vidisse, et vicisse,*	It is said that *Cæsar* came, saw, and conquered.

Interrogative Sentences.

56. A question is made in Latin in four different ways, as follows:

1st. By an interrogative pronoun; as, *Quis venit?* "*Who* comes?" *Quem misit?* "*Whom* did he send?" *Cujus pecus hoc?* "*Whose* flock is this?" &c.

2d. By an interrogative adverb; as, *Unde venit?* "*Whence* came he?" *Cur venit?* "*Why* did he come?"

3d. By the interrogative particles, *num*, *an*, and the enclitic, *ne*. Thus used these particles have no corresponding English word in the translation; they merely indicate a question; as, *Num venit*, or *an venit*, or *venitne?* "Has he come?" *Num vidētur?* "Does it seem?"

4th. By simply placing an interrogation mark at the end of the question; as, *Vis me hoc facere?* "Do you wish me to do this?"

57. The interrogative pronoun or adverb, in all cases, translated before the verb; as,

1. *Quis fecit?*	*Who* did it? or *who* has done it?
2. *Quem misit?*	*Whom* did he send?
3. *Quanto constĭtit?*	*How much* did it cost?
4. *Qualis fuit?*	*What sort of* a man was he?

This is true also of the indirect question, i. e., when the substance of a question is stated but not in the interrogative form; as,

5. *Nescio quanto constitĕrit*,	I know not *how much* it cost.
6. *Docuit quam firma res esset concordia*,	He shewed them *how* firm a thing agreement was.

Note. When the verb in the direct or indirect question comes under § 103, R. V., the predicate, or nominative *after* the verb, is translated *first*, and the subject or nominative, in the direct question after the verb, as in Ex. 4; but in the indirect, before it, as in Ex. 6. Thus, in Ex. 4, *qualis* is the predicate, and *ille* understood, the subject; in Ex. 6, *res* is the predicate, and *concordia* the subject.

58. In all forms of interrogation not made by an interrogative pronoun, as in No. 57, the nominative or subject is translated *after the verb* in English, in the simple forms, and *after the first auxiliary* in the compound forms; as,

1. *Videsne?*	Seest *thou?* or dost *thou* see?
2. *An venisti?*	Hast *thou* come? or have *you* come?
3. *Scribetne?*	Will *he* write?
4. *Num ibĭmus?*	Shall *we* go?
5 *Nonne fecit?*	Has *he* not done (it?)

6. *An egisset melius?*	Would *he* have done better?
7. *Nosne alēmus?*	Shall *we* support?
8 *Nonne Dei est?*	Does *it* not belong to God?
9. *Iste est frater?*	Is *that* your brother?

59. When a sentence not interrogative is introduced by *nec* or *neque*, not followed by a corresponding conjunction, (See No. 124,) in a connected clause, the verb will be translated by an auxiliary, and the English nominative will stand after the first auxiliary; as,

1. *Neque hoc intellĭgo,*	Neither do *I* understand this.
2. *Nec venisset,*	Neither would *he* have come.
3. *Nec adeptus sum,*	Nor have *I* attained.

The object of the verb.

60. In translating, the object of a transitive verb in the accusative is arranged after the verb, and as near to it as possible. That object may be a *noun*, a *pronoun*, an *infinitive mood*, or *a clause of a sentence*, (§ 116, Exp.); as,

1. *Romŭlus condĭdit urbem,*	Romulus built a *city*.
2. *Vocāvit eam Romam,*	He called *it* Rome.
3. *Disce dicĕre vera,*	Learn to *speak the truth*.
4. *Obtŭlit ut captīvos redimĕrent,*	He offered *that they should redeem the captives*.

61. The interrogative or relative pronoun is always translated *before* the verb that governs it; as,

1. *Quem mittēmus?*	*Whom* shall we send?
2. *Cui dedisti?*	To *whom* did ye give it?
3. *Deus quem colĭmus,*	God *whom* we worship.
4. *Cui omnia debēmus,*	To *whom* we owe all things.

62. When a transitive verb governs two cases, the immediate object in the accusative, according to the natural order, is usually translated first, and after that the remote object in the genitive, § 122; dative, § 123; accusative, § 124; or ablative, § 125; as,

1. *Arguit me furti,*	He accuses *me* of theft.
2. *Compăro Virgilium Homēro,*	I compare *Virgil* to Homer.
3. *Poscĭmus te pacem,*	We beg *peace* of thee.
4. *Onĕrat naves auro,*	He loads the *ships* with gold.

Note. The accusative of the person after verbs of asking, is translated by *of*, or *from*; as,

5. *Pyrrhum auxilium poposcērunt,*	They demanded aid *of* (or *from*) Pyrrhus.

63. But when the remote object is a *relative*, or when the immediate object is an *infinitive*, or a clause of a sentence, or a noun further described by other words, the remote object must be translated first; as,

1. *Cui librum dedĭmŭs*,	*To whom* we gave the book.
2. *Da mihi fallĕre*,	Give *me* to deceive.
" *Dixit ei confiteor meum peccatum*,	He said *to him*, I confess my fault
3. *Eum rogavērunt, ut ipsos defendĕret*,	They entreated *him*, that he would defend them.
4. *Docuit illos quam firma esset*,	He shewed *them* how firm it was.
5. *Civitātem, antea solicitātam, armis ornat*,	He supplies *with arms* the city already excited.

64. When a verb, which in the active voice governs two cases, is used in the passive form, that which was the immediate object in the accusative, becomes the subject in the nominative, and the remote object in its own case immediately follows the verb. Thus, the examples No. 62, may be arranged and translated as follows, § 126.

1. *Arguor furti*,	*I* am accused of theft.
2. *Virgilius comparātur Homēro*,	*Virgil* is compared to Homer.
3. *Pax poscĭtur te*,	*Peace* is begged of thee.
4. *Naves onerantur auro*,	*The ships* are loading with gold.

So also the participles.

5. *Accusātus furti*,	Accused *of theft*.
6. *Comparātus Homēro*,	Compared *to Homer*,
7. *Onerāta auro*,	Loaded *with gold*.
8. *Nudāta hominĭbus*,	Stripped *of men*.
9. *Ereptus morti*,	Saved *from death*

Impersonal Verbs.

65. The impersonal verb has no nominative before it in Latin. It is translated by placing the pronoun *it* before it in English; as, (§ 85, 2.)

1. *Decet*,	*It* becomes.	4. *Pugnātur*,	*It* is fought.
2. *Constat*,	*It* is evident.	5. *Itur*,	*It* is gone.
3. *Tonat*,	*It* thunders.	6. *Currĭtur*,	*It* is run.

66. Impersonal verbs governing the dative or accusative in Latin, may be translated in a personal form by making the word in the dative or accusative the nominative to the English verb, taking care always to express the same idea (§ 85, 6, and § 113); thus,

	Impersonally.	Personally.
1. *Placet* mihi,	It pleases *me;*	*I* am pleased.
2. *Licet* tibi,	It is permitted to *you;*	*You* are permitted
3. *Decet* eum,	It becomes *him;*	*He* ought.
4. *Pudet* nos,	It shames *us;*	*We* are ashamed.
5. *Tædet* vos,	It wearies *you;*	*You* are wearied.
6. *Favētur,* illis,	Favor is done to *them;*	*They* are favored.
7. *Nocētur* hosti,	Hurt is done *to the enemy;*	The *enemy* is hurt.
8. *Misĕret* me *tui,*	It moves *me* to pity of you;	*I* pity you.
9. *Pœnĭtet* eos,	It repents *them;*	*They* repent.
10. *Pœnitet* me *peccâsse,*	It repents *me,* i. e.,	*I* repent of having sinned.

67. When the doer of an action denoted by an impersonal verb, or by a passive verb used impersonally, is expressed by the ablative with *a*, (§ 85, 6,) the verb may be translated personally in the active voice, and the doer, in the ablative, be made its English subject or nominative; as,

	Impersonally.	Personally.
1. *Pugnātur a* me,	It is fought by *me;*	*I* fight.
2. *Currĭtur a* te,	It is run by *thee;*	*Thou* runnest.
3. *Favētur a* nobis	It is favored by *us;*	*We* favor.
4. *Favētur tibi a* nobis,	It is favored to you by *us;*	*We* favor you; *or* you are favored by *us.*

Note. The doer in the ablative with *a*, is frequently understood, (especially when no definite person or thing is intended,) and must be supplied as the context requires; as,

5. *Ubi perventum est* (*ab illis,*)	When it was come by them, i. e., when they came.
6. *Descendĭtur* (*ab homĭnĭbus,*)	Men (or people,) go down.
7. *Conveniebātur* (*ab homĭnĭbus,*)	People assembled.

68. Some verbs, not impersonal, are used impersonally, when used before the infinitive of impersonal verbs, (§ 113, Obs. 1,); as,

	Impersonally.	Personally.
1. Potest *credi tibi,*	*It can* be trusted to you;	You *can* be trusted; 66. 2.
2. *Non* potest *nocēri hosti,*	*It cannot* be hurt to the enemy;	The enemy *cannot* be hurt; 66. 7.
3. *Ut fiĕri* solet,	As *it is wont* to be done; or, As is usual.	

69. Verbs usually impersonal are sometimes used personally, and have their subject in the nominative, (§ 113, Obs. 1,); as,

1. *Doleo*, I grieve, (Impersonally	*Dolet mihi*,) It grieves me,
2. *Candĭda pax homĭnes decet*,	Candid *peace becomes* men.
3. *Ista gestamĭna nostros humĕros decent*,	These *arms become* my shoulders.

Usage of Videor, "*I seem.*"

70. *Videor*, "I seem," though never impersonal in Latin, is often rendered impersonally in English; and the dative following it, seems properly to come under Rule XXXIII, § 126, to denote the person to whom any thing seems or appears, i. e., by whom it is seen; thus, *Videor tibi esse pauper*, I seem to you, (i. e., I am seen by you,) to be poor *Videor mihi esse pauper*, I seem to myself, (i. e., I am seen by myself,) to be poor; or, I think that I am poor. So the following:

1. *Videor esse liber*,	I seem to be free; or, *It seems* that I am free.
2. *Videor mihi esse liber*,	I seem to myself to be free ; or. *It seems* to me, (or, I think) that I am free.
3. *Vidēris esse*,	You seem to be; or, *It seems* that you are.
4. *Vidēris tibi esse*,	You seem to yourself to be; or, *It seems* to you, (i. e., you think) that you are.
5. *Vidēris mihi esse*,	You seem to me to be; or, *It seems* to me, (i. e., I think) that you are.
6. *Tu, ut vidēris, non scribis*,	You, as you seem, (or, as *it seems*) do not write.

Obs. The third person singular of *videor* followed by an infinitive, with its subject in the accusative, or by a dependent clause after *ut*, or *quod*, may be said to be used impersonally; though strictly speaking, that infinitive with its accusative, or that clause, is the subject, (See No. 51,); as,

7. *Vidētur mihi te valēre*,	It appears to me that you are well; strictly rendered, That you are well appears to (or, is seen by) me.
8. *Illi vidētur ut valeat*,	It appears to him, (or, he thinks) that he, (*another person*) is well.
9. *Vidētur sibi valēre*,	It appears to him, (or, he thinks) that he, (*himself*) is well. He seems to himself to be well

Verbs.—Indicative Mood.

71. Verbs in the indicative mood are translated as in the paradigm in the Grammar. Care must be taken, however, to notice when the sense requires the *simple*, or *emphatic*, or *progressive* form.

72. When the perfect tense expresses a past action or event extending to, or connected with the present, in itself or in its consequences, it is used *definitely*, and must be rendered by the auxiliaries, *have*, *hast*, *has*, or *hath*; as,

1. *Regem* v i d i *hodie*,	I *have seen* the king to day.

73. When the perfect tense expresses a past action or event, without reference to the present, it is used *indefinitely*, (Gr. § 44, III.) and cannot be rendered by *have*, *hast*, *has*, or *hath*; as,

1. *Regem* v i d i *nuper*,	I *saw* the king lately.

Subjunctive Mood.

The subjunctive mood is used in two different ways, viz: *subjunctively* and *potentially*. (Gr. § 42, II. and §§ 139–141.)

Subjunctive used subjunctively.

74. This mood is used subjunctively, but for the most part translated as the indicative, when it expresses what is actual and certain though not directly asserted as such. This it does,

1st. When it is subjoined to some adverb, conjunction, or indefinite term in a dependent clause, for the purpose of stating the existence of a thing, (without directly asserting it,) as something supposed, taken for granted, or connected with the direct assertion, as a cause, condition, or modifying circumstance, (§ 140, Obs. 4,); as,

1 *Ea cum ita* s i n t *discēdam*,	Since these things *are* so, I will depart.
2. *Si* m a d e a t,	If it is *wet*.
3. *Quum Cæsar* r e d ī r e t,	When Cæsar *returned—was returning*.
4. *Ita pertcrrĭtus est* u t m o r i r ē t u r,	He was so frightened that *he died*.
5. *Gratŭlor tibi quod* r e d i ĕ r i s,	I am glad that you *have returned*.

6. *Si* ***imperitavĕrint,***	If they *have commanded.*
7. *Si* ***reliquissem*** *inīqui dicĕrent,*	If I *had left* him, &c.
8. *Quum Cæsar* ***profectus esset,***	When Cæsar *had departed.*

Obs. In the first of the above examples the direct assertion, is *discēdam,* "I will depart." The dependent clause, *ea cum ita sint,* "since these things are so," expresses the existence of certain things referred to without directly asserting it, but taking it for granted as a thing admitted or supposed, but still affecting in some way the event directly asserted. This holds good of all the other examples above.

The dependent clause connected by *ut,* or *ubi,* "when;" *dum,* "whilst;" *priusquam,* "before;" *postquam,* "after;" and other conjunctions, (§ 140, Obs. 2 and 3,); and also by *quum* or *cum,* "when," (Obs. 4,) sometimes take the indicative mood.

2d. The subjunctive mood is used subjunctively, as above, after an interrogative word used indefinitely, in a dependent clause, or in what is called the *indirect* question, i. e., an expression containing the substance of a question without the form. All interrogative words may be used in this way, (See § 140. 5,); thus,

9. *Nescio* ***quis sit — quid fiat,***	I know not *who* he *is—what is doing.*
10. *Doce me* ***ubi sint*** *dii,*	Tell me *where* the gods *are.*
11. *Nescio* ***uter scribĕret,***	I know not *which* of the two *wrote.*
12. *Nescio* ***quid scriptum esset,***	I know not *what was written.*
13. *Scio* ***cui,*** *(a* ***quo****)* ***scriptum esset,***	I know *to whom (by whom)* it *was written.*
14. *An scis* ***quis*** *hoc* ***fecĕrit?***	Do you know *who has done* this?
15. *An scis a* ***quo*** *hoc* ***factum fuĕrit?***	Do you know *by whom* this *has been done?*
16. *Nemo sciēbat* ***quis*** *hæc* ***fecisset,***	None knew *who had done* these things.
17. *Percunctātus* ***quid vellet,***	Having enquired *what* he *wished.*

Note. The direct question requires the indicative; as, *Quis* ***fecit?*** "Who *did* it?" The indirect requires the subjunctive; as, *Nescio quis* ***fecĕrit,*** "I know not who *did* it."

75. This mood is used subjunctively, and usually translated as the indicative in a relative clause, after an indefinite general expression, (§ 141, R. I.) a negation, or a ques-

tion implying a negation, and also after the relative in oblique narration, (§ 141, R. VI.); as,

1. *Est qui dicat*,	There is one who *says*.
2. *Nullus est qui neget*,	There is no one who *denies*.
3. *Quis est qui hoc faciat?*	Who is there that *does* this?
4. *Antonius inquit, artem esse eārum rerum quæ sciantur*,	Antonius says that art belongs to those things which *are known*.

The Subjunctive used Potentially.

76. The subjunctive mood is used *potentially;* 1st, in interrogative sentences; and 2d, to express a thing not as actual and certain, but contingent and hypothetical, (Gr. § 42, II. 2, and Obs. 3.) Thus used it is much less definite with respect to time, and is translated with some variety; as follows:

1. *Present*, by *may*, *can*, *shall*, *will*, *could*, *would*, *should*.
2. *Imperfect*, by *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should*.
3. *Perfect*, by *may have*, *can have*, *must have*, *&c*.
4. *Pluperfect*, by *might have*, *could have*, *would have*, *should have*, and denoting futurity, *should*.

The most usual renderings of each tense are the following:

77. *Present.* The present subjunctive used potentially expresses present liberty, power, will, or obligation, usually expressed by the English auxiliaries, *may*, *can*, *shall*, *will*, *could*, *would*, *should*. (§ 45, 1.)

1. *Licet eas*,	You *may go*.
2. *An sic intellĭgat?*	*Can* he so *understand* it?
3. *Men' moveat cimex Pantilius?*	*Shall* (or *should*) the insect Pantilius *discompose* me?
4. *Quis istos ferat?*	Who *could bear* those men?
5. *Si hic sis, alĭter sentias*,	If you were here you *would think* otherwise.

Imperatively.

6. *Sic eat*,	Thus *let her* (or *him*) *go*
7. *Eāmus*,	*Let us go*.
8. *Pugnētur*, (*Impersonally*,)	*Let it be fought*.
9. *Dii faciant*,	*May* the gods *grant*.

78. *Imperfect.* The imperfect subjunctive used potentially, is preceded by a past tense, and expresses *past* liberty, power, will, or duty, but still in its use expresses time very indefinitely. It is usually rendered by the English

auxiliaries, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*, sometimes *ha*
would have, *should have;* as,

1. *Legēbat ut discĕret*,	He read that he *might learn*.
2. *Quid facĕrem?*	What *could* I *do?*
3. *Iret si jubēres*,	He *would go* if you *should order* it.
4. *Cur venīret*,	Why *should* he *come*.
5. *Rogavērunt ut venīret*,	They entreated that he *would come*.
6. *Si quis dicĕret, nunquam putārem*,	If any one *had said* it, I *would* not *have thought* it.

Note. After verbs denoting to hinder, forbid, and the like, *quo minus* with the subjunctive, may be rendered by *from* and the present participle, (§ 45, II. 3,); thus,

7. *Impedīvit quo minus iret*,	He hindered him *from going*

Obs. An action or state which would, or would not exist, or have existed, in a case supposed, but the contrary of which is implied, is expressed in Latin by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, without an antecedent verb or conjunction, (§ 139, 2,); as,

8. *Scrībĕrem, si necesse esset*,	I *would write*, if it were necessary.
9. *Scripsissem, si necesse fuisset*,	I *would have written*, had it been necessary.

79. *Perfect.* The perfect subjunctive properly expresses what is supposed to be past, but of which there exists uncertainty. Thus used it is commonly rendered by the auxiliaries *may have*, *can have*, *&c.* It is also used sometimes in a present and sometimes in a future sense, with much variety of meaning, according to its connection, (§ 45, III.); as,

1. *Fortasse erravĕrim*,	Perhaps I *may have erred*.
2. *Etsi non scripsĕrit*,	Though he *cannot have written*.
3. *Ut sic dixĕrim*,	That I *may* so *speak*.
4. *Citius credidĕrim*,	I *would* sooner *believe*.
5. *Facĭle dixĕrim*,	I *could* easily *tell*.
6. *Quasi affuĕrim*,	As if I *had been present*.

80. *Pluperfect.* The pluperfect (§ 45, IV.) is usually rendered by the auxiliaries, *might have*, *could have*, *would have*, *should have*, as in the paradigm of the verb. But when an action is related as having been future at a certain past time, it is expressed in Latin in the pluperfect subjunctive, and translated *should;* as,

1. *Quodcunque jussisset me factūrum dixi*,	I said that I would do whatsoever he *should order*.

2. *Promisisti te scriptūrum, si rogavissem,*	You promised that thou would write, if I *should desire* it.
3. *Dum convaluisset,*	Until he *should get well.*

81. The pluperfect subjunctive active, with *quum*, in verbs not deponent, is used instead of a past participle active, (§ 49, 8,) and may be rendered by the compound perfect participle in English; as,

1. *Cæsar, quum hæc dixisset*	Cæsar *having said* these things; (literally, Cæsar, when he had said these things.)

82. When the subjunctive has a relative for its subject, and the relative and antecedent clause involve a comparison, they may be rendered as in No. 40, or the sense will be expressed if we render the relative by *as*, and the subjunctive by the infinitive; thus,

1. *Quis tam esset amens qui semper vivĕret,*	Who would be so foolish *as to live* always.
2. *Neque tu is es qui nescias,*	You are not such a one *as* not *to know.*

83. When the relative and subjunctive follow such adjectives as *dignus*, *indignus*, *idoneus*, (§ 141, Obs. 2.) and the like; or when they express the end or design of something expressed in the antecedent clause, their meaning will be expressed as in No. 40, or by the infinitive alone, or preceded by the phrase "in order to;" thus,

1. *Dignum qui secundus ab Romŭlo numerētur,*	Worthy *to be ranked* next after Romulus.
2. *Legātos misērunt qui eum accusārent,*	They sent legates *to accuse* (or, in *order to accuse*) him.
3. *Virgas iis dedit quibus agĕrent,*	He gave them rods *to drive*, (*in order to drive;* or, *so that with these they might drive.*)

84. The subjunctive with, or without *ut*, after verbs signifying to *bid*, *forbid*, *tell*, *allow*, *hinder*, *command*, and the like, (§ 140, 1, 3d, and Obs. 5,) may be rendered by the English infinitive preceded by the subject of the verb in the objective case; as,

1. *Precor venias,*	I pray *that you may come;* i. e. I pray *you to come.*
2. *Dic veniat,*	Tell *her to come.*
3. *Sine eat,*	Permit *him to go.*
4. *Non patiēris ut eant,*	You will not suffer *them to go.*
5 *Non patĕris ut vescāmur,*	You do not suffer *us to eat.*

85. When several verbs in the same mood and tense, have the same nominative, and are connected in the same construction, the *auxiliary* and "*to*," the sign of the infinitive, in the translation is used with the first only, and understood to the rest; as,

1. *Et vidisset et audivisset,*	He might have both seen and heard.
2. *Et visus et audītus esset,*	He might have been both seen and heard.
3. *Cupĭmus et vidēre et audīre,*	We wish both to see and hear.

The Infinitive Mood.

86. When the infinitive is without a subject, it is to be considered as a verbal noun, (§ 144,) and translated as in the paradigm of the verb; as,

1. *Volo* s c r i b ĕ r e,	I wish *to write.*
2. *Dicĭtur* d i d i c i s s e,	He is said *to have learned*
3. *Dicĭtur* i t ū r u s e s s e,	He is said *to be about to go.*
4. *Dicĭtur* i t ū r u s f u i s s e,	He is said *to have been about to go.*

87. When the verbs *possum*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, in the indicative or subjunctive, are translated by the English auxiliaries, *can*, *will*, *will not*, *will rather*, and sometimes, in the past tense, by *could*, *would*, &c., the infinitive following is translated without *to* before it; as,

1. *Potest* f i ĕ r i,	It can *be done.*
2. *Volo* i r e,	I will *go.*
3. *Nolo* f a c ĕ r e,	I will not *do* it.
4. *Malo* f a c ĕ r e,	I will rather *do* it.
5. *Ut se volucrem* f a c ĕ r e *vellet,*	That he would *make* her a bird.
6. *Nihil jam* d e f e n d i *potuit,*	Nothing could now *be defended.*
7. *Hoc* f a c ĕ r e *non potuit,*	He could not *do this.*
8. *Nolīte timēre,*	Do not *fear.*

88. The present is generally translated as the perfect without "to," after the imperfect, perfect and pluperfect tenses of *possum*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, when translated *could*, *would*, *would not*, *would rather;* and with "to" after the same tenses of *debeo*, and *oportet*, translated *ought;* as,

1. *Melius* f i ĕ r i *non potuit,*	It could not *have been done* better.
2. *Volui* d i c ĕ r e,	I would *have said.*
3. S u m ĕ r e *arma noluit,*	He would not *have taken* arms.
4. *Maluit* a u g ē r e,	He would rather *have encreased.*
5. *Quam potuisset* e d ĕ r e,	Than he could *have caused.*
6. *Debuisti mihi* i g n o s c ĕ r e,	You ought *to have pardoned* me
7. *Divĭdi* o p o r t u i t.	It ought *to have been divided.*

Note. A strictly literal translation of most of the above sentences would not express the precise idea intended; thus, in the third sentence, "He would not have taken arms," and "He was not willing to take arms," manifestly do not mean the same thing.

89. After verbs denoting to *see*, *hear*, *feel*, and the like, the present infinitive is often translated by the English present participle; as,

1. *Audīvi eum d i c ĕ r e*,	I heard him *saying*.
2. *S u r g ĕ r e videt lunam*,	He sees the moon *rising*.
3. *Terram tremĕre sensit*,	He felt the earth *trembling*.

Obs. So also when the infinitive alone, or as part of a clause, is the subject of another verb; as,

4. *M o r ā r i periculōsum est*,	Delaying *is dangerous*.
5. *M o r ā r i periculōsum (esse) arbitrantur*,	They think that *delaying* is dangerous.

The Infinitive with a subject.

90. The infinitive with its subject in the accusative, though but seldom, is sometimes translated in the same form in English; as,

1. *Cupio t e v e n ī r e*,	I wish *you to come*.
2. *Q u o s d i s c o r d a r e novĕrat*,	*Whom* he had known *to differ*.
3. *H o c optĭmum e s s e judicāvit*,	He decided *this to be* the best.
4. *E u m v o c ā r i jussit*,	He ordered *him to be* called.

91. The infinitive with a subject, usually is, and always may be, translated by the English indicative or potential, according to the sense intended. When so rendered, its subject must always be translated in the nominative; and this, if not a relative, is usually preceded by the conjunction *that*, (§ 145,); as,

1. *Cupio t e v e n ī r e*,	I wish *that you would come*.
2. *Dicit m e s c r i b ĕ r e*,	He says *that I write*.
3. *E o s i v i s s e putābat*,	He thought *that they had gone*.
4 *Q u e m nunquam r i s i s s e ferunt*,	*Who* they say never *laughed*.
5 *Rogāvit q u i d f a c i e n d u m (esse) putāret*,	He asked *what* he thought *ought to be done*.

92. Both the Latin and the English infinitive, by their tenses, represent an act, &c., as present, past or future, *at the time of the governing verb.* Hence, when the one is translated by the other; that is, the Latin infinitive by the English infinitive, (Nos. 86 and 90,) any tense of the one

will be correctly translated by the same tense in the other, (except as in No. 88,) no matter what be the tense of the governing verb; as,

		Pres.	Past.	Future.
1. Pres. *Dicĭtur,*				
2. Past, *Dicebātur,*		*habēre;*	*habuisse;*	*habitūrus esse.*
3. Fut. *Dicētur,*				
1. Pres. He is said				
2. Past, He was said		to have;	to have had;	to be about to have
3. Fut. He will be said				

93. But when the Latin infinitive, with its subject, is translated by the English *indicative* or *potential*, the tense used in these moods, must be that which will correctly express the time of the act expressed by the Latin infinitive as estimated, not from the time of the governing verb, as in Latin, but as estimated from the present. That is, events present at the same time, or past at the same time, will be expressed in English by the same tense; an event represented in Latin as prior to the present time, (perfect infinitive after the present tense,) will be expressed by the English imperfect or perfect indefinite; and an event represented in Latin as prior to a past event, (perfect infinitive after a past tense,) will be expressed by the English pluperfect; thus:

1. Pres. *Dicunt eum venire*, They say *that* he *is coming*, or *comes*.
2. Past, *Dixērunt eum venīre*, They said *that* he *came*.
3. Pres. *Dicunt eum venisse*, They say *that* he *came*.
4. Past, *Dixērunt eum venisse*, They said *that* he *had come*.
5. Past, *Cœpērunt suspicāri illam venīre*, They began to suspect *that* she *came*.

Note. The infinitive after the future does not follow this analogy, but is always translated in its own tense; as,

	Pres.	Perf.	Future.
6.	*Dicent eum venīre*,	*venisse*,	*ventūrum esse*
	They will say that he *comes*,	*has come*,	*will come.*

94. 1. Present, past, and future time, are variously expressed as follows:

1st. *Present time* is expressed by the *present tense*, and generally by the *perfect definite*.

2d. *Past time* is expressed by the *imperfect*, *perf. indefinite* and *pluperfect*.—by the *perfect participle*,—the *present infinitive after a past tense*,—the *present tense used to express a past event*, § 44, 1, 3,—and by the *pre-*

sent participle, agreeing with the subject of the governing verb in any of these tenses, § 49, 5.

3d. Future time is expressed by the *future*, and *future perfect*.

2. The infinitive of deponent verbs, is translated in the same manner as the infinitive active in the following examples in Nos. 95 to 100.

3. After verbs denoting to *promise*, *request*, *advise*, *command*, and the like, implying a reference to something future, the present infinitive, with its subject, is usually translated as the future, by *should*, or *would*, (See No. 100, 1, 2, 3, 7, 8, 9,); as, *Jussit, eos per castra duci*, He ordered that they *should be led* through the camp.

4. The Latin words for "*he said*," "*saying*," or the like, introducing an oblique narration, are often omitted, and the infinitive takes the form of translation corresponding to the *time* expressed by the word to be supplied.

From these principles are deduced the following directions for translating the infinitive with a subject.

Present Infinitive after Present or Future time.

95. Direct. I. When the preceding verb is in the *present*, the *perfect* used definitely, or *future tense*, the present infinitive is translated as the present; as,

Active Voice.

1. *Dico eum laudāre*,	I say that he *praises*.
2. *Dixi eum laudāre*,	I have said that he *praises*.
3. *Dicam eum laudāre*,	I will say that he *praises*.

Passive Voice.

4. *Dico eum laudāri*,	I say that he *is praised*.
5. *Dixi eum laudāri*,	I have said that he *is praised*.
6. *Dicam eum laudāri*,	I will say that he *is praised*.

Present Infinitive after Past time.

96. Direct. II. When the preceding verb is in the *imperfect*, *perfect indefinite*, or *pluperfect*, or in the *present infinitive after a past tense*, the present infinitive is translated as the imperfect, or perfect indefinite; as,

Present Infinitive Active.

1. *Dicēbam eum l a u d ā r e ,*	I said that he *praised.*
2. *Dixi eum l a u d ā r e ,*	I said that he *praised.*
3. *Dixĕram eum l a u d ā r e ,*	I had said that he *praised.*
4. *Cœpi dicĕre eum l a u d ā r e ,*	I began to say that he *praised.*

Present Infinitive Passive.

5. *Dicēbam eum l a u d ā r i ,*	I said that he *was praised.*
6. *Dixi eum l a u d ā r i ,*	I said that he *was praised.*
7. *Dixĕram eum l a u d ā r i ,*	I had said that he *was praised.*
8. *Cœpi dicĕre eum l a u d ā r i ,*	I began to say that he *was praised.*

Exc. I. When the present infinitive expresses that which is always true, it must be translated in the *present*, after any tense, § 44, I. 1 ; as

9. *Doctus erat deum g u b e r n ā r e mundum,*	He had been taught that God *governs* the world.

Exc. II. When the present infinitive expresses an act subsequent to the time of the governing verb, it is translated after any tense, by the potential with *should; would;* as,

10. *Jubet* } *te i r e,*	He orders } that you *should go.*
11. *Jussit* } *te i r e,*	He ordered } that you *should go.*
12. *Jussĕrat* } *te i r e,*	He had ordered } that you *should go.*

Perfect Infinitive after Present or Future time.

97. Direct. III. When the preceding verb is in the *present, perfect definite*, or *future tense*, the perfect infinitive is translated as the imperfect or perfect indefinite ; as,

Active Voice.

1. *Dico eum l a u d a v i s s e ,*	I say that he *praised.*
2. *Dixi eum l a u d a v i s s e ,*	I have said that he *praised.*
3. *Dicam eum l a u d a v i s s e ,*	I will say that he *praised.*

Passive Voice.

4. *Dico eum l a u d ā t u m e s s e ,*	I say that he *was praised.*
5. *Dixi eum l a u d ā t u m e s s e ,*	I have said that he *was praised.*
6. *Dicam eum l a u d ā t u m e s s e ,*	I will say that he *was praised.*
7. *Dico eum l a u d ā t u m f u i s s e ,*	I say that he *has been praised.*
8. *Dixi eum l a u d ā t u m f u i s s e ,*	I have said that he *has been praised.*
9. *Dicam eum l a u d ā t u m f u i s s e ,*	I will say that he *has been praised.*

Perfect Infinitive after Past Tenses.

98. Direct. IV. When the preceding verb is in the *imperfect, perfect indefinite*, or *pluperfect*, or in the *present infinitive after a past tense*, the perfect infinitive is translated as the pluperfect; as,

Active Voice

1. *Dicēbam eum laudavisse*,	I said that he *had praised.*
2. *Dixi eum laudavisse*,	I said that he *had praised.*
3. *Dixĕram eum laudavisse*,	I had said that he *had praised.*
4. *Cœpi dicĕre eum laudavisse*,	I began to say that he *had praised.*

Passive Voice.

5. *Dicēbam eum laudātum esse*,	I said that he *had been praised*
6. *Dixi eum laudātum esse*,	I said that he *had been praised.*
7. *Dixĕram eum laudātum esse*,	I had said that he *had been praised.*
8. *Cœpi dicĕre eum laudātum esse*,	I began to say that he *had been praised.*
9. *Dicēbam eum laudātum fuisse*,	I said that he *had been praised.*
10. *Dixi eum laudātum fuisse*,	I said that he *had been praised.*
11. *Dixĕram eum laudātum fuisse*,	I had said that he *had been praised.*
12. *Cœpi dicĕre eum laudātum fuisse*,	I began to say that he *had been praised.*

Future Infinitive after the Present Tense.

99. V. When the preceding verb is in the *present*, or *perfect definite*, or *future tense*, the future infinitive with *esse*, is translated as the future indicative; and with *fuisse*, by *would have*, or *should have*, in the pluperfect potential in a future sense; and *fore*, for *futūrum esse*, is translated by *will be.*

Active Voice.

1. *Dico eum laudatūrum esse*,	I say that he *will praise.*
2. *Dixi eum laudatūrum esse*,	I have said that he *will praise.*
3. *Dicam eum laudatūrum esse*,	I will say that he *will praise.*
4. *Dico eum laudatūrum fuisse*,	I say that he *would have praised.*
5. *Dixi eum laudatūrum fuisse*,	I have said that he *would have praised.*
6. *Dicam eum laudatūrum fuisse*,	I will say that he *would have praised.*

Passive Voice.

7. *Dico eum laudātum iri,*	I say that he *will be praised.*
8. *Dixi eum laudātum iri,*	I have said that he *will be praised.*
9 *Dicam eum laudātum iri,*	I will say that he *will be praised.*

Future Infinitive after Past Tenses.

100. Direct. VI. When the preceding verb is of the *imperfect*, *perfect indefinite*, or *pluperfect*, the future of the infinitive with *esse*, is rendered by *would* or *should*; and with *fuisse*, by *would have*, and *should have*; and *fore* for *futūrum esse* after any past tense, by *would be;* as,

Active Voice.

1. *Dicēbam eum laudatūrum esse,*	I said that he *would praise.*
2. *Dixi eum laudatūrum, &c.*	I said that he *would praise.*
3. *Dixĕram eum laudatūrum*	I had said that he *would praise.*
4. *Dicēbam eum laudatūrum fuisse,*	I said that he *would have praised.*
5. *Dixi eum laudatūrum, &c.*	I said that he *would have praised.*
6. *Dixĕram eum laudatūrum fuisse,*	I had said that he *would have praised.*

Passive Voice.

7. *Dicēbam eum laudātum iri,*	I said that he *would be praised.*
8. *Dixi eum laudātum iri,*	I said that he *would be praised.*
9. *Dixĕram eum laudātum iri,*	I had said that he *would be praised.*
10. *Dicēbam (dixi) eum fore tutum,*	I said that he *would be* safe.

Usage of Fore.

Obs. Fore is used for *futurum esse*, and, with a subject after present tenses means "*will be*," after past tenses "*would be.*" Both of them when followed by a subjunctive with *ut* (§ 145, Obs. 6,) after a present tense, may be translated by the future indicative of that verb; and after a past tense, by the imperfect potential; as,

11. *Credo eum fore tutum,*	I believe that he *will be* safe.
12. *Credebam,* or *credidi, (credidĕram) eum fore tutum,*	I believed, (had believed) that he *would* be safe.
13. *Credo fore* (or *futurum esse*) *ut discas,*	I believe that you *will learn.*
14. *Credebam* or *credidi (credidĕram) fore* (or *futurum esse*) *ut discĕres,*	I believed, (had believed) that you *would learn.*

Participles.

101. Participles are usually translated after their nouns, as in the paradigms of the verb; thus,

1. Present active,	*Homo* c a r e n s *fraude*,	A man *wanting* guile.
2. Future active,	*Homo scriptūrus*,	A man *about to write*.
3. Perfect passive,	*Vita bene* a c t a,	A life well *spent*.
4. ——— ———,	*Cæsar* c o a c t u s,	Cæsar *being* (or *having been*) *compelled*.
5. (Deponent,)	*Cæsar* r e g r e s s u s,	Cæsar *having returned*
6. Future passive,	*Mala* v i t a n d a,	Evils *to be avoided*, i. e., which ought to be avoided.

Exc. But when a participle is used as an adjective, (§ 49, 3,) it is translated, like the adjective, before its substantive; as,

7. T i g r i n *ostendit* m a n s u e f a c t a m,	He exhibited a *tamed tiger*.
8. *In* f e r v e n t ĭ b u s a r ē n i s *insistens*.	Standing on the *burning sands*.

Future Participle Active.

102. When the Future participle active is used to express a *purpose*, *end*, *or design* of another action, (§ 146, Obs. 3,) it is rendered by "to," or the phrase "in order to," instead of "about to;" as,

1. *Pergit* c o n s u l t ū r u s *oracŭla*,	He goes *to consult* (or, *in order to consult*) the oracle.

Obs. The present participle is also sometimes used in this sense; as,

2. *Venērunt* p o s t u l a n t e s *cibum*,	They came *to* (or, *in order to*) *ask* food.

Perfect Participle Passive.

103. As the Latin verb has no perfect participle in the active sense, (except in deponent verbs,) its place is usually supplied by the perfect participle passive in the case absolute, (§ 146, Obs. 8,); thus, "Cæsar having consulted his friends," rendered into Latin, will be, *Cæsar* a m ī c i s c o n s u l t i s, literally, "Cæsar, *his friends being consulted*." Hence,

104. When the action expressed passively by the perfect participle in the case absolute, or agreeing with the object of a verb, is something done by the subject of the leading

verb in the sentence, the participle is rendered more in accordance with English idiom, by the perfect participle in the active voice, in English, agreeing with the subject of the verb, and followed by its noun in the objective case, (§ 49, 8, and § 146, Obs. 8,); thus,

1. *Cæsar, h i s d i c t i s, profectus est,* translated in the
Latin idiom, Cæsar, *these things being said,* departed.
English idiom, Cæsar, *having said these things,* departed.

2. *O p ĕ r e p e r a c t o, ludēmus,*
Latin idiom, *Our work being finished,* we will play.
English idiom, *Having finished our work,* we will play.
3. *Pythiam ad se v o c ā t u m pecuniâ instruxit,*
Latin idiom, He supplied with money Pythias *being called* to him.
English idiom, *Having called* Pythias to him, he supplied him with money.

105. The perfect participle of deponent verbs having an active signification, accords with the English idiom, and is best translated literally; as,

1. *N a c t u s navicŭlum,* *Having found* a boat.
2. *C o h o r t ā t u s exercĭtum,* *Having exhorted* the army.

106. When the perfect participle of deponent or common verbs, expresses an act nearly or entirely contemporaneous with the leading verb, it may be translated by the English present participle in *ing*, (§ 49, 5, Note,); as,

1. *Rex hoc facĭnus m i r ā t u s juvĕnem dimīsit,* The king, *admiring* this act, dismissed the youth.
2. *Columba d e l a p s a refert sagittam,* The dove *falling* brings back the arrow.

The Future Participle Passive.

107. After verbs signifying *to give, to deliver, to agree* or *bargain for, to have, to receive, to undertake,* and the like, the participle in *dus* generally denotes *design* or *purpose,* and is rendered simply as in the paradigm, or with the phrase "in order to," prefixed, (§ 146, Obs. 4,); as,

1. *Testamentum tibi tradit l e g e n d u m,* He delivers his will to you *to* (or *in order to*) *be read.*
2. *Attribuit nos t r u c i d u n d o s Cethĕgo,* He has given us over to Cethegus (*in order*) *to be slain.*

108. The participle in *dus*, especially when agreeing with the subject of a sentence or clause, generally denotes *propriety, necessity,* or *obligation,* and is rendered variously as

the tense of the accompanying verb and the connection require, (§ 146, Obs. 5,); the following are examples:

1. *Legātus* m i t t e n d u s *est,*	An ambassador *must* (or *should) be sent.*
2. *Legātus* m i t t e n d u s *erat* or f u i t,	An ambassador *had to be sent.*
3. *Legātus* m i t t e n d u s *erit,*	An ambassador *will have to be sent.*
4. *Legātum* m i t t e n d u m *esse,*	That an ambassador *should be sent.*
5. ——— m i t t e n d u m f u i s s e,	——— ——— —— *ought to* (or should) *have been sent.*
6. D i s s i m u l a n d a *loquĭtur,*	He speaks things that *ought to be concealed.*
7. D i s s i m u l a n d a *loquebā-tur,*	He spake things which *ought to have been concealed.*
8. *Quæ* d i s s i m u l a n d a e r u n t,	Which *will have to be concealed.*
9. *Dic, quid* s t a t u e n d u m s i t	Say, what is *to be* (or *must be*) *thought.*

Ablative Absolute.

109. When a participle stands with a substantive in the ablative absolute, R. LX., the substantive is translated without a sign, No. 9, and after it the participle, as in the paradigm of the verb; as,

1. *Romŭlo* r e g n a n t e,	Romulus *reigning.*
2. *Hac oratiōne* h a b ĭ t â,	This oration *being delivered.*
3. *Cæsăre* v e n t ū r o,	Cæsar (being) *about to come.*
4. *Præceptis* t r a d e n d i s,	Rules being *to be delivered.*
5. *Bello* o r t o,	War *having arisen.*

Note. The future participles, Ex. 3, 4, are seldom used in the case absolute.

110. When two nouns,—a pronoun and a noun,—a noun or a pronoun and an adjective, are used in the ablative without a participle, (§ 146, Obs. 10,) they are translated in the nominative without a sign, and the English participle "*being*," inserted between them; as,

1. *Adolescentŭlo duce,*	A young man *being* leader.
2. *Mario consŭle,*	Marius *being* consul.
3. *Me suasore,*	I *being* the adviser.
4. *Annibăli vivo,*	Hannibal *being* alive.
5. *Se invīto,*	He *being* unwilling.

Gerunds and Gerundives.

111. The gerund, being a verbal noun, is translated in

the same manner as other nouns of the same case, and at the same time may govern the case of its own verb, § 147; as,

1. N.	*Petendum pacem,*	Seeking peace.
2. G.	*Petendi pacem,*	*Of* seeking peace.
3. *D.*	*Utendo libris,*	*To* (or *for*) using books
4. Ac.	*Obliviscendum injuriārum,*	Forgetting injuries.
5. Abl.	*Parendo magistratui,*	*By* obeying the magistrate.
6. Abl.	*Petendo pacem,*	*With, from in, by* seeking peace.

112. Of verbs that govern the accusative, instead of the gerund in the oblique cases, the Latins commonly used the participle in *dus*, in the sense of the gerund, and agreeing with its object in gender, number and case; the case being governed by the same word that would have governed the gerund. When thus used it is called a *gerundive.* (§ 147, R. LXII.)

Gerunds.	*Gerundives.*
1. *Ars librum legendi,*	5. *Ars libri legendi,* The art *of reading a book.*
2. *Utile vulnĕra curando,*	6. *Utile vulnerĭbus curandis.* Useful *for healing wounds.*
3. *Ad litĕras scribendum,*	7. *Ad litĕras scribendas,* For *writing a letter.*
4. *De captīvos commutando,*	8. *De captīvis commutandis,* Respecting *exchanging captives.*

113. When the gerund is the subject of the verb *est*, governing the dative, it implies necessity, and is variously translated into the English idiom, as the tense of the verb requires, (§ 147,); as,

Latin Idiom.	*English Idiom.*
1. *Legendum est mihi,* Reading is to me; i. e.,	I must read; I ought to read; I should read.
2. *Legendum erat (fuit) mihi.* Reading was to me;	I had to read; I ought to have read; I should have read.
3. *Legendum fuĕrat mihi,* Reading had been to me;	I had been obliged to read.
4. *Legendum erit mihi,* Reading will be to me;	I will have to read; It will be necessary for me to read.
5. *Dicit legendum esse mihi,* He says that reading is to me;	He says that I must read—ought to read—should read.
6. *Dicit legendum fuisse mihi,* He says that reading was to me;	He says that I had to read—ought to—or should—have read.

Obs. The dative is frequently omitted, and generally when it denotes persons or things, in a general or indefinite

sense. In such cases, *homĭni*, *homĭnĭbus*, *nobis*, or the like, must be supplied; as,

7. *Vivendum est recte (scil. homĭnĭbus,)*	Living honestly, is viz: to men; i. e., men ought to live honestly.
8. *Dicit vivendum esse recte, (scil. homĭni,)*	He says that living honestly is, viz: to a man; i. e. a man ought to live honestly.

Supines.

114. The Supines are rendered without variation, as in the paradigm, and under the rules, (§ 148,); as,

1. *Abiit deambulātum,*	He has gone *to walk.*
2. *Facĭle dictu,*	Easy *to tell*, or *to be told.*

Passive Voice.

115. The passive voice, in the indicative mood, is translated as in the paradigms. The subjunctive mood is subject to all the variety of construction and translation used in the active voice, Nos. 74–84, acting on the verb *to be*, which as an auxiliary with the perfect participle, makes up the passive form of the verb in English.

In the compound tenses, (§ 53, 3,) when two or more verbs in a sentence are in the same tense, and have the same nominative, or are in the same construction, the verb *sum* is commonly expressed with the last and understood to the rest, as in the following Ex. 1. But when the nominative is changed, the verb "to be" should be repeated as in Ex. 2.

1. *Nisus a Minōe victus et occīsus est,*	Nisus *was* conquered and killed by Minos.
2. *Tres naves captæ, decem demersæ, duo millia hostium capta, tredĕcim millia occīsa sunt.*	Three ships *were* taken, ten sunk; two thousand of the enemy *were* taken, thirteen thousand killed

Passive Voice in a Middle Sense.

116. The Latin passive voice is often used to represent its subject, not as acted upon by another, but as acting on itself, or for itself, or intransitively, by its own impulse; and so corresponds in sense to the middle voice in Greek. Thus used, it is best translated by the active voice followed by the reflexive pronoun as an object, or by an intransitive

verb expressing the idea intended, (§ 41, Obs. 3.) The following are examples.

1. *Paludĭbus abdĭti sunt,*	They *concealed themselves* in the marshes.
2. *Cum omnes in omni genĕre scelĕrum volutentur,*	Since all *give themselves up* to every kind of wickedness.
3. *Fertur in hostes,*	*Rushes* against the enemy.
4. *Volutāti super poma,*	*Rolling themselves* over the apples.
5. *Cingĭtur armis,*	*Girds himself* with his armor.
6. *Sternuntur tumŭlo,*	*Throw themselves* on the grave.
7. *Gallus victus occultātur,*	The cock, when conquered, *hides himself.*

117. The verb *sum* governing the genitive by R. XII., § 108, may generally be translated by the phrase "belongs to," "is the part," "is the property," &c. See explanation under Rule; as,

1. *Est regis,*	It *belongs to* the king.
2. *Pecus est Melibœi,*	The flock *belongs to* Melibœus.
3. *Prudentia est senectūtis,*	Prudence *is the characteristic* of old age.

118. The verb *sum*, (also *desum*,) in the third person, governing the dative by § 112, Rule II., may generally be translated by the corresponding tenses of the verb "to have," with the Latin dative for its subject, and the Latin subject for its object; as,

	Latin Idiom.	*English Idiom.*
1. *Liber est mihi,*	A book is to me,	I have a book.
2. *Liber erat mihi,*	A book was to me,	I had a book.
3. *Liber fuit mihi,*	A book was (or has been) to me,	I had, or have had a book.
4. *Liber fuĕrat mihi,*	A book had been to me,	I had had a book.
5. *Liber erit mihi,*	A book will be to me,	I will have a book.
6. *Libri sunt mihi,*	Books are to me,	I have books.
7. *Est mihi,*	It is to me;	I have it.
8. *Liber deest mihi,*	A book is not to me,	I have not a book.

119. When a compound verb, rendered by the simple verb and a preposition, is followed by two cases, the simple verb with the immediate object (always in the accusative,) is usually translated first, and then the preposition with the remote object.

1. *Flumen copias transduxit,*	He *led* his forces *across* the river.
2. *Circumdăre mœnia oppĭdo,*	*To build* walls *around* the city
3 *Caput dejĕcit saxo,*	He *threw* the head *down* from the rock.

120 An adverb, adverbial phrase, or clause expressing some circumstance in translating, may often be arranged in different situations in a sentence, due regard being paid to the sense and harmony of the whole; thus, *Magna debēmus suscipĕre dum vires suppĕtunt*, may be arranged variously for translating, as follows:

1. Debēmus suscipĕre magna, *dum vires suppĕtunt;* or,
2. *Dum vires suppĕtunt*, debēmus suscipĕre magna; or,
3. Debēmus, *dum vires suppĕtunt*, suscipĕre magna.

121. The negative conjunction *ne*, is variously rendered *lest*, *lest that*, *that–not*, *not;* and after verbs signifiying to *fear*, *forbid*, and the like, it is translated *that*, while *ut* in the same situation, means *that not*.

1. *Ne quis eat,*	*Lest* (or *that not*) any one may go.
2. *Orat ne se perdat,*	She entreats *that* he would *not* destroy her.
3. *Egi ne interessem,*	I managed *that* I should *not* be present.
4. *Dum ne veniat,*	Provided he do *not* come.
5. *Respondit ne cogitāta quidem latent.*	He replied *that not* even the thoughts are concealed.
6. *Vereor ne cadas,*	I am afraid *that* you may fall.
7. *Timui ut venīret,*	I feared *that* he would *not* come.

Note 1. But when the fear expressed, refers to such things *as we wish*, *ne* means *that–not;* as, *Paves ne ducas illam*, You are afraid *that* you do *not* get her to wife.

Ne, after a command implying a negative, or prohibition, is often omitted; as, *cave titŭbes*, take care *that* you do *not* stumble.

Note 2. *Ne quidem*, (always separate,) is an emphatic negative, and has the emphatic word between; as, *ne hoc quidem*, not even *this; ne tum quidem*, not even *then.*

122. When a verb is translated into English by the aid of an auxiliary, an adverb, or clause modifying it, will often have to be placed *between* the auxiliary and the verb, (Eng. Gr. § 74,); as,

1. *Dixit ne ob hoc alios contemnāmus,*	He said that we should not *on this account* despise others.

123. Some prepositions are variously translated according to the meaning of the words, or the case with which they are connected; thus,

1. *In* followed by an accusative, means *to, into, towards, for, against*, &c., (§ 136, R. L.)
2. *In*, followed by the ablative, means *in, upon, among, in, in the case of*, (§ 136, R. LI.)
3. *Inter*, referring to *two*, means *between;* to more than two, *among*.
4. *Sub* means *under, at the foot of, close up to*.
5. *Præ* means *before, in comparison of;*—sometimes, *more than*.

124. When the following conjunctions, adjectives, and adverbial particles, are placed, one before each of two successive words or clauses, the first is commonly translated differently from the second, and usually in the following manner, (§149, Obs. 5.)

1. *Et*	—— *et*,	Both	—— and.
2. *Que*	—— *que*,	Both	—— and.
3. *Aut. vel, sive*,	—— *aut, vel, sive*,	Either	—— or.
4. *Nec*	—— *nec.*	Neither	—— nor.
5. *Neque*	—— *neque*,		
6. *Sive, seu*	—— *sive, seu*,	Whether	—— or.
7. *Tum*	—— *tum.*	Not only	—— but also.
		Both	—— and.
8. *Cùm* or *quum*	—— *tum*,	Not only	—— but also.
		Both	—— and.
9. *Jam*	—— *jam*,	Now	—— then.
10. *Nunc*	—— *nunc*,	At one time	—— at another.
11. *Simul*	—— *simul*,	Not only	—— but also.
		No sooner	—— than.
		As soon as	—— instantly.
12. *Modo, alias*	—— *modo, alias*,	At one time	—— at another
		Sometimes	—— sometimes.

Corresponding Conjunctive Terms.

13. *Ne* —— *an*,	Whether —— or.
14. *Utrum* —— *an*,	Whether —— or.
15. *Ita, sic, tam, adeo* —— *ut*,	So —— that; so —— as.
16. *Talis, tantus* —— *ut.*	Such, so great —— that.
17. *Is, ejusmŏdi* —— *ut*,	Such, of such a kind —— that.
18. *Simut* —— *ac*, or *atque*,	As soon —— as.
19. *Tamdiu* —— *quamdiu*,	As long —— as.
20 *Ut* —— *sic*,	As —— so.

Ne is frequently omitted with the first word or clause, and must be supplied when *an* stands with the second; as,

21. *Rectè an perpĕram*, (*Whether*) right or wrong.

General Rules for Accentuation.

1. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first, or penult; as, *pă'-ter, mū'-sa, au'-rum.*

2. Words of more than two syllables, when the penult is long, have the accent on the penult; when the penult is short, they have the accent on the antepenult; as, *a-mī'-cus, dom'-ĭ-nus.*

3. When the enclitics, *que, ve, ne,* are added to a word the two words are considered as one, and it is accented accordingly; as, *pă'-ter, pă-ter'-que; dom'-ĭ-nus, dom-i-nus'-ve.*

General Rules for the Quantity of Syllables.

1. A vowel before another vowel, is short; as, *vĭa, Dĕus.*

2. A vowel before two consonants, or a double consonant, is long by position; as, *arma, fallo, axis.*

3. A vowel before a mute and a liquid, (*l, r,*) is common, *i. e.* either long or short; as, *volŭcris,* or *volūcris.*

4. A diphthong is always long; as, *aurum, Cæsar.*

Note. In this work when the quantity of the penult, in words of more than two syllables, is determined by any of these rules, it is not marked, otherwise it is marked.

Explanation of References.

The references at the foot of each page, to which a section mark (§) is prefixed, are to the sections and their subdivisions in the Grammar, and are intended chiefly to explain the construction.

In those references which have no section mark prefixed, the first number directs to the same number in the preceding Introduction, and the second, to the example under that number. Thus for example, in p. 53, g 38, 8; the number 38 refers to Introduction 38, (p. 22,) which shows how the relative in the beginning of a sentence is to be translated; and the number 8 refers to example 8, *A quo consilio,* &c., showing that the relative *quâ* is here to be translated "this," and *Quâ de causâ,* "for this cause." These references are intended to explain particular phrases and idioms, and to give an example of the mode of translating them.

The references made by figures are to the notes on the text, commencing p. 207, where it will be observed that all the notes belonging to a page are contained in one paragraph, at the beginning of which is the number of the page to which the notes refer.

N. B. In the text the reference letter stands *after*, and the reference figure stands *before* the word or words to which they respectively belong.

C. JULII CÆSARIS COMMENTARII

DE BELLO GALLICO.

BOOK I.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. General description of Gaul—Chap. 1. II. The war with the Helvetii—Chap. 2–29. III. War with Ariovistus—Chap. 30–54.

1. Gallia est omnis divīsa in partes tres, [1]quarum[a] unam incŏlunt Belgæ, aliam Aquitāni, tertiam, [2]qui ipsōrum linguâ Celtæ,[b] nostrâ Galli,[b] appellantur. Hi omnes linguâ,[c] [3]institūtis,[c] legĭbus [4]inter se[d] diffĕrunt. [5]Gallos ab Aquitānis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrŏna et Sequăna divĭdit. Horum[h] omnium fortissĭmi sunt Belgæ, propterea quòd a [6]cultu atque humanitāte Provinciæ longissĭmè absunt, [7]minimēque ad eos mercatōres sæpe commeant, atque ea, quæ ad effeminandos[e] anĭmos pertĭnent, important; proximīque sunt Germānis,[f] qui trans Rhenum incŏlunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt: quâ[g] de causâ Helvetii quoque relĭquos Gallos virtūte[c] præcēdunt, quòd ferè quotidiānis prœliis[h] cum Germānis contendunt, cùm aut suis[i] finĭbus [8]eos prohĭbent, aut [9]ipsi in [10]eōrum finĭbus bellum gerunt. [11]Eōrum una pars, quam Gallos[k] obtinēre dictum est, initium capit a flumĭne Rhodăno; continētur Garumnâ flumĭne,[h] Oceăno, finĭbus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sequănis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; [12]vergit ad septentriōnes.

---

[a] § 107, R. X.
[b] § 103, R. V.
[c] § 128, R.
[d] § 28, Obs. 5.
[e] § 147, R. LXII, & 112, 7.
[f] § 111, R.
[g] 38, 8.
[h] § 129, R.
[i] 31, 3.
[k] § 145, R. LVIII.

Belgæ [1] ab extrēmis Galliæ finĭbus oriuntur; pertĭnent ad inferiōrem partem flumĭnis Rheni; [2] spectant in septentriōnes et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumnâ flumĭne ad Pyrenæos montes, et eam partem Oceăni, quæ est [3] ad Hispaniam, pertĭnet; spectat inter occāsum solis et septentriōnes.

2. Apud Helvetios longè nobilissĭmus et ditissĭmus fuit Orgetŏrix. Is, Marco Messālâ et Marco Pisōne [4] Consulĭbus,[a] regni cupiditāte [b] inductus, conjuratiōnem nobilitātis fecit, et [5] civitāti [c] persuāsit, ut de finĭbus suis cum omnĭbus copiis exīrent: [d] perfacĭle [e] esse cùm virtūte omnĭbus præstārent,[f] totīus Galliæ imperio [g] [6] potīri. Id hoc faciliùs eis [m] [7] persuāsit, quòd undĭque loci [8] natūrâ [b] Helvetii continentur: unâ ex parte flumĭne Rheno,[b] latissĭmo [b] atque altissĭmo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germānis divĭdit: altĕrâ ex parte, monte [b] Jurâ altissĭmo,[b] qui est inter Sequănos et Helvetios; tertiâ, lacu Lemanno,[b] et flumĭne [i] Rhodăno, qui Provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis divĭdit. His rebus fiēbat,[k] ut et minùs latè vagarentur,[l] et minùs facĭlè finitĭmis [m] bellum inferre possent: [l] quâ de causâ homĭnes bellandi [n] cupĭdi magno dolōre [b] afficiebantur. [9] Pro multitudĭne autem homĭnum, et pro gloriâ [10] belli atque fortitudĭnis, angustos se fines habēre [o] arbitrabantur, [11] qui in longitudĭnem millia [p] passuum ducenta et quadraginta, in latitudĭnem centum et octoginta patēbant.

3. [12] His rebus [b] adducti, et auctoritāte Orgetorĭgis permōti, constituērunt [q] ea, quæ ad [13] proficiscendum [r] pertinērent,[s] comparāre; [t] jumentōrum et [14] carrōrum quàm maxĭmum [u] numĕrum coëmĕre; [15] sementes quàm maxĭmas [u] facĕre, ut in itinĕre copia frumenti suppetĕret; [v] cum proxĭ-

a 110, 2.	h 24.	p § 24, 5.
b § 129, R.	i § 149, R.	q 54.
c 63.	k 51.	r § 147, Obs. 4.
d § 140, 1, 3d.	l § 140, 1, 4th.	s § 141, Obs. 8.
e § 98, Obs. 6.	m § 123, R.	t § 144, R. LVII.
f § 140, Obs. 3.	n § 147 Obs. 2.	u § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.
g § 121, R. XXVI.	o 96, 1.	v § 140, 1, 2d

mis civitatĭbus pacem et amicitiam confirmāre. Ad eas res conficiendas[a] biennium sibi satis esse[b] duxērunt; [1]in tertium annum profectiōnem lege confirmant. Ad eas res conficiendas[a] Orgetŏrix deligĭtur. Is sibi[c] legatiōnem ad civitātes suscēpit. In eo itinĕre persuādet Castĭco,[d] Catamantalĕdis filio,[e] Sequăno, cujus pater regnum in Sequănis multos annos[f] obtinuĕrat, et a senātu Popŭli Romāni amīcus[g] appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitāte suâ [2]occupāret,[h] quod pater antè habuĕrat; itemque Dumnorīgi[d] Æduo, fratri[e] Divitiăci, qui eo tempŏre[i] [3]principātum in civitāte obtinēbat,[k] ac maxĭmè plebi[l] acceptus erat, ut idem[m] conarētur[h] persuādet, eique[c] filiam suam in matrimonium dat. [4]Perfacĭle[n] factu[o] esse,[b] illis[d] probat, conāta[m] perficĕre, propterea quòd ipse suæ civitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: non esse dubium, quin[p] [5]totīus Galliæ plurĭmum Helvetii possent: se[q] suis copiis[r] suōque exercĭtu illis[c] regna conciliatūrum, confirmat. Hac oratiōne adducti, [6]inter se fidem et jusjurandum dant, et, regno occupāto, per tres potentissĭmos ac firmissĭmos [7]popŭlos totīus Galliæ[s] sese[q] potīri posse [8]sperant.

4. [9]Ea res ut est Helvetiis[t] per [10]indicium enunciāta, morĭbus[r] suis Orgetorĭgem ex [11]vincŭlis causam dicĕre coēgērunt: [12]damnātum pœnam[u] sequi oportēbat, ut igni cremarētur.[v] Die[l] constitūtâ causæ dictiōnis, Orgetŏrix ad judicium omnem suam [13]familiam, [14]ad homĭnum[w] millia decem, undĭque coēgit; et omnes clientes, obæratosque suos, quorum magnum numĕrum habēbat, eōdem conduxit: per eos, ne causam dicĕret,[x] se eripuit. Cùm civĭtas, ob eam

[a] 112, 7.
[b] 94, 3.
[c] § 123, R.
[d] 63.
[e] § 97, R.
[f] § 131, R. XLI.
[g] § 103, R. V.
[h] § 140, 1, 3d.
[i] § 131, R. XL.
[k] § 44, II. 2.
[l] § 111, R.
[m] 19, 4.
[n] § 98, Obs. 6.
[o] 114, 2.
[p] § 140, 3.
[q] § 145, R. LVIII.
[r] § 129, R.
[s] § 121, R. XXVI. Exc. 2.
[t] § 126, R. III
[u] § 113, Exc. III.
[v] § 140, 1. 4th.
[w] § 24, 5.
[x] § 140, 1, 2d

rem incitāta, armis jus suum exsĕqui conarētur,[a] multitudinemque homĭnum ex agris[1] magistrātus cogĕrent,[a] Orgetŏrix mortuus est: neque abest suspicio, ut[c] Helvetii arbitrantur [2]quin[h] ipse sibi[d] mortem conscivĕrit.

5. Post ejus mortem nihĭlo minùs Helvetii id, quod constituĕrant, facĕre conantur, ut e finĭbus suis exeant.[e] Ubi jam se[f] ad eam rem parātos[g] esse arbitrāti sunt, oppĭda sua omnia, numĕro [3] ad duodĕcim, vicos ad quadringentos, relĭqua privāta ædificia incendunt; frumentum omne, præter quod[h] secum portatūri erant, combūrunt; ut, domum[i] reditiōnis spe[k] sublātâ, paratiōres ad omnia pericŭla subeunda[l] essent:[m] [4] trium mensium molīta [5] cibaria sibi[d] quemque domo[i] efferre jubent. Persuādent Raurācis,[d] et Tulingis, et Latobrĭgis, finitĭmis, utì, eōdem [6] usi consilio,[n] oppĭdis suis vicisque exustis,[o] unà cum iis proficiscantur: [e][7] Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluĕrant, et in agrum Norĭcum transiĕrant Noreiamque oppugnârant, receptos[o] ad se, socios[p] sibi[d] adsciscunt.

6. Erant omnīno itinĕra duo, quibus itinerĭbus[q] domo exīre possent:[t] unum[r] per Sequănos, angustum et difficĭle, inter montem Juram et flumen Rhodănum,[8] vix quâ singŭli[s] carri ducerentur;[t] mons autem altissĭmus impendēbat, ut facĭlè perpauci prohibēre possent:[u] altĕrum per [9] Provinciam nostram, multo facilius atque expeditius, [10] propterea quòd Helvetiōrum inter fines, et Allobrŏgum, qui nuper pacāti erant, Rhodănus fluit, isque nonnullis locis[v] [11] vado transĭtur. Extrēmum oppĭdum Allobrŏgum est, proximumque Helvetiōrum finĭbus,[w] Genēva. Ex eo oppĭdo pons ad

---

[a] § 140, Obs. 4. & § 44, II. 2.
[b] § 140, 3.
[c] § 140, Obs. 1.
[d] § 123, R.
[e] § 140, 1, 3d.
[f] § 145, R. LVIII.
[g] § 103, Obs. 2.
[h] 37, 2.
[i] § 130, 4.
[k] § 146. LX. & 109.
[l] 112, 7.
[m] § 140, 1, 2d.
[n] § 121, R. XXVI.
[o] 104, 1, & 2.
[p] § 97, Exp.
[q] 37, 6.
[r] 19, *iter*, § 97, R.
[s] 26, 2
[t] § 141, Obs. 7, & § 139, 2.
[u] § 140, 1, 1st.
[v] § 136, Obs. 5.
[w] § 111, R.

Helvetios pertĭnet. Allobrogĭbus sese vel persuasūros,[a] quòd nondum [1]bono anĭmo[b] in Popŭlum Romānum viderentur,[c] existimābant; vel vi coactūros,[a] ut per suos fines eos ire paterentur.[d] Omnĭbus rebus ad profectiōnem comparātis,[e] [2]diem dicunt, quâ die[f] ad ripam Rhodăni omnes conveniant:[g] is dies erat [3]ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprīlis, [4]Lucio Pisōne, Aulo Gabinio Consulĭbus.[h]

7. Cæsări[i] cùm id nuntiātum esset,[k] eos per Provinciam nostram iter facĕre conāri, matūrat [5]ab urbe proficisci, et, quàm maxĭmis[l] potest itinerĭbus, in [6]Galliam ulteriōrem contendit, et ad Genēvam pervĕnit: [7]Provinciæ[m] toti quàm maxĭmum[l] milĭtum numĕrum impĕrat (erat omnīno in Galliâ ulteriōre legio una); pontem, qui erat [8]ad Genēvam, jubet rescindi.[n] Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii [9]certiōres facti sunt, legātos ad eum mittunt, nobilissĭmos civitātis,[o] cujus legatiōnis Nameius et Verudoctius princĭpem locum obtinēbant,[p] qui dicĕrent,[g] [10]"sibi[q] esse[r] in anĭmo, sine ullo maleficio iter per Provinciam facĕre, propterea quòd aliud iter habērent[c] nullum: rogāre,[s] ut ejus [11]voluntāte id sibi facĕre liceat."[t] Cæsar, quòd memoriâ tenēbat, Lucium Cassium Consŭlem occīsum, exercitumque ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum, et [12]sub jugum missum, [13]concedendum[u] non putābat: neque homĭnes inimīco anĭmo,[b] datâ facultāte per Provinciam itinĕris faciundi,[v] temperatūros ab injuriâ et maleficio existimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercedĕre posset,[d] dum milĭtes, quos imperavĕrat, convenīrent, legātis respondit, "diem se ad deliberandum sumtūrum; si quid vellent,[x] [14]ante diem Idus Aprīlis reverterentur."[y]

a 100, 1.	i § 126, R. III.	r 51, 5.
b § 106, R. VII.	k § 140, Obs. 3.	s 94, 4.
c § 141, Obs. 7.	l § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.	t § 140, 1, 3d.
d § 140, 1, 2d.	m § 123, R. & 5, 1.	u 113, Obs. & 8.
e 104, 1.	n 90, 4.	v 112, 2.
f § 131, R. XL.	o § 107, R. X. Exp.	w § 141, Obs. 8.
g § 141, R. II.	p § 102, R. 1.	x § 140, 2.
h 110, 2.	q § 112, R. II.	y 78, 3.

8. Interea eâ legiōne, quam secum habēbat, militibusque, qui ex Provinciâ convenĕrant, a lacu Lemanno, [1] qui in flumen Rhodănum influit, [2] ad montem Juram, qui fines Sequanōrum ab Helvetiis divĭdit, [3] millia[a] passuum decem novem murum, in altitudĭnem pedum[b] sedĕcim, fossamque perdūcit. Eo opĕre perfecto,[c] præsidia dispōnit, [4] castella commūnit, quò faciliùs, si [5] se invīto transīre conarentur,[d] prohibēre possit.[e] Ubi ea dies, quam constituĕrat cum legātis, venit, et legāti ad eum revertērunt, [6] negat, se[f] more[g] et exemplo[g] Popŭli Romāni posse iter ulli[h] per Provinciam dare; et, si vim[i] facĕre conentur,[d] prohibitūrum[k] ostendit. Helvetii, eâ spe[l] dejecti, [7] navĭbus[g] junctis, ratibusque[g] complurĭbus factis, alii vadis[g] Rhodăni, [8] quà minĭma altitūdo flumĭnis erat, nonnunquam interdiu, sæpiùs noctu, si [9] perrumpĕre possent,[d] conāti, opĕris munitiōne[g] et milĭtum concursu[m] et telis repulsi, hoc conātu[n] destitērunt.

9. Relinquebātur una per Sequănos via, quâ,[g] Sequănis[o] invītis, propter angustias ire non potĕrant. His[h] cùm suâ[p] sponte persuadēre non possent,[q] legātos ad Dumnorĭgem Æduum mittunt, ut eo [10] deprecatōre[o] a Sequănis impetrārent.[r] Dumnŏrix [11] gratiâ[g] et largitiōne apud Sequănos plurĭmum potĕrat, et Helvetiis[s] erat amīcus, quòd ex eâ civitāte Orgetorĭgis filiam, [12] in matrimonium duxĕrat; et, cupiditāte[g] regni adductus, [13] novis rebus[t] studēbat, et quàm plurĭmas[u] civitātes suo sibi[v] beneficio habēre obstrictas volēbat. Ităque rem suscĭpit, et a Sequănis impĕtrat, ut per fines suos ire Helvetios patiantur; obsidesque utì inter sese

---

[a] § 131, R. XLII.& § 24, 5.
[b] § 106, R. VI.
[c] 104, 1, & 109.
[d] § 140, 2.
[e] § 140, 1.
[f] § 145, R. LVIII.
[g] § 129, R.
[h] § 123, R.
[i] § 15, 12.
[k] § 47, Note 1. and 100, 1,
[l] § 136, R. LII.
[m] § 149, R.
[n] § 136, Obs. 5, (*ab.*)
[o] 110, 5.
[p] 30, 2.
[q] § 140, Obs. 4.
[r] § 140, 1, 3d.
[s] § 111, R.
[t] § 112, R. V
[u] § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.
[v] § 126, R. III.

dent, perfĭcit: [1] Sequăni,[2] ne itinĕre Helvetios prohibeant;[a] Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et injuriâ transeant.[a]

10. [3] Cæsări renunciātur[b] Helvetiis[c] esse in anĭmo, per agrum Sequanōrum et Æduōrum iter in Santŏnum fines facĕre, qui non longè a Tolosatium finĭbus absunt, quæ civĭtas est in Provinciâ. Id si fiĕret,[d] [4] intelligēbat magno cum Provinciæ pericŭlo futūrum,[e] ut homĭnes bellicōsos, Popŭli Romāni inimīcos,[f] locis[g] patentĭbus maximēque frumentariis finitĭmos habēret.[h] Ob eas causas ei munitiōni,[i] quam fecĕrat, Titum Labiēnum legātum præfēcit: ipse in Italiam magnis itinerĭbus contendit, duasque ibi legiōnes conscrībit, et tres, quæ circum Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hibernis edūcit; et, quà [5] proxĭmum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpes erat, cum his quinque legionĭbus ire contendit. Ibi Centrōnes, et Graiocĕli, et Caturĭges, locis superiorĭbus occupātis,[k] itinĕre[l] exercĭtum prohibēre conantur. Complurĭbus his prœliis pulsis,[k] ab Ocĕlo, [6] quod est citeriōris Provinciæ extrēmum, in fines Vocontiōrum ulteriōris Provinciæ die septĭmo[m] pervĕnit; inde in Allobrŏgum fines: ab Allobrogĭbus in Segusiānos exercĭtum ducit. Hi sunt extra Provinciam trans Rhodănum primi.[n]

11. Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanōrum suas copias transduxĕrant, et in Æduōrum fines pervenĕrant, eorumque agros populabantur. Ædui, cùm se[o] suăque[p] ab iis defendĕre non possent,[q] legātos ad Cæsărem mittunt [7] rogātum[r] auxilium: "ita se[s] omni tempŏre[m] de Popŭlo Romāno merĭtos esse, ut pæne in conspectu exercĭtûs nostri agri vastāri, libĕri eōrum in servitūtem abdūci, oppĭda ex-

---

[a] § 140, 1, 2d.
[b] 51, 2.
[c] § 112, R. II.
[d] § 140, 2.
[e] § 47, Note 1.
[f] § 97, R.
[g] § 111, R.
[h] 100, Obs. 14.
[i] § 123, R.
[k] 104, 2.
[l] § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)
[m] § 131, R. XL.
[n] 19, (*popŭli.*)
[o] 31.
[p] 19, (*negotia.*)
[q] § 140, Obs. 4.
[r] 114, 1.
[s] § 145, R. LVIII. & 94, 4.

pugnāri non debuĕrint."[a] Eōdem tempŏre Ædui Ambarri, [1] necessarii[b] et consanguinei Æduōrum, Cæsărem certiōrem faciunt, sese,[c] depopulātis agris,[d] non facĭlè ab oppĭdis vim hostium prohibēre: item Allobrŏges, qui trans Rhodănum vicos possessionesque habēbant, fugâ se ad Cæsărem recipiunt, et demonstrant, [2] sibi[e] præter agri solum nihil[c] esse relĭqui.[f] Quibus[g] rebus[h] adductus Cæsar, non expectandum[c] sibi[i] statuit, dum, omnĭbus fortūnis[d] sociōrum consumtis, in Santŏnos Helvetii pervenīrent.

12. [3] Flumen[k] est Arar, quod per fines Æduōrum et Sequanōrum in Rhodănum influit, [4] incredibĭli lenitāte,[h] ita ut ocŭlis,[h] [5] in utram partem fluat,[l] judicāri non possit.[a] [6] Id Helvetii ratĭbus[h] ac lintrĭbus[h] junctis transībant. Ubi per exploratōres Cæsar certior[m] factus est, tres jam copiārum partes[n] Helvetios[c] id flumen[n] transduxisse,[o] quartam verò partem[c] citra flumen Arărim relĭquam[m] esse; [7] de tertiâ vigiliâ cum legionĭbus tribus e castris profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit, quæ nondum flumen[p] transiĕrat. Eos [8] impedītos et inopinantes aggressus, magnam eōrum partem concīdit: relĭqui fugæ[q] sese mandârunt atque [9] in proxĭmas sylvas abdidērunt. Is pagus appellabātur Tigurīnus:[k] nam omnis civĭtas Helvetia in quatuor pagos divīsa est. Hic pagus unus, cùm domo[r] exisset,[s] patrum nostrōrum memoriâ,[t] Lucium Cassium Consŭlem interfecĕrat, et ejus exercĭtum sub jugum misĕrat. Ita, sive[u] casu,[h] sive consilio Deōrum immortalium, quæ[v] pars civitātis Helvetiæ insignem calamitātem Popŭlo[q] Romāno intulĕrat, ea [10] princeps[w] pœnas persolvit. Quâ[g] in re Cæsar non solum publĭcas, sed etiam

[a] § 140, 1, 1st.
[b] § 97, R.
[c] § 145, R. LVIII.
[d] 109, 2.
[e] § 112. R. II.
[f] § 106, R. VI.
[g] 38.
[h] § 129, R.
[i] § 147, & 113.
[k] § 103, R. V.
[l] § 140, 5.
[m] § 103, Obs. 2.
[o] 119, 1.
[o] 98, 2.
[p] § 136, R. LII.
[q] § 123, R.
[r] § 130, 4.
[s] § 140, Obs. 4.
[t] § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)
[u] 124, 6.
[v] 43, & 37, 2d. 4.
[w] § 98, Obs. 10.

privātas injurias ultus est, quòd ejus socĕri Lucii Pisōnis[a] avum, Lucium Pisōnem legātum,[a] Tigurīni eōdem prœlio,[b] quo[b] Cassium, [1] interfecĕrant.

13. Hoc prœlio facto, relĭquas copias Helvetiōrum ut[2]consĕqui posset,[c] [3]pontem in Arăre faciendum[d] curat atque ita exercĭtum transdūcit. Helvetii, repentīno ejus adventu[e] commōti, cùm id, quod ipsi diēbus[f] viginti ægerrĭmè confecĕrant, ut flumen transīrent,[g] uno illum die[f] fecisse intelligĕrent,[h] legātos ad eum mittunt: cujus[i] legatiōnis Divĭco princeps fuit, qui bello[h] [4]Cassiāno dux Helvetiōrum fuĕrat. Is[5]ita cum Cæsăre agit: "Si pacem Popŭlus Romānus cum Helvetiis facĕret,[k] in eam partem itūros[l] atque ibi futūros[l] Helvetios,[m] ubi eos Cæsar constituisset[g] atque esse[n] voluisset:[g] sin bello[e] persĕqui perseverāret,[k] reminiscerētur[o] et[6]vetĕris incommŏdi[p] Popŭli Romāni et pristĭnæ virtūtis[p] Helvetiōrum. Quòd improvīsò unum pagum adortus esset,[g] cùm ii, qui flumen transîssent,[g] suis[q] auxilium ferre non possent,[h] ne ob eam rem aut suæ magno opĕre virtūti[q] [7]tribuĕret[n] aut[r] ipsos despicĕret: se[m] ita a patrĭbus majoribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtūte,[e] quàm dolo[s] aut insidiis, niterentur.[t] [8]Quare ne committĕret,[o] ut is locus, ubi constitissent,[g] ex calamitāte Popŭli Romāni et interneciōne exercĭtûs nomen capĕret,[t] aut[r] memoriam prodĕret."

14. [9]His Cæsar ita respondit: "Eo sibi[u] minus[m] dubitatiōnis[v] dari, quòd eas res, quas legāti Helvetii commemorâssent,[g] memoriâ tenēret:[w] atque eo[x] graviùs ferre, quo[x] minùs merĭto[e] Popŭli Romāni accidissent; [10]qui[y] si alicujus

[a] § 97, R.
[b] § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)
[c] § 140, 1, 2d.
[d] 108, 4.
[e] § 129. R.
[f] § 131. R. XLI.
[g] § 141, Obs. 8.
[h] § 140. Obs. 4.
[i] 38.
[k] § 140, 2.
[l] § 47, 4, Note 1.
[m] § 145, R. LVIII.
[n] 90.
[o] § 140, 1,3d,& Obs. 5.
[p] § 108, R.XIV.& 7, 1.
[q] § 123. R. & 19.
[r] § 149, R.
[s] § 120, Obs. 1.
[t] § 140, 1, 3d.
[u] § 126, R III.
[v] § 106, R. VIII.
[w] § 140, 6.
[x] 22, 4, or 44, 7
[y] 39.

injuriæ sibi[a] conscius fuisset,[b] [1] non fuisse[c] difficĭle[d] cavēre, [2]sed eo deceptum,[e] quòd neque commissum a se intelligĕret,[f] quare timēret;[f] neque sine causâ [3]timendum[g] putāret. [4]Quòd si vetĕris contumeliæ[h] oblivisci vellet; [5]num[i] etiam recentium injuriārum, quòd eo[k] invīto iter per Provinciam per vim tentâssent,[f] quòd Æduos, quòd Ambarros, quòd Allobrŏgas vexâssent,[f] memoriam deponĕre posse? Quòd suâ victoriâ tam insolentèr gloriarentur,[f] quòdque tam diu se impunè tulisse injurias admirarentur,[f] eòdem [6]pertinēre:[c] consuêsse enim Deos[l] immortāles, quo graviùs homĭnes ex commutatiōne rerum doleant,[m] quos pro scelĕre eōrum ulcisci velint,[n] his[o] [7]secundiōres interdum res et diuturniōrem impunitātem concedĕre.[p] [8]Cùm ea ita sint,[q] tamen, si obsĭdes ab iis sibi[r] dentur,[b] utì ea, quæ polliceantur,[n] factūros intellĭgat,[s] et si Æduis[t] de injuriis, quas ipsis[o] sociisque eōrum intulĕrint,[n] item si Allobrogĭbus[t] satisfaciant,[b] sese[l] cum iis pacem esse factūrum." Divĭco respondit: "Ita Helvetios a majorĭbus[u] suis institūtos esse, utì obsĭdes accipĕre, non dare, consuêrint:[m] ejus rei Popŭlum Romānum[l] esse [9]testem." Hoc responso dato, discessit.

15. Postĕro die[v] castra ex eo loco movent: idem facit Cæsar; equitatumque omnem, ad numĕrum quatuor millium, quem ex omni Provinciâ et Æduis atque eōrum sociis coactum[w] habēbat, præmittit, qui videant,[x] quas in partes hostes iter faciant.[y] Qui,[z] [10]cupidiùs[aa] novissĭmum agmen

---

a § 111, R.
b § 140, 2.
c § 51, 5.
d § 98, Obs. 6.
e § 47, 6.
f § 140, 6.
g 113, 8, (*sibi.*)
h § 108, R. XIV. & 7, 1.
i 56, 3.
k 110, 5.
l § 145, R. LVIII.
m § 140, 1.
n § 141, Obs. 8.
o § 123, R.
p § 144, R. LVII.
q § 140, Obs. 4, & 74, 1.
r § 126. R. III.
s § 140, 1, 2d.
t § 112, R. III.
u § 126, Obs. 2.
v § 131, R. XL.
w § 146, R. LIX.
x § 141, R. II.
y § 140, 5.
z 39. 5.
aa 22, 3.

insecūti, aliēno loco cum equitātu Helvetiōrum prœlium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo prœlio sublāti Helvetii, quòd quingentis[a] equitĭbus tantam multitudĭnem equĭtum propulĕrant, audaciùs subsistĕre, nonnunquam ex [1] novissĭmo agmĭne prœlio[a] nostros[b] lacessĕre, cœpērunt. Cæsar suos[b] a prœlio continēbat, ac [2] satis habēbat in præsentia[x] hostem rapīnis,[c] pabulationĭbus,[c] populationibusque, prohibēre. Ita dies[d] circĭter quindĕcim iter fecērunt, utì inter novissĭmum hostium agmen et [3] nostrum primum[e] non amplius [4] quinis[f] aut senis millĭbus[g] passuum interesset.

16. [5] Intĕrim quotidie Cæsar Æduos[h] frumentum,[h] quod essent[i] publĭcè pollicĭti, flagitāre:[k] nam propter [6] frigŏra, quòd Gallia [7] sub septentrionĭbus, ut antè dictum est, posĭta est, non modò frumenta in agris matūra non erant, sed ne pabŭli quidem[l] satis magna copia suppetēbat: eo autem [8] frumento,[m] quod flumĭne[a] Arăre navĭbus[a] subvexĕrat, propterea uti minùs potĕrat, quòd iter ab Arăre Helvetii avertĕrant, a quibus discedĕre nolēbat. Diem ex die ducĕre[k] Ædui; [9] conferri,[n] comportāri, adesse dicĕre.[k] Ubi [10] se diutiùs duci[o] intellexit, et diem instāre,[o] quo die[p] frumentum militĭbus metīri oportēret;[q] convocātis eōrum principĭbus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habēbat, in his Divitiăco[r] et Lisco, [11] qui summo magistrātu[s] præĕrat (quem Vergobrētum appellant Ædui, qui creātur annuus,[t] et vitæ necisque in suos habet potestātem,) gravĭter eos accūsat, quòd, cùm neque emi,[u] neque ex agris sumi posset,[v] tam necessario tempŏre, tam propinquis hostĭbus, ab iis non sublevētur;[w] præsertim cùm magnâ ex parte eōrum preci-

---

[a] § 129, R.
[b] 19, (*milites.*)
[c] § 136, Obs. 5, (*ab.*)
[d] § 131, R. XLI.
[e] 19, (*agmen.*)
[f] § 24, 11, & 26, 1.
[g] § 120, R.
[h] § 124, R.
[i] § 141, Obs. 8.
[k] § 144, Obs. 6.
[l] 121, Note 2.
[m] § 121, R. XXVI.
[n] § 144, R. LVII.
[o] 96, 6.
[p] 37, Note 1, 6.
[q] § 113, Exc. III.
[r] § 97, R.
[s] § 112, R. I.
[t] § 98, Obs. 10.
[u] 87.
[v] § 140, Obs. 4.
[w] § 141, Obs. 7
[x] 19. (*tempŏra.*)

bus[a] adductus bellum suscepĕrit:[b] multo[c] etiam graviùs quòd sit destitūtus,[d] querĭtur.

17. Tum demum Liscus, oratiōne[a] Cæsăris adductus, quod[e] antea 1 tacuĕrat, propōnit: "Esse nonnullos, quorum auctorĭtas apud plebem 2 plurĭmùm valeat;[d] qui 3 privāti plus possint, quàm ipsi magistrātus. Hos seditiōsâ atque imprŏbâ oratiōne[a] multitudĭnem deterrēre, ne frumentum confĕrant,[f] quod præstāre debeant.[g] Si jam principātum Galliæ obtinēre non possint,[h] Gallōrum, quàm Romanōrum imperia perferre, satiùs esse; neque dubitāre debēre, quin, si Helvetios superavĕrint[h] Romāni, unà cum relĭquâ Galliâ Æduis[i] libertātem sint ereptūri.[k] Ab iisdem nostra consilia, quæque in castris gerantur,[l] hostĭbus[m] enunciāri: hos a se coërcēri non posse. Quin etiam, quòd 4 necessariò rem coactus Cæsări[i] enunciârit,[l] intelligĕre sese, quanto id cum pericŭlo fecĕrit,[n] et ob eam causam, quàm diu potuĕrit,[l] tacuisse."

18. Cæsar hac oratiōne[a] Lisci Dumnorĭgem, Divitiăci fratrem,[o] 5 designāri sentiēbat: sed, quòd 6 plurĭbus[p] præsentĭbus eas res jactāri nolēbat, celerĭter concilium dimittit, Liscum retĭnet: quærit ex 7 solo ea, quæ in conventu dixĕrat. Dicit liberiùs atque audaciùs. Eădem secrētò ab aliis quærit; repĕrit esse vera. "Ipsum esse Dumnorĭgem, summâ audaciâ,[q] magnâ apud plebem propter liberalitātem gratiâ,[q] cupĭdum rerum[r] novārum: complūres annos[s] portoria, reliquăque omnia Æduōrum vectigalia, parvo pretio 8 redemta[t] habēre, propterea quòd, illo licente,[p] contra licēri audeat[l]

---

a § 129, R.
b § 140, Obs. 3, & 74.
c § 132, Obs. 6.
d § 141, Obs. 7.
e 37, 2.
f § 140, 1, 3d. & 77.
g § 141, Obs. 8.
h § 140, 2.
i § 123, R.
k § 45, 1, & § 140, 3.
l § 140, 6.
m § 126, R. III.
n § 140, 5, & 74, 2d.
o § 97, R.
p § 146, R. LX. & 9
q § 107, R. VII. & 6, 1
r § 107, R. IX.
s § 131, R. XLI.
t § 146, Obs. 1.

nemo. His rebus[a] et suam rem familiārem auxisse,[b] et [1]facultātes ad largiendum magnas comparâsse:[b] magnum numerum equitātus suo sumtu[c] semper alĕre[d] et circum se habēre:[d] neque solùm domi,[e] sed etiam apud finitĭmas civitātes [2]largĭter posse: atque hujus potentiæ causâ matrem in Biturigĭbus, homĭni[f] illic nobilissĭmo,[g] ac potentissĭmo, [2]collocâsse:[b] ipsum ex Helvetiis uxōrem habēre:[d] sorōrem ex matre, et propinquas suas nuptum[h] in alias civitātes collocâsse:[b] favēre et [3]cupĕre Helvetiis[i] propter eam affinitātem: odisse etiam suo nomĭne[a] Cæsărem et Romānos, quòd eōrum adventu[a] potentia ejus diminūta,[k] et Divitiăcus frater in antīquum locum gratiæ atque honōris sit restitūtus.[k] [4]Si quid accĭdat[l] Romānis,[m] summam in spem per Helvetios regni obtinendi[n] venīre; imperio[o] Popŭli Romāni non modò de regno, sed etiam de eà, quam habeat,[k] gratiâ desperāre.[d] Reperiēbat etiam [5]inquirendo[p] Cæsar, quòd prœlium equestre adversum paucis ante diēbus[q] esset factum, initium ejus fugæ factum a Dumnorĭge atque ejus equitĭbus" (nam [6]equitātu,[r] quem auxilio[s] Cæsări[s] Ædui misĕrant, Dumnŏrix præĕrat), "eōrum fugâ relĭquum esse equitātum perterrĭtum."

19. Quibus[t] rebus cognĭtis, cùm ad has suspiciōnes [7]certissĭmæ res accedĕrent,[u] quòd per fines Sequanōrum Helvetios transduxisset,[k] quòd obsĭdes inter eos dandos curâsset,[k] quòd ea omnia non modò [8]injussu suo[v] et civitātis, sed etiam inscientĭbus ipsis fecisset,[k] quòd a magistrātu Æduōrum accusarētur: satis esse causæ[w] arbitrabātur, quare in eum aut ipse animadvertĕret,[x] aut civitātem animadvertĕre jubēret.[x]

---

[a] § 129, R.
[b] 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.
[c] § 133, R.
[d] 96, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.
[e] § 130, 4.
[f] § 123, R
[g] 24, 1.
[h] § 148, Obs. 2.
[i] § 112, R. V.
[k] § 140, 6.
[l] § 140, 2.
[m] § 112, R. IV.
[n] 112, 5.
[o] § 136, Obs. 5. (*sub*)
[p] § 147, Obs. 5.
[q] § 131, R. XL.
[r] § 112, R, I.
[s] § 114, R.
[t] 38, 3.
[u] § 140, Obs. 4.
[v] 29, 1.
[w] § 135, R. XLVI.
[x] § 140, 5.

His omnĭbus rebus [a] unum repugnābat, quòd Divitiăci fratris summum in Popŭlum Romānum studium, summam in se [1] voluntātem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognovĕrat: nam, ne [b] ejus supplicio [c] Divitiăci anĭmum offendĕret,[d] verebātur. Itaque priusquàm quicquam conarētur,[e] Divitiăcum ad se vocāri [f] jubet, et, quotidiānis interpretĭbus remōtis, per Caium Valerium Procillum, princĭpem Galliæ provinciæ, familiārem [g] suum, cui [h] summam omnium rerum fidem habēbat, cum eo colloquĭtur: simul [2] commonefăcit, quæ ipso præsente in concilio Gallōrum de Dumnorĭge sint [i] dicta, et [3] ostendit, quæ separātim quisque de eo apud se dixĕrit,[i] petit atque hortātur, ut sine ejus offensiōne anĭmi vel [k] ipse de eo, [4] causâ cognĭtâ, statuat,[l] vel civitātem statuĕre jubeat.[l]

20. Divitiăcus multis cum lacrȳmis, Cæsărem complexus, obsecrāre cœpit, [5] "ne quid gravius [m] in fratrem statuĕret: [l] scire se, illa esse vera, nec quenquam ex eo plus, quàm se, dolōris [n] capĕre, propterea quòd, cùm [6] ipse gratiâ plurĭmum domi atque in relĭquâ Galliâ, [7] ille minĭmum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus [o] opĭbus [p] ac nervis, non solùm ad minuendam [q] gratiam, sed pæne ad perniciem suam uterētur: sese tamen et amōre [8] fraterno et existimatiōne vulgi commovēri. Quòd si quid [7] ei [r] a Cæsăre gravius [m] accidisset,[s] cùm [6] ipse eum locum amicitiæ apud eum tenēret, nemĭnem existimatūrum,[t] non suâ voluntāte factum; quâ ex re futūrum,[u] utì totius Galliæ anĭmi a se averterentur." Hæc cùm plurĭbus verbis flens a Cæsăre petĕret,[v] Cæsar ejus dextram prendit; consolātus

---

a § 112, R. V.	h § 123, R.	p § 121, R. XXVI.
b § 140, Obs. 6.	i § 140, 5.	q 112, 7.
c § 129, R.	k 124, 3.	r § 112, R. IV.
d § 140, 1.	l § 140, 1, 3d	s § 140, 2, & 80, 2.
e § 140, 4.	m 22.	t 100, 2.
f 90, 4.	n § 106, R. VIII.	u 51.
g § 97, R.	o 38.	v 74, 1st, 3.

rogat, finem orandi faciat:[a] tanti[b] ejus apud se gratiam esse ostendit, utì et reipublĭcæ injuriam et suum dolōrem ejus voluntāti ac precĭbus condōnet.[c] Dumnorĭgem ad se vocat; fratrem [1] adhĭbet; quæ in eo reprehendat,[d] ostendit; quæ ipse intellĭgat,[d] quæ civĭtas querātur,[d] propōnit; monet, ut in relĭquum tempus omnes suspiciōnes vitet;[e] præterĭta[f] se [2] Divitiăco[g] fratri condonāre dicit. Dumnorĭgi[g] [3] custōdes ponit, ut, quæ agat,[d] quibuscum loquātur,[d] scire possit.[h]

21. Eōdem die ab exploratorĭbus certior factus, hostes sub monte [4] consedisse[i] millia[k] passuum ab ipsius castris octo; qualis esset[d] natūra montis et qualis in circuĭtu ascensus, qui cognoscĕrent,[l] misit. Renunciātum est, [5] facĭlem esse.[m] De tertiâ [6] vigiliâ Titum Labiēnum, [7] legātum pro [8] prætōre, cum duābus legionĭbus, [9] et iis ducĭbus, qui iter cognovĕrant, summum jugum montis ascendĕre jubet; quid sui consilii sit,[d] ostendit. Ipse de quartâ vigiliâ eōdem itinĕre, quo hostes iĕrant, ad eos contendit, equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. Publius Considius, qui rei militāris[n] peritissĭmus habebātur, et in exercĭtu Lucii Sullæ, et postea [10] in Marci Crassi fuĕrat, cum exploratorĭbus præmittĭtur.

22. [11] Primâ luce,[o] cùm summus[p] mons a Tito Labiēno tenerētur,[q] [12] ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passĭbus abesset,[q] neque, ut postea ex captīvis compĕrit, aut ipsius adventus, aut Labiēni, cognĭtus esset;[q] Considius, [13] equo[r] admisso, ad eum accurrit: dicit, montem, quem a Labiēno occupāri voluĕrit, ab hostĭbus tenēri;[s] id se a Gallĭcis armis[t] atque insignĭbus cognovisse.[u] Cæ-

[a] § 140, 1, 3d, & Obs. 5.
[b] § 106, R. VII. or § 122, R. XXVIII.
[c] § 140, 1, 1st.
[d] § 140, 5, & 74, 9.
[e] § 140 1, 3d.
[f] 19.
[g] § 123, R.
[h] § 140, 1. 2d.
[i] 98, 2.
[k] § 132, R. XLII.
[l] § 141, R. II. Obs. 2, 4th.
[m] 96, 6.
[n] § 107, R. IX.
[o] § 131, R. XL.
[p] § 98, Obs. 9, & 17, 2.
[q] § 140, Obs. 4.
[r] § 146, R. LX.
[s] 96, 6, & 94, 1, 2d.
[t] § 129, Obs. 2.
[u] 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d

sar suas copias in proxĭmum collem subdūcit,[a] aciem instruit.[a] Labiēnus, ut erat ei[b] præceptum[c] a Cæsăre ne prœlium committĕret,[d] nisi ipsius copiæ prope hostium castra[e] visæ essent,[f] ut undĭque uno tempŏre in hostes impĕtus fiĕret,[g] monte occupāto nostros expectābat prœliōque abstinēbat. [1] Multo denĭque die per exploratōres Cæsar cognōvit, et montem a suis tenēri,[h] et Helvetios castra movisse,[i] et Considium, timōre perterrĭtum, quod non vidisset,[f] [2] pro viso sibi renunciâsse.[i] Eo die, [3] quo[k] consuĕrat intervallo, hostes sequĭtur, et millia passuum tria, ab eōrum castris castra ponit.

23. Postridie ejus diēi,[l] quòd omnīno biduum superĕrat, cùm [4] exercĭtu frumentum metīri oportēret,[m] et quòd a Bibracte, oppĭdo Æduōrum longè maxĭmo et copiosissĭmo, non amplius millĭbus[n] passuum octodĕcim abĕrat, [5] rei[o] frumentariæ prospiciendum[p] existimāvit, iter ab Helvetiis avertit, ac Bibracte[q] ire contendit. Ea res per fugitīvos Lucii Æmilii, [6] decuriōnis equĭtum Gallōrum, hostĭbus[b] nunciātur. Helvetii, seu,[r] quòd timōre perterrĭtos Romānos [7] discedĕre a se existimārent,[s] eo magis, quòd pridie, superiorĭbus locis occupātis,[u] prœlium non commovissent;[s] sive eo, quòd re[t] frumentariâ interclūdi posse [8] confidĕrent;[s] commutāto[u] consilio atque itinĕre converso,[u] nostros a novissĭmo agmĭne insĕqui ac lacessĕre cœpērunt.

24. Postquam id [9] anĭmum advertit, copias suas Cæsar in proxĭmum collem subdūcit,[a] equitatumque, [10] qui sustinēret[v] hostium impĕtum, misit. Ipse intĕrim, in colle medio,[w]

---

[a] § 44, I. 3.
[b] § 126, R. III.
[c] 51.
[d] § 140, 1, 3d, & 121, 3.
[e] § 136, Obs. 5. (*ad.*)
[f] § 141, Obs. 8.
[g] § 140, 1, 2d.
[h] 96, 6.
[i] 98, 2.
[k] 37, 2d. 4, & Note 1.
[l] § 135, R. XLVI.
[m] § 140, Obs. 4. & § 113, Exc. III.
[n] § 120, R. & 6. 3.
[o] § 112, R. V.
[p] 113.
[q] § 130, 2.
[r] 124, 6.
[s] § 140. Obs. 2.
[t] § 136, Obs. 5, (*ab.*)
[u] 104, 1.
[v] § 141, Obs. 2, 4th
[w] § 98, Obs. 9, & 17.

triplĭcem aciem instruxit legiōnum quatuor veteranārum, ita, utì supra se in summo jugo duas legiōnes, quas in [1] Galliâ citeriōre proxĭmè conscripsĕrat, et omnia auxilia collocāret; ac totum montem hominĭbus[a] [2] complēri,[b] et interea sarcĭnas in unum locum conferri,[b] et [3] eum ab his, qui in superiōre acie constitĕrant, munīri[b] jussit. Helvetii, cum omnĭbus suis carris secūti, impedimenta in unum locum contulērunt: ipsi, [4] confertissĭmâ acie,[c] rejecto[d] nostro equitātu, phalange factâ,[d] [5] sub primam nostram aciem successērunt.

25. Cæsar, primum [6] suo, deinde omnium ex conspectu remōtis[d] equis, ut, æquāto omnium [7] pericŭlo, spem fugæ tollĕret, cohortātus suos, prœlium commīsit. Milĭtes, e loco superiōre pilis missis,[d] facĭlè hostium phalangem perfregērunt. Eâ disjectâ,[e] gladiis[f] destrictis in eos impĕtum fecērunt. Gallis[g] magno ad pugnam erat[h] impedimento,[g] quòd, plurĭbus eōrum [8] scutis[e] uno ictu pilōrum transfixis et colligātis, cùm ferrum se inflexisset,[i] neque evellĕre, neque, sinistrâ impedītâ,[e] satis [9] commŏdè pugnāre potĕrant; multi ut, diu jactāto brachio, præoptārent[k] scutum manu[l] emittĕre, et [10] nudo corpŏre[f] pugnāre. Tandem vulnerĭbus defessi, et [11] pedem referre, et quòd mons subĕrat circiter mille passuum, eò se recipĕre cœpērunt. Capto monte,[e] et succedentĭbus nostris,[e] Boii et Tulingi, qui homĭnum millĭbus[f] circĭter quindĕcim [12] agmen hostium claudēbant, et novissĭmis[g] præsidio erant, ex itinĕre nostros latĕre[m] aperto aggressi, circumvenêre: et id conspicāti Helvetii, qui in montem sese recepĕrant, rursus instāre et prœlium redintegrāre cœpērunt. Romāni conversa signa [13] bipartītò intulērunt: prima, ac secunda acies, ut victis ac summōtis resistĕret;[n] tertia, ut venientes excipĕret.[n]

---

[a] § 126, R. V.
[b] 94, 3. or 90, 4.
[c] § 129, R.
[d] 104. 1.
109.
[f] § 129, R.
[g] § 114, R. & 8, 1.
[h] 51, 1.
[i] § 140, Obs. 4.
[k] § 140, 1, 1st. (*ita.*)
[l] § 136, R. LII.
[m] § 136, Obs. 5, (*ab*)
[n] § 140, 1, 2d.

26. Ita [1] ancipĭti prœlio [a] diu atque acrĭter pugnātum est.[b] Diutius cùm nostrōrum impĕtus sustinēre non possent,[c] [2] altĕri [d] se, ut cœpĕrant, in montem recepērunt; altĕri [d] ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulērunt. Nam hoc toto prœlio,[e] cùm ab [3] horâ septĭmâ ad vespĕrum pugnātum sit,[c] [4] aversum hostem vidēre nemo potuit. [5] Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est, propterea quòd pro vallo carros objecĕrant, et e loco superiōre in nostros [f] venientes tela conjiciēbant,[g] et nonnulli, inter carros rotasque, [6] matăras ac tragŭlas subjiciēbant [g] nostrosque vulnerābant.[g] Diu cùm esset pugnātum, impedimentis [h] castrisque nostri potīti sunt. Ibi Orgetorĭgis filia, atque unus e filiis [i] captus est. Ex eo prœlio circĭter millia homĭnum centum et triginta superfuērunt, eâque totâ nocte [e] continentèr iērunt: nullam partem [e] noctis itinĕre intermisso, in fines Lingŏnum die quarto [k] pervenērunt, cùm, et [l] propter vulnĕra milĭtum, et propter sepultūram occisōrum,[f] nostri, triduum [e] morāti, eos sequi non potuissent.[c] Cæsar ad Lingŏnas litĕras nunciosque misit, ne eos frumento, neve aliâ re juvārent: [m] [7] qui si juvissent,[n] [8] se eōdem loco, quo Helvetios, habitūrum. Ipse, triduo intermisso, cum omnĭbus copiis eos sequi cœpit.

27. Helvetii omnium rerum inopiâ adducti, legātos de deditiōne ad eum misērunt. [9] Qui,[o] cùm eum in itinĕre convenissent,[c] seque ad pedes projecissent, suppliciterque locūti flentes pacem petissent, atque eos [p] in eo loco, quo tum essent,[q] suum adventum expectāre [r] jussisset, paruērunt. Eò postquam Cæsar pervēnit, obsĭdes, arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent,[s] poposcit. Dum ea conquiruntur, et conferun-

---

[a] § 129, R.
[b] 65, 5.
[c] § 140, Obs. 3.
[d] 27, Obs. 10.
[e] § 131, R. XLI. & Exp.
[f] 19, (*milĭtes.*)
[g] § 44, II, 2.
[h] § 121, R. XXVI.
[i] § 107, Obs. 8.
[k] § 131, R. XL.
[l] 124, 1.
[m] § 140, 1, 3d.
[n] § 140, 2.
[o] 39, 5.
[p] § 145, R. LVIII.
[q] § 141, Obs. 8.
[r] 94, 3. or 90, 4.
[s] § 141, R. I.

tur, nocte intermissâ, circĭter homĭnum millia sex ejus pagi qui Verbigĕnus[a] appellātur, sive timōre perterrĭti, ne, armis tradĭtis, supplicio afficerentur,[b] sive spe salūtis inducti, quòd, in tantâ multitudĭne dedititiōrum, suam fugam[c] aut [1]occultāri,[d] aut [2]omnīno ignorāri posse existimārent,[e] [3]primâ[f] nocte ex castris Helvetiōrum egressi, ad Rhenum finesque Germanōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod[g] ubi Cæsar resciit, [4]quorum per fines iĕrant, his,[h] utì conquirĕrent[i] et reducĕrent, si sibi purgāti[d] esse vellent,[k] imperāvit: reductos[l] in hostium numĕro[5] habuit: relĭquos omnes, obsidĭbus, armis, perfŭgis tradĭtis, in deditiōnem accēpit. Helvetios, Tulingos, Latobrĭgos in fines suos, unde erant profecti, reverti[m] jussit; et quòd, omnĭbus fructĭbus amissis, domi[n] nihil erat, quo famem tolerārent,[o] Allobrogĭbus[h] imperāvit, ut iis[p] frumenti copiam facĕrent:[i] [6]ipsos[c] oppĭda vicosque, quos incendĕrant, restituĕre jussit. Id eâ maxĭmè ratiōne[q] fecit, quòd noluit, eum locum,[c] unde Helvetii discessĕrant, [7]vacāre;[m] ne propter bonitātem agrōrum Germāni, qui trans Rhenum incŏlunt, e suis finĭbus in Helvetiōrum fines transīrent,[b] et finitĭmi[a] Galliæ provinciæ[r] Allobrogibusque essent. [8]Boios, petentĭbus Æduis,[h] quòd egregiâ virtūte[s] erant cognĭti, ut in finĭbus suis collocārent,[i] concessit: quibus[h] illi agros dedērunt, quosque postea in parem juris libertatisque conditiōnem, atque[t] ipsi erant, recepērunt.

29. In castris Helvetiōrum [9]tabŭlæ repertæ sunt, [10]litĕris Græcis confectæ et ad Cæsărem relātæ, quibus[u] in tabŭlis nominātim [11]ratio confecta erat, qui numĕrus domo exisset[v]

---

[a] § 103, R. V.
[b] § 140, 1. 2d.
[c] § 145, R. LVIII.
[d] 87, 6.
[e] § 141, Obs. 7.
[f] 17, 1.
[g] 38, 4.
[h] 63.
[i] § 140, 1, 3d.
[k] § 140, 2.
[l] 19, (*eos.*)
[m] 94, 3. or 90, 4.
[n] § 130, 4.
[o] § 141, R. I.
[p] § 123, R.
[q] § 129, R.
[r] § 111, R.
[s] § 106, R. VII.
[t] § 149, Obs. 6.
[u] 37. Note 1. 6.
[v] § 140, 5.

eōrum, qui arma ferre possent:[a] et item separātim puĕri, senes, mulieresque. Quarum[b] omnium rerum summa erat, [1]capĭtum Helvetiōrum millia[c] ducenta et sexaginta tria, Tulingōrum millia triginta sex, Latobrigōrum quatuordĕcim, Rauracōrum viginti tria, Boiōrum triginta duo: ex his, qui arma ferre possent,[a] ad millia nonaginta duo. Summa omnium[d] fuērunt ad millia trecenta et sexaginta octo. Eōrum, qui domum rediērunt, [2]censu[e] habĭto, ut Cæsar imperavĕrat, repertus est numĕrus millium centum et decem.

30. Bello[e] Helvetiōrum confecto, totius fere Galliæ legāti, princĭpes civitātum, ad Cæsărem [3]gratulātum[f] convenērunt: "intelligĕre sese,[g] tametsi, [4]pro veterĭbus Helvetiōrum injuriis Popŭli Romāni, ab iis pœnas bello repetisset,[h] tamen eam rem[g] non minùs ex usu terræ Galliæ, quàm Popŭli Romāni accidisse: propterea quòd eo consilio, florentissĭmis rebus, domos suas Helvetii reliquissent, utì toti Galliæ[i] bellum inferrent,[k] imperiōque potirentur,[k] locumque domicilio[l] ex magnâ copiâ deligĕrent,[k] quem ex omni Galliâ opportunissĭmum ac fructuosissĭmum judicâssent,[a] reliquasque civitātes stipendiarias habērent." Petiērunt, "utì sibi[m] concilium totius Galliæ in diem certam indicĕre, idque Cæsăris voluntāte facĕre, licēret:[n] sese[g] habēre quasdam res, quas ex commūni consensu ab eo petĕre vellent.[o]" Eâ re permissâ, diem concilio[l] constituērunt, et jurejurando, [5]ne[p] quis enunciāret,[n] nisi quibus[q] commūni consilio mandātum esset, inter se sanxērunt.

31. Eo concilio dimisso, iidem princĭpes civitātum, qui antè fuĕrant ad Cæsărem, revertērunt, petieruntque, utì sibi secrētò de suâ[r] omniumque salūte cum eo agĕre licēret.[n]

---

[a] § 141, Obs. 3.
[b] 38.
[c] § 24, 5.
[d] 19.
[e] 109, 2.
[f] 114,
[g] § 145, R. LVIII.
[h] § 140, 3.
[i] § 123, R.
[k] § 140, 1. 2d.
[l] § 114, R. & Obs. 4, (*sibi.*)
[m] § 113, R.
[n] § 140, 1, 3d.
[o] § 141, Obs. 8.
[p] 121.
[q] § 126, R. III.
[r] 29, 1

Eâ re impetrātâ,[a] sese[b] omnes flentes Cæsări[c] ad pedes projecērunt: [1]non minùs se[d] id contendĕre et laborāre, ne ea, quæ dixissent,[e] enunciarentur,[f] quàm uti ea, quæ vellent, impetrārent,[f] propterea quòd, si enunciātum esset,[g] summum in cruciātum se ventūros vidērent."[h] Locūtus est pro his Divitiăcus Æduus:[i] "Galliæ totius factiōnes[d] esse duas: [2]harum alterius principātum tenēre Æduos,[d] alterius Arvernos. [3]Hi cùm tantopĕre de potentātu inter se multos annos contendĕrent,[k] factum esse[l] utì ab Arvernis Sequanisque Germāni mercēde arcesserentur.[m] [4]Horum primò circĭter millia[d] quindĕcim Rhenum[n] transîsse: posteaquam agros, et cultum, et [5]copias Gallōrum homĭnes feri ac barbări adamâssent,[h] transductos plures:[d] nunc esse in Galliâ ad centum et viginti millium numĕrum: cum his Æduos[d] eorumque clientes semel atque itĕrum armis contendisse;[o] magnam calamitātem pulsos accepisse,[o] omnem nobilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum amisisse.[o] Quibus[p] prœliis calamitatibusque fractos, qui et suâ virtūte, et Popŭli Romāni hospitio atque amicitiâ, plurĭmum antè in Galliâ potuissent,[h] coactos esse Sequănis obsĭdes dare, nobilissĭmos civitātis,[q] et jurejurando civitātem obstringĕre, sese neque obsĭdes repetitūros,[r] neque auxilium a Popŭlo Romāno imploratūros,[r] [6]neque recusatūros,[r] quo minùs perpetuò sub illōrum ditiōne atque imperio essent.[s] [7]Unum se esse ex omni civitāte Æduōrum, qui addūci[t] non potuĕrit,[h] ut jurāret,[u] aut libĕros suos obsĭdes daret.[u] Ob eam rem se[d] ex civitāte profugisse,[o] et Romam[v] ad senātum venisse, auxilium postulātum,[w] quòd solus neque jurejurando[x] neque

a 109.	i 94, 4.	r 100, 2.
b 31, 1.	k § 140, Obs. 4.	s § 140, 3.
c § 110, Obs. 1, & 2.	l 51, 4.	t 87.
d § 145, R. LVIII.	m § 140, 1, 4th.	u § 140, 1, 3d
e § 141, Obs. 8.	n § 136, R. LII.	v § 130, 2.
f § 140, 1, 2d.	o 98, 2.	w 114, 1.
g § 140, 2.	p 38, 9.	x § 129, R.
h § 140, 6	q § 107, R.X. & Exp.	

obsĭdĭbus[a] tenerētur.[b] Sed pejùs victorĭbus Sequănis,[c] quàm Æduis[c] victis, accidisse:[d] propterea quòd Ariovistus, rex Germanōrum, in eōrum finĭbus consedisset,[b] tertiamque partem agri Sequăni, qui esset[e] optĭmus totius Galliæ, occupavisset,[b] et nunc de altĕrâ parte tertiâ Sequănos decedĕre jubēret;[b] propterea quòd, paucis mensĭbus[f] antè, Harūdum millia homĭnum viginti quatuor ad eum venissent;[b] [1] quibus[g] locus ac sedes pararentur.[e] [2] Futūrum[h] esse paucis annis[f] utì omnes ex Galliæ finĭbus pellerentur,[i] atque omnes Germāni Rhenum transīrent:[i] [3] neque enim conferendum[k] esse Gallĭcum cum Germanōrum agro, neque hanc consuetudĭnem victûs cum illâ comparandam.[k] Ariovistum autem, [4] ut semel Gallōrum copias prœlio vicĕrit,[e] quod prœlium[l] factum sit[b] ad Magetobriam, superbè et crudelĭter imperāre, obsĭdes nobilissĭmi cujusque libĕros poscĕre, [5] et in eos omnia exempla cruciatusque edĕre, si qua res non ad nutum aut ad voluntātem ejus facta sit:[m] homĭnem esse barbărum, iracundum, temerarium: non posse ejus imperia[n] diutius sustinēri. [6] Nisi si quid in Cæsăre Populōque Romāno sit auxilii,[o] omnĭbus Gallis[p] idem esse faciendum, quod Helvetii fecĕrint,[e] [7] ut domo emigrent,[i] aliud domicilium, alias sedes, remōtas a Germānis, petant,[i] fortunamque, quæcumque accĭdat,[e] experiantur.[i] "Hæc si enunciāta Ariovisto sint,[m] non dubitāre, quin de omnĭbus obsidĭbus, qui apud eum sint,[e] gravissĭmum supplicium sumat.[q] Cæsărem vel auctoritāte[a] suâ[r] atque exercĭtûs, vel recenti victoriâ, vel nomĭne Popŭli Romāni deterrēre posse, ne major multitūdo Germanōrum Rhenum transducātur,[s] Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti injuriâ posse defendĕre."

---

[a] § 129, R.
[b] § 140, 6. & 74.
[c] § 113, R. &
[d] 98, 2.
[e] § 141, Obs. 7.
[f] § 131 R. XL.
[g] § 126, R. III.
[h] 51, 5.
[i] § 140, 1, 4th.
[k] 108.
[l] 37, Note 1, 6.
[m] § 140, 2, & 74, 1st.
[n] § 145, R. LVIII.
[o] § 106, R. VIII.
[p] § 147, R. LXI.
[q] § 140, 3.
[r] 29, 1.
[s] § 140, 1.

32. Hâc oratiōne ab Divitiăco [1]habĭtâ, omnes, qui adĕrant, magno fletu auxilium a Cæsăre petĕre cœpērunt. Animadvertit Cæsar, unos[a] ex omnĭbus Sequănos[b] nihil eārum rerum facĕre,[c] quas cetĕri facĕrent;[d] sed tristes, capĭte[e] demisso, terram intuēri. Ejus rei causa quæ esset,[f] mirātus,[g] ex ipsis quæsīvit. Nihil Sequăni respondēre,[h] sed in eâdem tristitiâ tacĭti[i] permanēre. Cùm ab iis sæpius quærĕret,[k] neque ullam omnīno vocem [2]exprimĕre posset,[k] idem Divitiăcus Æduus respondit: [3]"Hoc esse miseriōrem graviorem-que fortūnam Sequanōrum, [4]præ[l] reliquōrum, quòd soli ne in occulto quidem queri, neque auxilium implorāre audērent,[d] absentisque Ariovisti crudelitātem, velut si coram adesset[m] horrērent:[d] propterea quòd reliquis[n] tamen [5]fugæ facultas darētur; Sequănis[o] vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent,[d] quorum oppĭda omnia in potestāte ejus essent, [6]omnes cruciātus essent perferendi.[p]"

33. His rebus cognĭtis, Cæsar Gallōrum anĭmos verbis[e] confirmāvit, pollicitusque est, [7]sibi[q] eam rem curæ futūram: magnam se habēre spem, et beneficio[e] suo et auctoritāte adductum Ariovistum finem injuriis factūrum.[r] Hâc oratiōne habĭtâ, concilium dimīsit; et [8]secundum ea multæ res eum hortabantur, quare sibi[o] eam rem[b] cogitandam[p] et suscipiendam putāret;[f] in primis quòd[s] Æduos, fratres consanguineosque sæpenumĕro ab Senātu appellātos, in servitūte atque in ditiōne vidēbat Germanōrum tenēri,[c] eorumque obsĭdes esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequănos intelligēbat: quod[t] in tanto imperio Popŭli Romāni turpissĭmum[u] sibi[v]

---

[a] 16, 4.
[b] § 145, R. LVIII.
[c] 96, 2.
[d] § 141, Obs. 8.
[e] § 129, R.
[f] § 140, 5.
[g] 106, 1.
[h] § 144, Obs. 6.
[i] § 98, Obs. 10.
[k] § 140, Obs. 4.
[l] § 136, Obs. 6.
[m] § 140, 2.
[n] § 126, R. III. & 19.
[o] § 125, R. XXXIII. & Obs. 3.
[p] 108.
[q] § 114, R. & 8.
[r] 100, 2.
[s] § 140, Obs. 2.
[t] 37, Note 3.
[u] § 103, Obs. 2
[v] § 111, R

et reipublĭcæ esse arbitrabātur. Paulātim autem Germanos consuescĕre Rhenum transīre, et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitudĭnem venīre, Popŭlo Romāno periculōsum vidēbat: neque sibi[a] homĭnes feros ac barbăros temperatūros[b] existimābat, quin, cùm omnem Galliam occupâssent,[c] ut antè Cimbri Teutonīque fecissent,[d] in Provinciam exīrent,[e] atque inde in Italiam contendĕrent;[e] præsertim cùm Sequănos a Provinciâ nostrâ Rhodănus dividĕret.[f] Quibus[g] rebus[z] quàm[i] maturrĭmè [1]occurrendum[h] putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantos sibi spirĭtus, tantam arrogantiam sumsĕrat, ut ferendus non viderētur.[k]

34. Quamobrem [2]placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum legātos mittĕret,[l] qui ab eo postulārent,[m] utì alĭquem locum medium utriusque colloquio dicĕret:[n] velle sese de republĭcâ [3]et summis utriusque rebus cum eo agĕre. Ei legatiōni[o] Ariovistus respondit: [4]Si quid ipsi[p] a Cæsăre[q] opus esset, sese ad eum ventūrum fuisse; si quid [5]ille se[r] velit, illum[s] ad se venīre oportēre. Præterea se neque sine exercĭtu in eas partes Galliæ venīre audēre, quas Cæsar possidēret;[t] neque exercĭtum [6]sine magno commeātu atque emolimento in unum locum contrahĕre posse: sibi autem mirum vidēri,[u] [7]quid in suâ Galliâ, quam bello vicisset,[v] aut Cæsări,[w] aut omnīno Popŭlo Romāno[w] negotii[x] esset."

35. His responsis ad Cæsărem relātis, itĕrum ad eum Cæsar legātos cum his mandātis mittit: "Quoniam tanto suo[y] Populīque Romāni beneficio affectus (cùm in consulātu suo rex atque amīcus a Senātu appellātus esset), hanc sibi

a 31, Note.
b 100, 1.
c § 140, Obs. 4.
d § 141, Obs. 8.
e § 140, 3.
f § 140, Obs. 3.
g 38.
h § 117, & 113, (*sibi*)
i § 134, Obs. 6. 3d.
k § 140, 1, 1st. 70.
l § 140, 1, 4th.
m § 141, R. II. Obs. 2, 4th.
n § 140, 1, 3d.
o 63.
p § 111.
q § 118, Obs. 1.
r § 136, Obs. 5. (*a*.)
s § 113, Exc. III.
t § 140, 6.
u 70, & Obs.
v § 141, Obs. 7.
w § 112, R. II.
x § 107, R. VIII.
y 29, 1.
z § 112. R. IV.

Populōque Romāno [1]gratiam referret,[a] ut in colloquium venīre invitātus gravarētur,[b] [2]neque[c] de commūni re [3]dicendum sibi[d] et cognoscendum putāret;[b] hæc[e] esse, quæ ab eo postulāret:[f] primùm, ne [4]quam homĭnum multitudĭnem ampliùs trans Rhenum in Galliam transducĕret:[g] deinde obsĭdes, quos habēret[f] ab Æduis, reddĕret,[g] Sequanisque permittĕret,[g] ut, quos illi habērent,[f] voluntāte ejus reddĕre illis licēret;[g] neve Æduos [5]injuriâ lacessĕret,[g] neve his sociisve eōrum bellum inferret:[g] si id ita fecisset,[h] sibi[i] Populōque Romāno perpetuam gratiam[e] atque amicitiam cum eo futūram:[k] si non impetrāret,[h] sese[e] (quoniam Marco Messālâ, Marco Pisōne Consulĭbus, Senātus censuisset,[a] utì quicumque Galliam provinciam[l] obtinēret,[m] [6]quod commŏdo[n] reipublĭcæ facĕre posset,[f] Æduos ceterosque amīcos Popŭli Romāni defendĕret),[g] sese Æduōrum injurias non neglectūrum."[k]

36. Ad hæc Ariovistus respondit: "Jus esse belli, ut, qui[o] vicissent,[m] iis,[p] quos vicissent,[f] quemadmŏdum vellent,[q] imperārent:[g] [7]item Popŭlum Romānum[e] victis[p] non ad alterius præscriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium, imperāre consuêsse.[r] Si ipse Popŭlo Romāno non præscribĕret,[h] quemadmŏdum suo[s] jure uterētur;[q] non [8]oportēre sese a Popŭlo Romāno in suo jure impedīri. Æduos[e] sibi,[t] quoniam belli fortūnam tentâssent[a] et armis congressi ac superāti essent,[a] stipendiarios esse factos. Magnam Cæsărem[e] injuriam facĕre, qui suo adventu vectigalia sibi deteriōra facĕret.[u] Æduis[v] se obsĭdes reddĭtūrum non esse, neque iis,[v] neque eōrum sociis[v] injuriâ bellum illatūrum, si in eo manērent,[h] quod convenisset,[f] stipendiumque quotannis pendĕrent: si

[a] § 140, 6.
[b] § 140, 1.
[c] § 93, 1.
[d] § 147, & 113, 5.
[e] § 145, R. LVIII.
[f] § 141, R. VI.
[g] § 140, 1, 3d.
[h] § 140, 2.
[i] § 112, R. II.
[k] 100, 2.
[l] § 97, R.
[m] § 141, R. I.
[n] § 129, R.
[o] 37, 3.
[p] § 112, R. V.
[q] § 140, 5.
[r] 98, 6.
[s] 31, Note.
[t] § 111, R.
[u] § 141, R. III
[v] § 123. R.

id non fecissent,[1]longè iis[a] fraternum nomen Popŭli Romāni abfutūrum. [2]Quod[b] sibi Cæsar denunciāret, se Æduōrum injurias non neglectūrum; nemĭnem[c] secum sine suâ[d] pernicie contendisse.[e] Cùm vellet,[f] congrederētur;[g] intellectūrum, quid invicti Germāni, exercitatissĭmi in armis, qui [3]inter annos quatuordĕcim tectum non subîssent,[h] [4]virtūte possent."[i]

37. Hæc eōdem tempŏre Cæsări[k] mandāta referebantur, et legāti ab Æduis et a Trevĭris veniēbant: [5]Ædui[l] questum,[m] quòd Harūdes, qui nuper in Galliam transportāti essent,[h] fines eōrum popularentur,[h] sese ne obsidĭbus quidem datis pacem Ariovisti redimĕre potuisse: [6]Trevĭri[l] autem, pagos centum Suevōrum ad ripas Rheni consedisse, qui Rhenum transīre conarentur;[h] iis[a] præesse Nasuam et Cimberium fratres: Quibus[n] rebus Cæsar vehementer commōtus, maturandum[c] sibi[o] existimāvit, [7]ne, si nova manus Suevōrum cum veterĭbus copiis Ariovisti sese conjunxisset,[p] minùs facilè resisti posset.[q] Ităque [8]re frumentariâ, quàm[r] celerrĭmè potuit, comparātâ,[s] magnis itinerĭbus ad Ariovistum contendit.

38. Cùm [9]tridui viam[v] processisset,[f] nunciātum est ei,[k] Ariovistum[c] cum suis omnĭbus copiis ad occupandum[t] Vesontiōnem, quod est oppĭdum maxĭmum Sequanōrum, [10]contendĕre,[u] triduīque viam[v] a suis finĭbus processisse.[e] Id ne accidĕret,[q] magno opĕre sibi[o] præcavendum[c] Cæsar existimābat: namque omnium rerum, quæ ad bellum usui[w] erant, [11]summa erat in eo oppĭdo facultas; idque natūrâ loci sic muniebātur, ut magnam [12]ad ducendum bellum daret[x] fac-

a § 112, R I.
b 38, Note. 11.
c § 145, R. LVIII.
d 31, Note.
e 98, 2.
f § 140, Obs. 4.
g § 140, 6.
h § 141, Obs. 7.
i § 140, 5.
k § 126, R. III.
l § 101, Obs. 4
m § 148. 1.
n 38.
o 113.
p § 140, 2.
q § 140, 1, 2d.
r § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.
s § 104, 1.
t 112, 7.
u 96, 2.
v § 132, R. XLII.
w § 114, R. & Obs. 4.
x § 140, 1, 1st.

ultatem, propterea quòd flumen Dubis [1] ut circĭno circumductum, pæne totum oppĭdum cingit: relĭquum spatium, quod est [2] non amplius pedum[a] sexcentōrum, quà flumen intermittit, mons [3] contĭnet magnâ altitudĭne,[b] ita ut radices ejus montis ex utrâque parte ripæ flumĭnis contingant.[c] [4] Hunc[d] murus circumdătus arcem[d] effĭcit et cum oppĭdo conjungit. Huc Cæsar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itinerĭbus contendit,[e] occupatōque oppĭdo, ibi præsidium collŏcat.[e]

39. Dum paucos dies ad Vesontiōnem, rei frumentariæ commeatûsque causâ, morātur, [5] ex percunctatiōne nostrōrum vocibusque Gallōrum ac mercatōrum, qui ingenti magnitudĭne[b] corpŏrum Germānos, incredibĭli virtūte[b] atque exercitatiōne in armis esse prædicābant,[f] sæpenumĕro sese,[g] cum eis congressos, ne [6] vultum quidem atque aciem oculōrum ferre potuisse,[h] tantus subĭtò timor omnem exercĭtum occupāvit, ut non mediocrĭter omnium mentes animosque perturbāret.[c] Hic[i] primùm ortus est a [7] Tribūnis milĭtum, præfectis reliquisque, qui, ex urbe amicitiæ causâ Cæsărem secūti, non magnum in re militāri usum habēbant: [8] quorum[k] alius,[l] aliâ[m] causâ illātâ, quam[g] sibi[n] ad proficiscendum necessariam esse dicĕrent,[o] petēbant, ut ejus voluntāte discedĕre licēret:[p] nonnulli, pudōre adducti, ut timōris suspiciōnem vitārent,[q] remanēbant. Hi neque [9] vultum fingĕre, neque interdum lacrўmas tenēre potĕrant: abdĭti in tabernacŭlis, aut suum[r] fatum querebantur,[f] aut cum familiarĭbus suis[r] commūne pericŭlum miserabantur.[f] Vulgò totis castris testamenta obsignabantur.[f] Horum vocĭbus ac timōre paulātim etiam ii,[s] qui magnum in castris usum habēbant, milĭtes[s] centurionesque, quique equitātu præĕrant, pertur-

---

[a] § 106, R. VI. Obs. 3. (*spatio.*)
[b] § 106, R. VII. & 6, 1.
[c] § 140. 1, 1st.
[d] § 116, Obs. 1.
[e] § 44, I, 3.
[f] § 44, II. 1.
[g] § 145, R. LVIII.
[h] 98, 2.
[i] 19, (*timor.*)
[k] § 107, R. X.
[l] § 102, Obs. 5.
[m] 25, 1, and § 98, Obs. 11.
[n] § 111, R.
[o] § 141, Obs. 7.
[p] § 140, 1, 3d.
[q] § 140, 1, 2d.
[r] 30, 2.
[s] § 97, R.

babantur. [1]Qui[a] se ex his minùs timĭdos existimāri[b] volēbant, non se hostem verēri,[c] sed angustias itinĕris et magnitudĭnem silvārum, quæ intercedĕrent[d] inter ipsos atque Ariovistum, aut rem frumentariam, ut[e] satis commŏdè supportāri posset, timēre[c] dicēbant. Nonnulli etiam Cæsări renunciābant, cùm castra movēri ac signa ferri jussisset,[f] non fore [2]dicto audientes milĭtes, nec propter timōrem signa latūros.

40. Hæc cùm animadvertisset, [3]convocāto[g] consilio, omniumque ordĭnum ad id consilium adhibĭtis[g] centurionĭbus, vehementer eos incusāvit; "primùm, quòd, aut quam in partem, aut quo consilio ducerentur,[h] [4]sibi[i] quærendum aut cogitandum putārent.[d] Ariovistum, se[k] consŭle, cupidissĭmè Popŭli Romāni amicitiam appetisse;[l] cur hunc tam temĕre quisquam ab officio discessūrum judicāret?[d] [5]Sibi[m] quidem persuadēri, cognitis suis [6]postulātis atque æquitāte conditiōnum perspectâ, eum neque suam,[n] neque Popŭli Romāni gratiam repudiatūrum. Quòd si, furōre atque amentiâ impulsus, bellum intulisset,[o] quid tandem vererentur?[d] aut cur de [7]suâ virtūte, aut de ipsius diligentiâ, desperārent?[d] [8]Factum ejus hostis pericŭlum patrum nostrōrum memoriâ, cùm, Cimbris et Teutŏnis a Caio Mario pulsis, non minōrem laudem exercĭtus, quàm ipse imperātor, merĭtus videbātur;[p] factum etiam nuper in Italiâ [9]servīli tumultu, quos[q] tamen aliquid[r] usus ac disciplīna, quam a nobis accepissent, sublevārent.[d] Ex quo judicāri posset,[d] quantum habēret[h] in se boni constantia; propterea quòd, quos[s] aliquamdiu inermos sine causâ timuissent, hos postea armātos

---

[a] 37, (*ii.*)
[b] 94, 3.
[c] 96, 1.
[d] § 140, 6.
[e] 121, 7, and § 140, Obs. 6.
[f] 80, 1.
[g] 104, 1.
[h] § 140, 5.
[i] 113.
[k] 110, 2.
[l] 98, 2.
[m] § 126, R. III.
[n] 29, 1.
[o] § 140, 2.
[p] § 141, Obs. 5. 1st
[q] § 99. Obs. 2.
[r] § 116, Obs. 3.
[s] 43.

ac victōres superâssent. Denĭque hos[a] esse eosdem, quibuscum sæpenumĕro Helvetii congressi, non solùm in [1] suis, sed etiam in illōrum finĭbus, plerumque superârint,[b] qui tamen pares esse nostro exercĭtu[c] non potuĕrint. Si [2] quos adversum prœlium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret,[d] hos, si quærĕrent,[d] reperīre posse, diuturnitāte belli defatigātis Gallis,[e] Ariovistum,[a] cùm multos menses[f] castris se ac paludĭbus tenuisset, [3] neque sui potestātem fecisset, desperantes jam de pugnâ et dispersos subĭtò adortum, magis [4] ratiōne[g] et consilio, quàm virtūte,[g] vicisse. Cui[h] ratiōni[i] contra homĭnes barbăros atque imperītos locus fuisset, hâc, ne ipsum[a] quidem sperāre, nostros exercĭtus[a] capi posse. [5] Qui[k] suum[l] timōrem in rei frumentariæ simulatiōnem angustiasque itinĕrum conferrent,[b] facĕre arroganter, cùm aut de officio imperatōris desperāre, aut præscribĕre viderentur.[m] Hæc sibi[n] esse curæ;[n] frumentum Sequănos,[a] Leucos, Lingŏnas subministrāre;[o] jamque esse in agris frumenta matūra: de itinĕre ipsos[a] brevi tempŏre judicatūros.[p] [6] Quod[q] non fore dicto audientes milĭtes, neque[y] signa latūri dicantur,[b] nihil[r] se eâ re commovēri: [7] scire enim, quibuscumque exercĭtus dicto audiens non fuĕrit,[b] aut, malè re[e] gestâ, fortūnam defuisse; aut, alĭquo facinŏre[e] comperto, avaritiam esse conjunctam. Suam innocentiam perpetuâ vitâ, felicitātem Helvetiōrum bello, esse perspectam.[s] [8] Ităque se,[a] quod in longiōrem diem collatūrus esset,[t] repræsentatūrum,[p] et proxĭmâ nocte de quartâ vigiliâ castra motūrum, ut quàm primùm intelligĕre posset,[u] utrùm[v] apud eos pudor atque officium, an timor valēret.[w] Quòd si præterea nemo sequātur,[x]

[a] § 145, R. LVIII.
[b] § 140, 6.
[c] § 111, R.
[d] § 140, 2.
[e] 109, 2.
[f] § 131, R. XLI.
[g] § 129, R.
[h] 38.
[i] § 110, R. XV.
[k] 37, (*eos.*)
[l] 30, 2.
[m] § 140, Obs. 4.
[n] § 114, R.
[o] 94,3.& 96,Exc. II.
[p] 100, 2.
[q] 38. Note. 11.
[r] § 116, Obs. 3.
[s] 98, 6.
[t] § 79, 8.
[u] § 140, 1, 2d.
[v] 124, 14.
[w] § 140, 5.
[x] § 140, 2, & 77 5.
[y] § 93, 1.

tamen se cum solâ decĭmâ legiōne itūrum, de quâ non dubitāret;[a] sibique eam [1]prætoriam cohortem[b] futūram." Huic legiōni[c] Cæsar et indulsĕrat præcipuè, et propter virtūtem [2]confidēbat maxĭmè.

41. Hâc oratiōne habĭtâ, mirum in modum conversæ[d] sunt omnium mentes, summăque alacrĭtas et cupidĭtas belli gerendi[e] innāta[d] est, [3]princepsque[f] decĭma legio, per tribūnos[g] milĭtum, ei gratias egit, quòd de se optĭmum judicium fecisset;[f] seque esse ad bellum gerendum paratissĭmam confirmāvit. Deinde relĭquæ legiōnes, per tribūnos[g] milĭtum et primōrum ordĭnum centuriōnes, [4]egērunt, utì Cæsări[h] satisfacĕrent:[i] se neque unquam dubitâsse,[k] neque timuisse, neque de summâ belli suum[l] judicium, sed imperatōris[m] esse, existimavisse.[k] Eōrum [5]satisfactiōne acceptâ, et itinĕre [6]exquisīto per Divitiăcum,[g] quòd ex aliis ei[n] maxĭmam fidem habēbat, ut millium amplius quinquaginta circuĭtu locis apertis exercĭtum ducĕret,[i] de quartâ vigiliâ, ut dixĕrat, profectus est. Septĭmo die, cùm iter non intermittĕret,[o] ab exploratorĭbus[g] certior factus est, Ariovisti copias a nostris[p] millĭbus[q] passuum quatuor et viginti abesse.

42. Cognĭto Cæsăris adventu, Ariovistus legātos ad eum mittit: [7]quod[r] antea de colloquio postulâsset,[s] id per se fiĕri licēre, quoniam propiùs accessisset:[a] seque id sine pericŭlo facĕre posse existimāre. Non respuit conditiōnem Cæsar: jamque eum ad sanitātem reverti arbitrabātur, cùm id, quod antea petenti denegâsset,[t] ultro pollicerētur;[o] magnamque in spem veniēbat, pro suis[l] tantis Populīque Romāni in eum beneficiis, cognĭtis suis[l] postulātis, [8]fore,[u] utì pertinaciâ de-

---

[a] § 141, Obs. 7.
[b] § 114, Obs. 2.
[c] § 112, R. V.
[d] § 44, III, Note
[e] 112, 5.
[f] § 98, Obs. 10.
[g] § 126, Obs. 2.
[h] § 112, R. III.
[i] § 140, 1, 2d.
[k] 98, 2.
[l] 29, 1.
[m] § 108, R. XII.
[n] § 123, R.
[o] § 140, Obs. 4.
[p] 19, (*copiis.*)
[q] § 132, R. XLII.
[r] 43.
[s] § 140, 6.
[t] § 141, Obs. 8.
[u] § 145, Obs. 6, & 100, 14.

sistĕret. Dies colloquio dictus est, ex eo die quintus. Intĕrim, cùm sæpe ultro citrōque legāti inter eos mitterentur,[a] Ariovistus postulāvit, [1]ne quem pedĭtem ad colloquium Cæsar adducĕret:[b] verēri[c], ne[d] per insidias ab eo circumveniretur: uterque cum equitātu venīret:[b] aliâ ratiōne se non esse ventūrum. Cæsar, quòd neque colloquium[e] interposĭtâ causâ [2]tolli[f] volēbat, neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitatui[g] committĕre audēbat, [3]commodissĭmum[h] esse statuit, [4]omnĭbus equis[i] Gallis equitĭbus[k] detractis, eò legionarios milĭtes legiōnis decĭmæ, cui quàm maxĭmè confidēbat, imponĕre,[l] ut præsidium quàm amicissĭmum, [5]si quid opus facto esset, habēret.[m] Quod[n] cùm fiĕret,[a] non irridicŭlè quidam ex militĭbus[o] decĭmæ legiōnis dixit: "plus, quàm pollicĭtus esset,[p] Cæsărem ei facĕre; pollicĭtum, se in cohortis prætoriæ loco decĭmam legiōnem habitūrum, [6]nunc ad equum rescribĕre."

43. Planities erat magna, et in eâ tumŭlus terrēnus satis grandis. Hic locus æquo ferè spatio[q] ab castris utrisque abĕrat. Eò, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium venērunt. Legiōnem Cæsar, quam equis[r] devexĕrat, passĭbus[q] ducentis ab eo tumŭlo constituit. Item equĭtes Ariovisti pari intervallo[q] constitērunt. Ariovistus, [7]ex equis ut colloquerentur[h] et, præter se, denos[s] ut ad colloquium adducĕrent,[h] postulāvit. [8]Ubi eò ventum est,[t] Cæsar, initio orationis, sua Senatûsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, "quòd rex appellātus esset a Senātu, quòd munĕra amplissĭma missa: quam[n] rem et paucis[u] contigisse,[v] et pro magnis homĭnum officiis consuêsse tribui" docēbat: "illum, cùm neque adĭtum,

---

[a] § 140, Obs. 4.
[b] § 140, 1, 3d.
[c] 94, 4.
[d] § 140, Obs. 6, & 121, 6.
[e] § 145, R. LVIII.
[f] 96, Exc. II. 11.
[g] § 123, R.
[h] § 98, Obs. 6.
[i] 109.
[k] § 126, R. III.
[l] § 144.R.LVII.Note.
[m] § 140, 1, 2d.
[n] 38.
[o] § 107, Obs. 8.
[p] § 141, Obs. 8.
[q] § 132, R. XLII.
[r] § 129, R.
[s] § 24, 11, & 26, I.
[t] 67, Note. 5.
[u] 19, & § 112, R.IV
[v] 98, 2.

neque causam postulandi justam habēret, beneficio ac liberalitāte suâ ac Senātûs ea præmia consecūtum." Docēbat etiam, "quàm vetĕres, quàmque justæ causæ [1]necessitudĭnis ipsis[a] cum Æduis intercedĕrent,[b] quæ Senātûs consulta, quoties, quàmque honorifĭca in eos facta essent:[b] ut omni tempŏre totīus Galliæ principātum Ædui tenuissent,[c] priùs etiam quàm nostram amicitiam appetissent:[d] Popŭli Romāni hanc[e] esse consuetudĭnem, ut socios[f] atque amīcos non modò [2]sui nihil deperdĕre,[f] sed gratiâ, dignitāte, honōre [3]auctiōres velit[g] esse: quod vero ad amicitiam Popŭli Romāni attulissent, id iis[h] erĭpi, quis pati posset?"[g] Postulāvit deinde eădem, quæ legātis in mandātis dedĕrat, "ne aut Æduis, aut eōrum sociis bellum inferret;[c] obsĭdes reddĕret: si nullam partem Germanōrum domum[i] remittĕre posset,[k] at ne [4]quos ampliùs Rhenum transīre paterētur."[c]

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Cæsăris pauca respondit; de suĭs virtutĭbus multa prædicāvit: "Transîsse[l] Rhenum[m] sese, non suâ sponte, sed [5]rogātum[n] et arcessītum[n] a Gallis; non sine magnâ spe, magnisque præmiis, domum propinquosque reliquisse;[l] sedes habēre[o] in Galliâ, ab ipsis concessas;[n] obsĭdes ipsōrum voluntāte datos; stipendium capĕre[o] jure belli, quod victōres victis[p] imponĕre consuêrint; non sese[e] Gallis, sed Gallos[e] sibi bellum intulisse; omnes Galliæ civitātes ad se oppugnandum venisse,[l] ac contra se castra habuisse; eas omnes copias a se uno prælio fusas ac superātas esse; si itĕrum experīri velint,[k] itĕrum parātum sese decertāre; si pace[q] uti velint, inīquum esse, de stipendio recusāre, quod suâ voluntāte ad id tempus pependĕrint.

---

[a] § 112, R. IV.
[b] § 140, 5.
[c] § 140, 1, 3d.
[d] § 140, 4,
[e] § 145, R. LVIII.
[f] 90.
[g] § 140, 6.
[h] § 126, R. III.
[i] § 130, 4.
[k] § 140, 2.
[l] 98, 2.
[m] § 136, R. LII.
[n] 101, 4.
[o] 96, 2.
[p] § 123, R. & 19.
[q] § 121, R. XXVI.

Amicitiam Popŭli Romāni sibi[a] ornamento[a] et præsidio, non detrimento, esse oportēre, idque se eâ spe petisse. Si per Popŭlum Romānum stipendium remittātur,[b] et dedititii subtrahantur,[b] non minùs libenter sese recusatūrum Popŭli Romāni amicitiam, quàm appetiĕrit.[c] [1] Quòd multitudĭnem Germanōrum in Galliam transdūcat,[d] id se sui muniendi,[e] non Galliæ impugnandæ[e] causâ facĕre; ejus rei testimonium[f] esse,[g] quòd, nisi rogātus, non venĕrit,[c] et quòd bellum non intulĕrit,[c] [2] sed defendĕrit.[c] Se priùs in Galliam venisse, quàm Popŭlum Romānum.[h] Nunquam ante hoc tempus exercĭtum Popŭli Romāni Galliæ provinciæ fines[w] egressum. [3] Quid sibi vellet?[c] Cur in suas possessiōnes venīret?[c] Provinciam suam [4] hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsi[i] concēdi non oportēret, si in nostros fines impĕtum facĕret,[b] sic item nos esse inīquos, [5] qui in suo jure se interpellarēmus.[k] [6] Quòd[l] fratres[f] a Senātu Æduos appellātos dicĕret,[c] non se tam barbărum,[m] neque tam imperītum[m] esse rerum,[n] ut non sciret,[o] neque bello Allobrŏgum proxĭmo Æduos Romānis[p] auxilium tulisse, neque ipsos in his contentionĭbus, quas Ædui secum et cum Sequănis habuissent,[q] auxilio[r] Popŭli Romāni usos esse. Debēre se suspicāri, simulātâ Cæsărem amicitiâ, quòd exercĭtum in Galliâ habeat,[c] sui opprimendi[c] causâ habēre. Qui[s] nisi decēdat[b] atque exercĭtum dedūcat[b] ex his regionĭbus, sese illum non pro amīco, sed pro hoste habitūrum: quòd si eum interfecĕrit,[b] multis [7] sese nobilĭbus[t] principibusque Popŭli Romāni gratum esse factūrum; id se ab ipsis per eōrum nuntios compertum[u] habēre, quorum omnium gratiam atque ami-

[a] § 114, R.
[b] § 140, 2.
[c] § 140, 6.
[d] § 141, Obs. 7.
[e] 112, 5.
[f] § 103, R. V.
[g] 51.
[h] § 120, Obs. 2, 1st.
[i] § 113, R.
[k] § 141, R. III.
[l] 38, 11, Note.
[m] § 103, Obs. 2.
[n] § 107, R. IX.
[o] § 140, 1, 1st.
[p] § 123, R.
[q] § 141, Obs. 7.
[r] § 121, R. XXVI
[s] 39.
[t] § 111, R.
[u] § 146, Obs. 1.
[w] Sup. *trans.*

citiam ejus morte redimĕre posset. Quòd si decessisset,[a] ac libĕram possessiōnem Galliæ sibi[b] tradidisset, magno se illum præmio remuneratūrum, et, quæcumque[c] bella geri vellet,[d] sine ullo ejus labōre et pericŭlo confectūrum."

45. Multa ab Cæsăre [1]in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quare negotio desistĕre non posset,[e] et " neque suam,[f] neque Popŭli Romāni consuetudĭnem[g] pati, utì optĭmè merĭtos socios desererĕret:[h] neque se judicāre, Galliam potiùs esse [2]Ariovisti,[i] quàm Popŭli Romāni.[l] Bello superātos esse Arvernos et Rutēnos ab Q. Fabio Maxĭmo, quibus[k] Popŭlus Romānus ignovisset,[l] neque in provinciam redegisset;[l] neque stipendium imposuisset. Quòd si antiquissĭmum [3]quodque tempus[s] spectāri oportēret,[a] Popŭli Romāni justissĭmum[m] esse in Galliâ imperium: si judicium[s] Senātùs observāri oportēret,[a] libĕram[m] debēre esse Galliam, quam bello victam suis legĭbus[n] uti [4]voluissset."[l]

46. Dum hæc in colloquio geruntur, Cæsări[o] nunciātum est, equĭtes[g] Ariovisti [5]propiùs tumŭlum accedĕre,[p] et ad nostros adequitāre,[p] lapĭdes telāque in nostros conjicĕre. Cæsar loquendi finem facit[q] seque ad suos recĭpit,[q] suisque[k] imperāvit, ne quod omnīno telum in hostes rejicĕrent.[h] Nam, etsi sine ullo pericŭlo legiōnis delectæ cum equitātu prœlium[g] fore vidēbat, tamen committendum[r] non putābat, ut, pulsis hostĭbus, dici posset,[r] eos[g] ab se [6]per fidem in colloquio circumventos. Posteăquam in [7]vulgus milĭtum elātum est, [8]quâ arrogantiâ in colloquio Ariovistus usus omni Galliâ Romānis interdixisset,[e] impetumque in nostros ejus equĭtes fecissent[e] eâque res colloquium ut diremisset:[e] multo major alacrĭtas studiumque pugnandi majus exercĭtu [9]injectum est.

[a] § 140, 2.
[b] § 123, R.
[c] § 99, Obs. 7.
[d] § 140. 6.
[e] § 140, 5.
[f] 29, 1.
[g] § 145, R. LVIII.
[h] § 140, 1, 3d.
[i] § 108, R. XII.
[k] § 112, R. V.
[l] § 141, Obs. 7.
[m] § 103, Obs. 2.
[n] § 121, R. XXVI.
[o] § 126, R. III.
[p] 96, 2.
[q] § 44, I. 3.
[r] 113, and s.
[s] § 140, 1, 1st.

47. Biduo post Ariovistus ad Cæsărem legātos mittit,[a] velle[b] se de his rebus, quæ inter eos agi cœptæ, [1]neque perfectæ essent,[c] agĕre cum eo: utì aut itĕrum colloquio diem constituĕret;[d] aut, si id minùs vellet,[e] ex suis alĭquem ad se mittĕret.[d] Colloquendi Cæsări[f] causa visa non est; et eo magis, quòd pridie ejus diēi[g] Germāni retinēri non potĕrant, [2]quin[h] in nostros[i] tela conjicĕrent. Legātum ex suis[i] sese magno cum pericŭlo ad eum missūrum, et homĭnĭbus feris objectūrum, existimābat. Commodissĭmum visum est, Caium Valerium Procillum, Caii Valerii Cabūri filium,[i] summâ virtute[k] et humanitāte adolescentem[l] (cujus pater a Caio Valerio Flacco civitāte[m] donātus erat), et propter fidem et propter linguæ Gallĭcæ scientiam, quâ multâ jam Ariovistus longinquâ consuetudĭne[n] utebātur, et quòd in eo [3]peccandi Germānis[o] causa non esset,[p] ad eum mittĕre, et Marcum Mettium, qui hospitio Ariovisti usus erat. His[q] mandāvit, ut, quæ dicĕret[r] Ariovistus, cognoscĕrent[d] et ad se referrent.[d] Quos[s] cùm apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset,[t] exercĭtu suo præsente, conclamāvit: "Quid ad se venīrent?[c] An[u] [4]speculandi causâ?" Conantes dicĕre prohibuit et in catēnas conjēcit.

48. Eōdem die castra promōvit, et millĭbus[v] passuum sex a Cæsăris castris sub monte consēdit. Postridie ejus diēi[g] præter castra Cæsăris suas copias transduxit, et millĭbus[v] passuum duōbus ultra eum castra fecit, eo consilio,[n] utì frumento commeatūque, qui ex Sequănis et Æduis supportaretur,[r] Cæsărem intercludĕret.[c] Ex eo die dies continuos

---

[a] 94, 1, 2, & 4.
[b] 96, 2.
[c] § 140, 6.
[d] § 140, 1, 3d.
[e] § 140, 2.
[f] 70.
[g] § 135, R. XLVI.
[h] § 140, 3, & 78, 7, Note.
[i] 19.
[k] § 106, R. VII.
[l] § 97, R.
[m] § 126, R. V.
[n] § 129, R.
[o] § 112, R. II.
[p] § 141, Obs. 7.
[q] § 123, R.
[r] § 141, Obs. 8.
[s] 38.
[t] § 140, Obs. 4.
[u] 56, 3d.
[v] § 142, R. XLII.

quinque Cæsar pro castris suas copias produxit, et aciem instructam habuit, ut, si vellet[a] Ariovistus prœlio contendĕre [1] ei[b] potestas non deesset.[c]. Ariovistus his omnĭbus diēbus[d] exercĭtum castris continuit; equestri prœlio quotidie contendit. Genus hoc[e] erat pugnæ, quo se Germāni exercuĕrant. Equĭtum millia erant sex: totĭdem numĕro[f] pedĭtes velocissĭmi ac fortissĭmi; [2] quos ex omni copiâ singŭli singŭlos,[g] suæ salūtis causâ, delegĕrant. Cùm his in præliis versabantur, ad hos se equĭtes recipiēbant: hi, si quid erat durius,[h] concurrēbant: si qui,[i] graviōre vulnĕre accepto, equo decidĕrat, circumsistēbant: [3] si quò erat longiùs prodeundum,[k] aut celeriùs recipiendum,[k] tanta erat horum exercitatiōne celerĭtas, ut, jubis[l] equōrum sublevāti, [4] cursum adæquārent.[m]

49. Ubi eum[n] castris se tenēre Cæsar intellexit, ne diutiùs commeātu prohiberētur,[c] ultra eum locum, [5] quo in loco[o] Germāni consedĕrant, circĭter passus[p] sexcentos ab eis, castris[q] idoneum locum delēgit, aciēque triplĭci instructâ, ad eum locum venit. Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse,[r] tertiam castra munīre jussit. Hic locus ab hoste circĭter passus[p] sexcentos, utì dictum est, abĕrat. Eo circĭter homĭnum numĕro sexdĕcim millia expedīta cum omni equitātu Ariovistus misit, [6] quæ[s] copiæ nostros perterrērent[t] et munitiōne prohibērent. Nihĭlo seciùs Cæsar, ut antè constituĕrat, duas acies hostem propulsāre,[r] tertiam opus perficĕre jussit. Munītis castris, duas ibi legiōnes relĭquit et partem auxiliōrum: quatuor relĭquas in castra majōra reduxit.

---

[a] § 140, 2.
[b] § 112, R. II.
[c] § 140, 1, 2d.
[d] § 131, R. XLI.
[e] § 103, R. V.
[f] § 128, R. XXXIV.
[g] 26
[h] 22.
[i] § 35.
[k] 113, 2.
[l] § 129, R.
[m] § 140, 1, 1st.
[n] § 145, R. LVIII.
[o] 37. 6, Note. 1.
[p] § 136, R. XLVIII.
[q] § 111, R.
[r] 90, 4.
[s] 40. 4.
[t] § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.

50. Proxĭmo die,[a] 1 institūto[b] suo, Cæsar e castris utrisque copias suas eduxit; paulumque 2 a majorĭbus progressus, aciem instruxit, hostibusque[c] pugnandi potestātem fecit. Ubi ne tum quidem eos prodīre[d] intellexit, circĭter meridiem exercĭtum in castra reduxit. Tum demum Ariovistus partem suārum copiārum, quæ castra minōra oppugnāret,[e] misit: acrĭter utrinque usque ad vespĕrum pugnātum est. Solis occāsu suas copias Ariovistus, multis et illātis et acceptis vulnerĭbus,[f] in castra reduxit. Cùm ex captīvis quærĕret[g] Cæsar, quam ob rem Ariovistus prœlio non decertāret,[h] hanc reperiēbat causam, quòd apud Germānos ea consuetūdo esset,[i] ut matres familiæ eōrum 3 sortĭbus et vaticinationĭbus declarārent,[k] utrùm prœlium committi 4 ex usu esset,[h] nec ne: eas ita dicĕre, 5 "Non esse[l] fas, Germānos superāre, si ante novam lunam prœlio contendissent."[m]

51. Postridie ejus diēi Cæsar præsidio[n] utrisque castris, quod[o] satis esse visum est, relīquit; 6 omnes alarios in conspectu hostium 7 pro castris minorĭbus constituit, quòd minùs multitudĭne milĭtum legionariōrum pro hostium numĕro valēbat, ut 8 ad speciem alariis uterētur.[p] Ipse, triplĭci instructâ acie, usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum demum necessariò Germāni suas copias castris eduxērunt, 9 generatimque constituērunt paribusque intervallis Harūdes, Marcomānos, Triboccos, Vangiōnes, Nemētes, Sedusios, Suēvos, omnemque aciem suam[q] 10 rhedis[b] et carris circumdedērunt, ne qua spes in fugâ relinquerētur.[p] 11 Eò muliĕres imposuērunt, quæ in prœlium proficiscentes milĭtes passis crinĭbus flentes implorābant, ne se in servitūtem Romānis tradĕrent.[r]

---

[a] § 131, R. XL.
[b] § 129, R.
[c] § 123. R. & 63, 5.
[d] 96, 2.
[e] § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.
[f] 109, 2
[g] § 140, Obs. 4.
[h] § 140, 5.
[i] § 141, Obs. 7.
[k] § 140, 1, 1st.
[l] 51.
[m] § 140. 2.
[n] § 114, R.
[o] 37, 2 (*id.*)
[p] § 140, 1, 2d.
[q] 30, 2.
[r] § 140, 1, 3d, & 121, 2.

52. Cæsar [1]singŭlis[a] legionĭbus[b] singŭlos legātos et quæstōrem præfĕcit, uti eos testes suæ quisque virtūtis habēret.[c] Ipse a dextro cornu, quòd eam partem [2]minĭmè firmam hostium esse anĭmum advertĕrat, prœlium commīsit. Ita nostri acrĭter in hostes, signo dato, impĕtum fecērunt, ităque hostes repentè celeriterque procurrērunt, ut spatium pila in hostes conjiciendi[d] non darētur.[c] Rejectis pilis,[e] comĭnus gladiis pugnātum est: at Germāni, celerĭter ex consuetudĭne suâ [3]phalange[e] factâ, impĕtus gladiōrum excepērunt. Reperti sunt complūres[f] nostri milĭtes, qui in phalangas insilīrent,[g] et scuta manĭbus revellĕrent,[g] et desŭper vulnerārent.[g] Cùm hostium acies a sinistro cornu pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, a dextro cornu vehementer multitudĭne[h] suōrum nostram aciem premĕbant. Id cùm animadvertisset[i] Publius Crassus adolescens, qui equitātu[k] præĕrat, quòd [4]expeditior erat, quàm hi qui inter aciem versabantur, tertiam aciem laborantĭbus nostris[l] subsidio[l] misit.

53. Ita prœlium restitūtum est, atque omnes hostes terga vertērunt, [5]neque priùs fugĕre destitĕrunt, quàm ad flumen Rhenum millia[m] passuum ex eo loco circĭter quinquaginta pervenĕrint.[n] Ibi perpauci aut, virĭbus[o] confīsi, transnatāre contendērunt, aut, lintrĭbus inventis, sibi[b] salūtem reperērunt. [6]In his fuit Ariovistus, qui, navicŭlam deligātam ad ripam nactus,[p] eâ profŭgit: relĭquos omnes consecūti equĭtes nostri interfecērunt. Duæ fuērunt Ariovisti uxōres, una[q] Sueva natiōne, quam ab domo secum eduxĕrat; altĕra Norica, regis Vociōnis soror,[q] quam in Galliâ [7]duxĕrat, a fratre missam: utræque in eâ fugâ periērunt. [8]Duæ filiæ[r] harum, altĕra[r] occīsa, altĕra[r] capta est. Caius Valerius Procillus,

---

[a] 26.
[b] § 123, R.
[c] § 140, 1, 2d.
[d] 112, 1.
[e] 109, & § 146, R. LX.
[f] 17.
[g] § 141, Obs. 1.
[h] § 129, R.
[i] § 140, Obs. 4.
[k] § 112, R. I.
[l] § 114, R.
[m] § 136, R. XLVIII.
[n] § 140, 4.
[o] § 112, R. V.
[p] 105, 1.
[q] § 97, R.
[r] § 97 Obs. 5.

cùm a custodĭbus in fugâ trinis catēnis[a] vinctus traherētur,[b] 1 in ipsum Cæsărem, hostes equitātu[a] persequentem, incĭdit. Quæ[c] quidem res Cæsări[d] non minōrem, quàm ipsa victoria,[e] voluptātem attŭlit; quòd homĭnem honestissĭmum provinciæ Galliæ, suum familiārem[f] et hospĭtem, ereptum e manĭbus hostium, sibi[g] restitūtum vidēbat, neque ejus calamitāte[a] de tantâ voluptāte et gratulatiōne quicquam fortūna deminuĕrat. Is, se præsente,[h] de se ter sortĭbus[a] consultum[i] dicēbat, utrùm[k] igni statim necarētur,[l] an in aliud tempus reservarētur: sortium 2 beneficio[a] se esse[m] incolŭmem. Item Marcus Mettius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

54. Hoc prœlio trans Rhenum nunciāto, Suevi, qui ad ripas Rheni venĕrant, domum[n] reverti cœpērunt: quos Ubii, qui 3 proxĭmi[o] Rhenum incŏlunt, perterrĭtos insecūti, magnum ex his numĕrum occidērunt. Cæsar, unâ æstāte[p] duōbus maxĭmis bellis confectis, maturiùs paulo, quàm tempus anni postulābat, in hiberna in Sequănos exercĭtum deduxit: hibernis[d] Labiēnum præposuit: ipse 4 in citeriōrem Galliam 5 ad conventus agendos[q] profectus est.

a § 129, R.	g § 126, R. III.	m 96. 2.
b § 140, Obs. 4.	h 110, 5.	n § 130, 4.
c 38, 2.	i § 47, 6. & 98, 2.	o § 136, Obs. 5. (*ad.*)
d § 123, R.	k § 124, 14.	p § 131, R. XLI.
e § 120, Obs. 1.	l § 140, 5.	q 112, 7.
f § 97. R.		

BOOK II.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. Confederacy of the Belgæ. Cæsar's war with them—Chap. 1–14. II. War with the Nervii—Chap. 15–28. III. War with the Adu atici—Chap. 29–33. IV. Expedition of Publius Crassus into Ar morica—Chap. 34. V. Transactions subsequent to the reduction of the Belgæ—Chap. 35.

1. [1] Cum esset Cæsar in citeriōre Galliâ in hibernis, ita utì suprà demonstravĭmus, [2] crebri ad eum rumōres afferebantur, literisque item Labiēni certior fiēbat, omnes Belgas, quam[a] tertiam esse Galliæ partem [3] dixerāmus, contra Popŭlum Romānum conjurāre,[b] obsidesque inter se dare:[b] [4] conjurandi has esse causas: primùm, quòd vererentur,[d] ne,[c] omni pacātâ Galliâ, ad eos exercĭtus noster adducerētur:[e] deinde, quòd ab nonnullis Gallis solicitarentur,[d] [5] partim qui, ut Germānos diutius in Galliâ versāri noluĕrant, ita Popŭli Romāni exercĭtum hiemāre atque inveterascĕre in Galliâ molestè ferēbant; [6] partim qui mobilitāte et levitāte anĭmi novis [7] imperiis[f] studēbant: [8] ab nonnullis etiam, quòd in Galliâ a potentiorĭbus[g] atque his [9] qui ad[h] conducendos homĭnes facultātes habēbant, vulgò regna occupabantur, qui minùs facĭlè [10] eam rem in imperio nostro consĕqui potĕrant.

2. Iis nuntiis literisque commōtus, Cæsar duas legiōnes in citeriōre Galliâ novas conscripsit, et, [11] inĭtâ æstāte, in interiōrem Galliam qui deducĕret,[i] Quintum Pedium legātum misit. Ipse, cùm primùm pabŭli copia esse incipĕret, ad exercĭtum venit: [12] dat negotium Senonĭbus reliquisque Gallis, qui finitĭmi Belgis[k] erant, utì ea, quæ apud eos gerantur,[d] [13] cognoscant,[l] seque de his rebus certiōrem faciant.[l]

---

[a] § 99, Obs. 4.
[b] 96, 2.
[c] § 140, Obs. 6.
[d] § 141, Obs. 7.
[e] § 141, Obs. 8.
[f] § 112, R. V.
[g] 19, (*hominĭbus.*)
[h] 112, 7.
[i] § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.
[k] § 111, R.
[l] § 140, 1, 3d.

Hi constanter omnes nunciavērunt, manus cogi, exercĭtum in unum locum condūci. Tum verò dubitandum non existimāvit, [1] quin ad eos proficiscerētur.[a] Re frumentariâ provīsâ, castra movet, diebusque circĭter quindĕcim ad fines Belgārum pervēnit.

3. Eò cùm de improvīso [2] celeriùsque omnium opiniōne[b] venisset, Remi, qui proxĭmi Galliæ ex Belgis[c] sunt, ad eum legātos, Iccium et Antebrogium, primos civitātis,[d] misērunt, qui dicĕrent,[e] se suăque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem Popŭli Romāni permittĕre:[f] [3] neque[g] se cum Belgis relĭquis consensisse, neque contra Popŭlum Romānum omnīno conjurâsse: paratosque esse et obsĭdes dare, et imperāta[h] facĕre, et oppĭdis recipĕre, et frumento ceterisque rebus juvāre: relĭquos omnes Belgas in armis esse: Germanosque, qui cis Rhenum incŏlunt, sese cum his conjunxisse; tantumque esse eōrum omnium [4] furōrem, ut ne Suessiōnes quidem, fratres consanguineosque suos, qui eōdem jure[i] et eisdem legĭbus utantur,[k] unum imperium unumque magistrātum cum ipsis habeant,[k] deterrēre potuĕrint,[l] quin cum his consentīrent.[m]

4. Cùm ab [5] his quærĕret, quæ civitātes, [6] quantæque in armis essent,[n] et quid in bello possent, sic reperiēbat: plerosque Belgas esse ortos ab Germānis: Rhenumque antiquĭtus transductos, propter loci fertilitātem ibi consedisse, Gallosque, qui ea loca incolĕrent, expulisse; solosque esse, qui, patrum nostrōrum memoriâ, omni Galliâ vexātâ, Teutŏnos Cimbrosque intra fines suos ingrĕdi prohibuĕrint.[o] Quâ ex re fiĕri, utì eārum rerum memoriâ magnam sibi auctoritātem, magnosque spirĭtus in re militāri sumĕrent.[p] De num˘ro eōrum [7] omnia se habēre explorāta,[q] Remi dicēbant;

---

[a] § 149, 3.
[b] § 120, R.
[c] § 107, Obs. 8.
[d] § 107, R. X. Exp.
[e] § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.
[f] § 145, Obs. 3
[g] 124, 5.
[h] 19, (*negotia.*)
[i] § 121, R. XXVI.
[k] § 141, R. IV.
[l] § 140, 1, 1st.
[m] § 140, 3, & 78, 7, Note.
[n] § 140, 5.
[o] § 141, Obs. 7.
[p] § 140, 1, 4th.
[q] § 146, Obs. 4.

propterea quòd propinquitatĭbus affinitatibusque conjuncti, quantam quisque multitudĭnem in commūni Belgārum concilio ad id bellum pollicĭtus sit,[a] cognovĕrint.[b] Plurĭmùm inter eos Bellovăcos et virtūte,[c] et auctoritāte,[c] et homĭnum numĕro,[c] valēre: hos posse conficĕre armāta millia centum: pollicĭtos ex eo numĕro electa millia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi[d] postulāre. Suessiōnes suos esse finitĭmos, latissĭmos feracissimosque agros possidēre. Apud eos fuisse regem nostrâ etiam memoriâ [1]Divitiăcum, totīus Galliæ potentissĭmum, qui cùm[e] magnæ partis harum regiōnum, tum[e] etiam Brittaniæ, imperium obtinuĕrit:[b] nunc esse regem Galbam: ad hunc, propter justitiam prudentiamque, [2]totīus belli summam omnium voluntāte deferri: oppĭda habēre numĕro[c] duodĕcim, pollicēri millia armāta quinquaginta: totĭdem[f] Nervios, qui maxĭmè feri inter ipsos habeantur[b] [3]longissimèque absint:[b] quindĕcim millia Atrebātes: Ambiānos decem millia: Morĭnos viginti quinque millia: Menapios novem millia: Calētos decem millia: Velocasses et Veromanduos totĭdem: Aduatŭcos viginti novem millia, Condrūsos, Eburōnes, Cæræsos, Pæmānos, qui [4]uno nomīne Germāni appellantur,[g] arbitrāri ad quadraginta millia.

5. Cæsar, Remos cohortātus [5]liberaliterque oratiōne prosecūtus, omnem senātum[h] ad se convenīre, principumque libĕros obsĭdes[i] ad se addūci jussit. Quæ[k] omnia ab his[l] diligenter [6]ad diem facta sunt. Ipse, Divitiăcum Æduum [7]magno opĕre cohortātus, docet, quanto opĕre rei publĭcæ communisque salūtis intersit,[a] manus hostium distinēri,[m] ne [8]cum tantâ multitudĭne uno tempŏre confligendum sit.[n] Id fiĕri posse, si suas copias Ædui in fines Bellovacōrum intro-

---

[a] § 140, 5.
[b] § 140, 6.
[c] § 128, R. XXXIV.
[d] § 123, R
[e] 124, 8.
[f] 19, (*milītes.*)
[g] § 141, Obs. 5, 2d.
[h] 90, 4.
[i] § 97, R.
[k] 38.
[l] § 126, Obs. 2.
[m] 94, 3.
[n] § 140, 1, 2d

duxĕrint,[a] et eōrum agros populāri cœpĕrint.[a] His mandātis, eum ab se dimittit. Postquàm omnes Belgārum copias, in unum locum coactas, ad se venīre[b] vidit, neque jam longè abesse ab his, quos misĕrat, exploratorĭbus,[c] et ab Remis cognōvit, flumen[d] Axŏnam, quod est in extrēmis Remōrum finĭbus, exercĭtum[d] transducĕre maturāvit, atque ibi castra posuit. [1]Quæ[e] res et latus unum castrōrum ripis flumĭnis muniēbat, et post eum quæ[f] essent tuta ab hostĭbus reddēbat, et, commeātus ab Remis reliquisque civitatĭbus ut sine pericŭlo ad eum portāri posset,[g] efficiēbat. In eo flumĭne pons erat. Ibi præsidium ponit, et in altĕrâ parte flumĭnis Quintum Titurium Sabīnum legātum cum sex [2]cohortĭbus relĭquit: castra in altitudĭnem pedum duodĕcim vallo,[h] fossâque [3]duodeviginti pedum,[i] munīre jubet.

6. Ab his castris oppĭdum Remōrum, nomĭne[k] Bibrax, abĕrat millia passuum octo. Id ex itinĕre magno impĕtu[h] Belgæ oppugnāre cœpērunt. Ægrè eo die[l] sustentātum est.[m] [4]Gallōrum eădem atque[n] Belgārum oppugnatio est hæc. Ubi, circumjectâ multitudĭne homĭnum totis mœnĭbus[o] undĭque lapĭdes in murum jaci cœpti sunt, murusque defensorĭbus[p] nudātus est, testudĭne factâ portas[q] succēdunt murumque subruunt. [5]Quod tum facĭlè fiēbat. Nam, cùm tanta multitūdo lapĭdes ac tela conjicĕrent, [6]in muro consistendi potestas erat nulli.[r] Cùm finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Iccius, Remus, summâ nobilitāte[i] et gratiâ inter suos, qui tum oppĭdo [7]præĕrat, unus ex his qui legāti de pace ad Cæsărem venĕrant, nuncios ad eum mittit,[s] nisi subsidium sibi[o] submittātur, sese diutius sustinēre non posse.

7. Eò [8]de mediâ nocte Cæsar, iisdem ducĭbus usus qui nuncii ab Iccio venĕrant, Numĭdas et Cretas sagittarios, et

---

[a] 79.
[b] 89, 3.
[c] § 136, Obs. 5, (*ab.*)
[d] 119, 1.
[e] 38, 2.
[f] § 99, Obs. 1 4th, (*loca*)
[g] § 140. 1, 3d.
[h] § 129, R.
[i] § 106, R. VII.
[k] § 128, R.
[l] § 131, R. XLI.
[m] 66.
[n] § 149, Obs. 6.
[o] § 126, R. III.
[p] § 126, R. V.
[q] § 112, Obs. 4.
[r] § 112, R. II.
[s] 94, 4.

funditōres Baleāres, subsidio[a] oppidānis mittit: quorum adventu et Remis,[b] cum spe defensiōnis, studium propugnandi accessit, et hostĭbus[c] eâdem de causâ spes potiundi[d] oppĭdi discessit. Ităque, paulisper apud oppĭdum morāti,[e] agrōsque Remōrum depopulāti,[e] omnĭbus vicis ædificiisque, [1]quos[f] adīre potĕrant, incensis, ad castra Cæsăris omnĭbus copiis contendērunt, [2]et ab[g] millĭbus[h] passuum minùs duōbus castra posuērunt; quæ castra, ut fumo atque ignĭbus significabātur, ampliùs millĭbus[h] passuum octo in latitudĭnem patēbant.

8. Cæsar primò, et propter multitudĭnem hostium, et propter eximiam opiniōnem virtūtis, [3]prœlio supersedēre statuit; quotidie tamen equestrĭbus prœliis, quid hostis virtūte posset, et quid nostri audērent, [4]solicitationĭbus periclitabātur. Ubi nostros non esse inferiōres intellexit, loco[i] pro castris, ad aciem instruendam natūrâ opportūno atque idoneo (quòd is collis, ubi castra posĭta erant, paulŭlum ex planitie edĭtus, tantum[k] adversus in latitudĭnem patēbat, quantum loci[l] acies instructa occupāre potĕrat, atque [5]ex utrâque parte latĕris dejectus habēbat, [6]et, frontem[m] lenĭter fastigātus, paulātim ad planitiem redībat), ab utrōque latĕre ejus collis transversam fossam obduxit circĭter passuum[n] quadringentōrum; et [7]ad extrēmas fossas castella constituit, ibique [8]tormenta collocāvit, ne, cùm aciem instruxisset, hostes, [9]quòd tantum multitudĭne potĕrant, ab laterĭbus pugnantes[p] suos circumvenīre possent.[q] Hoc facto, duābus legionĭbus,[r] quas proxĭmè conscripsĕrat, in castris relictis, ut, [10]si quâ opus esset, subsidio[a] duci possent,[q] relĭquas sex legiōnes pro castris in acie constituit. Hostes item suas copias ex castris eductas instruxĕrant.

---

a § 114, R. & Obs. 1.
b § 112, R. IV.
c § 136, Obs. 5, (*ab.*)
d 112, 5.
e 105, 1.
f § 99, Obs. 6, & § 136, R. LII.
g § 132, Obs. 5.
h § 120, R. & 6, 3.
i § 136 Obs. 5, (*in*)
k 44, 3.
l § 106, R. VIII.
m § 128, Exc.
n § 106, R. VII.
o 17, 2.
p 101, 1.
q § 140, 1, 2d.
r 109, 2.

9. [1] Palus erat non magna inter nostrum[a] atque hostium exercĭtum. Hanc si nostri transīrent, hostes [2] expectābant nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fiĕret, ut impedītos[c] aggrederentur,[b] parāti in armis erant. Intĕrim prœlio equestri inter duas acies contendebātur.[d] Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt, [3] secundiōre equĭtum prœlio nostris,[e] Cæsar suos in castra reduxit. Hostes protĭnus ex eo loco ad flumen Axŏnam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra [4] demonstrātum est. Ibi vadis[f] repertis, partem suārum copiārum transducĕre conāti sunt, eo consilio, ut, si possent,[g] castellum, cui[h] præĕrat Quintus Titurius legātus, expugnārent, pontemque interscindĕrent;[i] [5] si minùs potuissent,[g] agros Remōrum popularentur,[i] qui magno nobis[k] usui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeatūque nostros prohibērent.

10. Cæsar, certior factus ab Titurio, omnem equitātum, et levis armatūræ[l] Numĭdas, funditōres[m] sagittariosque, pontem transdūcit, atque ad eos contendit. Acrĭter in eo loco pugnātum est.[d] Hostes [6] impedītos nostri in flumĭne aggressi, magnum eōrum numĕrum occidērunt. Per eōrum corpŏra relĭquos, audacissĭmè transīre conantes, multitudĭne telōrum repulērunt; primos, qui transiĕrant, equitātu circumventos interfecērunt. Hostes, ubi et de expugnando[n] oppĭdo, et de flumĭne transeundo,[n] spem se fefellisse intellexērunt, neque nostros in locum iniquiōrem progrĕdi pugnandi causâ vidērunt, atque ipsos res frumentaria deficĕre cœpit, concilio convocāto[f] constituērunt, optĭmum esse, domum[o] suam quemque reverti, ut, [7] quorum in fines primùm Romāni exercĭtum introduxissent,[p] ad eos defendendos undĭque convenīrent,[q] et potiùs in suis, quàm in aliēnis finĭbus, decertārent,[q] [8] et domestĭcis copiis[r] rei frumentariæ uterentur.[q]

[a] 29, 1.
[b] § 140, 1, 2d.
[c] 19, (*eos*.)
[d] 65.
[e] § 111, & 19.
[f] 109.
[g] § 140, 2.
[h] § 112, R. I.
[i] § 140, 1, 1st.
[k] § 114, R.
[l] § 106, R. VII.
[m] 119, 1.
[n] 112, 8.
[o] § 130, 4.
[p] § 141, Obs. 8.
[q] § 140, 1, 4th.
[r] § 121, R. XXVI

Ad eam sententiam, cum relĭquis causis, [1] hæc quoque ratio eos deduxit, quòd Divitiăcum atque Æduos finĭbus Bellovacōrum appropinquāre [a] cognovĕrant. [2] His [b] persuadēri, ut diutius morarentur, [c] neque suis auxilium ferrent, non potĕrat.

11. Eâ re constitūtâ, secundâ vigiliâ [d] magno cum strepitu ac tumultu castris [e] egressi, [3] nullo certo ordĭne neque imperio, [4] cùm sibi [f] quisque primum itinĕris locum petĕret, et domum [g] pervenīre properāret, fecērunt, ut consimĭlis fugæ profectio viderētur. [c] Hâc re [h] statim, Cæsar, per speculatōres cognĭtâ, [5] insidias verĭtus, quòd, quâ de causâ discedĕrent, [i] nondum perspexĕrat, exercĭtum equitatumque castris [e] continuit. Primâ luce, [d] confirmātâ re [h] ab exploratorĭbus, omnem equitātum, qui novissĭmum agmen morarētur, [k] præmīsit. His [f] Quintum Pedium et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam legātos præfēcit. Titum Labiēnum legātum cum legionĭbus tribus subsĕqui jussit. Hi, novissĭmos adorti, et multa millia [l] passuum prosecūti, magnam multitudĭnem eōrum fugientium concidērunt, [6] cùm ab extrēmo agmĭne, ad quos [m] ventum erat, [n] consistĕrent, [o] fortiterque impĕtum nostrōrum milĭtum sustinērent; [o] prioresque (quòd abesse a pericŭlo viderentur, neque ullâ necessitāte neque imperio continerentur), exaudīto clamōre, [h] perturbātis ordinĭbus, [h] omnes in fugâ sibi præsidium ponĕrent. [o] Ita sine ullo pericŭlo, [7] tantam [q] eōrum multitudĭnem nostri interfecērunt, quantum fuit diēi spatium: sub occasumque solis destitērunt, seque in castrâ, ut erat imperātum, recepērunt.

12. Postridie ejus diēi Cæsar, priusquàm se hostes ex terrōre ac fugâ recipĕrent, [r] in fines Suessiōnum, qui proxĭmi Remis erant, exercĭtum duxit, et, magno itinĕre [h] confecto, ad oppĭdum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinĕre oppug-

[a] 96, 2.
[b] § 126, R. III.
[c] § 140, 1, 3d.
[d] § 131, R. XL.
[e] § 136, Obs. 5.
[f] § 123, R.
[g] § 130, 4.
[h] 109.
[i] § 140, 5.
[k] § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.
[l] § 132, R. XLII.
[m] § 99. Exc. 1.
[n] 67, 5, Note.
[o] § 140, Obs. 4.
[p] § 141, Obs. 7.
[q] 44, 3.
[r] § 140, 4.

nāre conātus, quòd [1] vacuum ab defensorĭbus esse audiēbat, propter latitudĭnem fossæ murĭque altitudĭnem, paucis defendentĭbus, expugnāre non potuit. Castris munītis, [2] vineas agĕre, quæque ad oppugnandum usui [a] erant, comparāre cœpit. Intĕrim omnis ex fugâ Suessiōnum multitūdo in oppĭdum proxĭmâ nocte convēnit. Celerĭter vineis [b] ad oppĭdum actis, [3] aggĕre jacto, [4] turribusque constitūtis, magnitudĭne [c] opĕrum, quæ neque vidĕrant antè Galli neque audiĕrant, et celeritāte Romanōrum permōti, legātos ad Cæsārem de deditiōne mittunt, et, [5] petentĭbus Remis [b] ut conservarentur,[d] [6] impĕtrant.

13. Cæsar, obsidĭbus [b] acceptis, primis [e] civitātis atque ipsius [f] Galbæ regis duōbus filiis, armisque [b] omnĭbus ex oppĭdo tradĭtis, in deditiōnem Suessiōnes accēpit, exercitumque in Bellovăcos duxit. Qui [g] cùm se suăque omnia in oppĭdum Bratuspantium contulissent,[h] atque ab eo oppĭdo Cæsar cum exercĭtu circĭter millia passuum quinque abesset, omnes [7] majōres natu, ex oppĭdo egressi, manus ad Cæsărem tendĕre, et voce significāre cœpērunt, sese in ejus fidem ac potestātem venīre,[i] neque contra Popŭlum Romānum armis contendĕre. Item, cùm ad oppĭdum accessisset,[h] castrăque ibi ponĕret, puĕri mulieresque ex muro [8] passis manĭbus,[b] suo more,[c] pacem ab Romānis [k] petiērunt.

14. Pro his Divitiăcus (nam post discessum Belgārum, dimissis Æduōrum copiis,[b] ad eum revertĕrat) [9] facit verba: Bellovăcos [l] omni tempŏre in [10] fide atque amicitiâ civitātis Æduæ fuisse:[m] impulsos a suis principĭbus, qui dicĕrent,[n] Æduos, a Cæsāre in servitūtem redactos, omnes indignitātes contumeliasque perferre,[i] et ab Æduis defecisse,[m] et Popŭlo Romāno bellum intulisse.[m] Qui [o] hujus consilii

---

[a] § 114, Obs. 4, (*ei.*)
[b] 109, 2.
[c] § 129, R.
[d] § 140, 1, 3d.
[e] § 97. R. & 19.
[f] 32.
[g] 39, 6.
[h] § 140, Obs. 4. & 74, 8.
[i] 96, 2.
[k] § 124, Obs. 2.
[l] § 145, R. LVIII.
[m] 98, 2.
[n] § 140, 6.
[o] 37, 1st. (*eos.*)

princĭpes fuissent, quòd intelligĕrent quantam calamitātem civitāti intulissent,[a] in Britanniam profugisse.[b] Petĕre [1] non solum Bellovăcos,[c] sed etiam pro his Æduos,[c] ut suâ clementiâ ac mansuetudĭne in eos utātur.[d] Quod [e] si fecĕrit, Æduōrum auctoritātem apud omnes Belgas amplificatūrum; quorum auxiliis atque opĭbus, si qua bella incidĕrint,[f] sustentāre consuêrint."[g]

15. Cæsar, honōris[h] Divitiăci[h] atque Æduōrum causâ, sese eos in fidem receptūrum,[i] et conservatūrum, dixit: sed, quòd erat civĭtas magnâ inter Belgas auctoritāte,[p] atque homĭnum multitudĭne[k] præstābat, sexcentos obsĭdes poposcit. His tradĭtis, omnibusque armis ex oppĭdo collātis, ab eo loco in fines Ambianōrum pervēnit, qui se[l] suăque omnia sine morâ dedidērunt. Eōrum fines Nervii attingēbant: quorum de natūrâ moribusque Cæsar cùm [2] quærĕret, sic reperiēbat: "Nullum adĭtum esse ad eos mercatorĭbus:[m] [3] nihil pati vini, reliquarumque rerum ad luxuriam pertinentium, inferri,[n] quòd his rebus[o] relanguescĕre anĭmos et remitti virtūtem existimārent:[g] esse homĭnes feros, magnæque virtūtis:[p] [4] increpitāre atque incusāre relĭquos Belgas, qui se Popŭlo Romāno dedidissent,[q] patriamque virtūtem projecissent:[q] [5] confirmāre, sese neque legātos missūros,[l] neque ullam [6] conditiōnem pacis acceptūros."[l]

16. Cùm per eōrum fines triduum iter fecisset, inveniēbat ex captīvis, Sabim flumen ab castris suis non ampliùs millia[r] passuum decem abesse: trans id flumen omnes Nervios consedisse,[b] adventumque ibi Romanōrum [7] expectāre, unà cum Atrebatĭbus et Veromanduis, finitĭmis suis (nam his[s] utrisque persuasĕrant, utì eandem belli fortūnam experirentur): [8] expectāri etiam ab his Aduatucōrum copias, at-

a § 140, 5.
b 98, 2.
c § 145, R. LVIII.
d § 140, 1, 3d.
e 37, Note. 3, & 38.
f § 45. III. 2.
g § 141, Obs. 7.
h § 106, Obs. 2.
i 100, 2.
k § 128, R.
l 31, 5, Note.
m § 112, R. II.
n 90, 4.
o § 129, R.
p § 106, R. VII.
q § 141, R. III.
r § 132, R.
s 63, 3.

que esse in itinĕre: [1]muliĕres, quique[a] per ætātem ad pugnam inutĭles viderentur,[b] in eum locum conjecisse, quò propter palūdes exercitui[c] adĭtus non esset.

17. His rebus cognĭtis, exploratōres centurionesque præmittit, qui locum idoneum castris delĭgant.[d] Cùmque ex dedititiis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complūres, Cæsărem secūti, unà iter facĕrent;[e] quidam ex his, ut postea ex captīvis cognĭtum est, [2]eōrum diērum[g] consuetudĭne[f] itinĕris[g] nostri exercĭtûs perspectâ, nocte ad Nervios pervenērunt, atque iis[h] demonstrârunt, inter singŭlas[i] legiōnes impedimentōrum magnum numĕrum intercedĕre, [3]neque esse quicquam negotii,[k] cùm prima legio in castra venisset,[l] reliquæque legiōnes magnum spatium[m] abessent, hanc sub sarcĭnis adorīri:[n] [4]quâ pulsâ,[f] impedimentisque direptis,[f] futūrum, ut relĭquæ contrà consistĕre non audĕrent.[o] Adjuvābat[p] etiam eōrum consilium qui rem deferēbant, quòd Nervii antiquĭtùs, cùm equitātu[q] nihil[r] possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus [5]ei rei student, sed, quicquid[s] possunt, pedestrĭbus[6] valent copiis), quò faciliùs finitimōrum equitātum, si prædandi causâ ad eos venisset,[t] impedīrent,[u] tenĕris arborĭbus[f] [7]incīsis atque inflexis, [8]crebris in latitudĭnem ramis[f] et rubis sentibusque interjectis effecĕrant, ut instar[v] muri hæ sepes munimenta præbērent; quò non modò[w] intrāri, sed ne perspĭci quidem posset. His rebus cùm iter agmĭnis nostri impedirētur, non omittendum sibi consilium Nervii æstimavērunt.

18. [9]Loci natūra erat hæc, quem[x] locum nostri castris delegĕrant. Collis, ab summo æqualĭter declīvis, ad flumen Sabim, quod suprà nominavĭmus, vergēbat. Ab eo flumĭne pari

---

[a] 37, 1st.
[b] § 141, Obs. 7.
[c] § 112, R. II.
[d] § 141, Obs. 2. 4th.
[e] § 44, II. and 74, 3.
[f] 109, 2.
[g] § 106, Obs. 2.
[h] 63.
[i] 26, 5.
[k] § 106. R. VIII.
[l] 80, 3.
[m] § 132, R. XLII.
[n] § 144, R. LVI.
[o] § 140, 1, 4th.
[p] 51.
[q] § 129, R.
[r] § 116, Obs. 3.
[s] 37, 8, Note. 2. & [r].
[t] § 140, 2.
[u] § 140, 1.
[v] § 136, Obs. 5. (*ad*)
[w] § 134, Obs. 5.
[x] 37, 6, Note. 1

acclivitāte collis nascebātur, adversus huic[a] et contrarius, passus[b] circĭter ducentos [1]infĭmâ apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut non facilè introrsus perspĭci posset.[c] Intra eas silvas hostes in occulto[d] sese continēbant: in aperto loco, [2]secundum flumen, paucæ statiōnes equĭtum videbantur. Flumĭnis erat altitūdo pedum circĭter trium.[e]

19. Cæsar, equitātu præmisso, subsequebātur omnĭbus copiis:[f] sed ratio ordoque agmĭnis [3]alĭter se habēbat, ac[g] Belgæ ad Nervios detulĕrant. Nam, quòd ad hostes appropinquābat, consuetudĭne suâ Cæsar sex legiōnes [4]expedītas ducēbat: post eas totius exercĭtûs impedimenta collocârat: inde duæ legiōnes, quæ proxĭmè conscriptæ erant, totum agmen claudēbant, præsidiōque[h] impedimentis[h] erant. Equĭtes nostri, cum funditorĭbus sagittariisque flumen transgressi, cum hostium equitātu prœlium commisērunt. Cùm se illi [5]identĭdem in silvas ad suos recipĕrent,[i] ac rursus ex silvâ in nostros impĕtum facĕrent,[i] neque[k] nostri longiùs, quàm [6]quem[l] ad finem porrecta ac loca aperta pertinēbant, cedentes insĕqui audērent:[i] intĕrim legiōnes sex, quæ primæ[m] venĕrant, opĕre dimenso, castra munīre cœpērunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercĭtûs ab his, qui in silvis abdĭti latēbant, visa sunt ([7]quod tempus inter eos committendi prœlii convenĕrat), ita, ut intra silvas aciem ordinesque constituĕrant, atque ipsi sese confirmavĕrant, subĭtò omnĭbus copiis[f] provolavērunt impetumque in nostros equĭtes fecērunt. His facĭlè pulsis ac proturbātis, incredibĭli celeritāte ad flumen decucurrērunt, ut pæne uno tempŏre et ad silvas, et in flumĭne, et jam [8]in manĭbus nostris hostes viderentur.[c] Eâdem autem celeritāte [9]adverso colle ad nostra castra, atque eos,[n] qui in opĕre occupāti erant, contendērunt.

---

[a] § 111, R.
[b] § 132, R. XLII.
[c] § 140, 1, 1st, (*ita.*)
[d] § 90, 6.
[e] § 132, Obs. 3.
[f] § 132, Obs. 5, (*cum*)
[g] § 149, Obs. 6
[h] § 114, R.
[i] § 140, Obs. 4, & 74, 3.
[k] § 93, 1, (*and not.*)
[l] 37, 2d, 5, Note. 1.
[m] 98, Obs. 10.
[n] § 149, R. & Exp.

20. Cæsări[a] omnia uno tempŏre erant agenda:[b] [1] vexillum proponendum,[b] quod erat insigne, cùm ad arma concurri oportēret: signum tubâ dandum:[b] ab opĕre revocandi[b] milĭtes: [2] qui paulo longiùs[c] aggĕris petendi causâ processĕrant, arcessendi:[b] acies instruenda,[b] milĭtes cohortandi,[b] signum dandum:[b] quarum[d] rerum magnam partem tempŏris brevĭtas, et [3] successus et incursus hostium impediēbat. His difficultatĭbus[e] duæ res [4] erant subsidio,[f] scientia atque usus milĭtum, quòd, superiorĭbus prœliis exercitāti, quid fiĕri oportēret,[g] non minùs commŏdè ipsi sibi[h] præscribĕre, quàm ab aliis docēri potĕrant; et quòd ab opĕre [5] singulisque[i] legionĭbus singŭlos[i] legātos Cæsar discedĕre, nisi munītis castris, vetuĕrat. Hi, propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium, [6] nihil jam Cæsăris imperium spectābant, sed [7] per se, quæ [8] videbantur, administrābant.

21. Cæsar, necessariis rebus imperātis, ad cohortandos milĭtes, [9] quam[k] in partem fors obtŭlit, decurrit, et ad legiōnem decĭmam devēnit. Milĭtes non longiōre oratiōne[l] cohortātus, quàm utì suæ pristĭnæ virtūtis memoriam retinērent,[m] neu[n] [10] perturbarentur[m] anĭmo, hostiumque impĕtum fortĭter sustinērent;[m] quòd non longiùs hostes abĕrant, quàm quò telum adjĭci posset,[o] prœlii committendi signum dedit. Atque in altĕram partem item cohortandi causâ profectus, pugnantĭbus[p] occurrit. Tempŏris tanta fuit [11] exiguĭtas, hostiumque tam parātus ad dimicandum anĭmus, ut non modò ad insignia accommodanda,[q] sed etiam ad galeas induendas[q] scutisque tegumenta detrahenda tempus defuĕrit.[r] Quam quisque in partem ab opĕre casu devēnit, quæque prima signa conspexit, ad hæc constĭtit, ne, in quærendo suos, pugnandi tempus dimittĕret.[s]

---

[a] § 126, Obs 3.
[b] 108, 2.
[c] § 120, Obs. 5.
[d] 38.
[e] § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)
[f] § 114, Obs. 4. *nostris.*
[g] § 140, 5.
[h] 63.
[i] 26, 5.
[k] 37, 2d, 5. Note. 1.
[l] § 129, R.
[m] § 140, 1, 3d.
[n] § 93, 1, (*and not,*)
[o] § 140, 5.
[p] § 112, R. IV. & 19
[q] 112, 7.
[r] § 140, 1, 1st.
[s] § 140, 1, 2d.

22. Instructo exercĭtu, magis ut loci natūra, 1 dejectusque collis, et 2 necessĭtas tempŏris, quàm ut rei militāris ratio atque ordo postulābat, cùm diversis locis[a] legiōnes, aliæ aliá in parte,[b] hostĭbus resistĕrent, sepibusque[c] densissĭmis, ut antè demonstravĭmus, interjectis 3 prospectus impedirētur:[d] neque[e] certa subsidia collocāri, neque quid in quâque parte opus esset providēri, neque ab uno omnia imperia adminis-trāri potĕrant. Ităque, 4 in tantâ rerum iniquitāte, fortūnæ quòque eventus varii sequebantur.

23. Legiōnis nonæ, et decĭmæ milĭtes, ut 5 in sinistrâ parte acie constitĕrant, pilis emissis,[f] cursu ac lassitudĭne[c] 6 exan-imātos, vulneribusque confectos, Atrebātes (7 nam his ea pars obvenĕrat), celerĭter ex loco superiōre in flumen compulē-runt; et, transīre conantes insecūti gladiis,[c] magnam partem eōrum impedītam interfecērunt. Ipsi transīre flumen[g] non dubitavērunt; et, in locum inīquum progressi, rursus regres-sos ac resistentes hostes, redintegrāto prœlio,[h] 8 in fugam dedērunt. Item aliâ in parte 9 diversæ duæ legiōnes, unde-cĭma et octāva, profligātis Veromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex loco superiōre in ipsis[i] flumĭnis ripis prœlia-bantur. 10 At tum, totis ferè a fronte, et ab sinistrâ parte, nudātis castris,[h] cùm in dextro cornu legio duodecĭma, et non magno ab eâ intervallo septĭma constitisset,[d] omnes Nervii confertissĭmo agmĭne,[c] duce Boduognāto,[k] qui sum-mam imperii tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt: quorum pars aperto latĕre legiōnes circumvenīre, pars 11 summum[l] castrōrum locum petĕre, cœpit.

24. Eōdem tempŏre equĭtes nostri, 12 levisque armatūræ[m] pedĭtes, qui cum iis unà fuĕrant, 13 quos[n] primo hostium im-pĕtu[c] pulsos dixĕram, cùm se in castra recipĕrent,[d] 14 adver-

---

a § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)
b § 98, Obs. 11, & 25.
c § 129, R.
d § 140, Obs. 4.
e 124, 5.
f 104, 1.
g § 136, R. LII.
h 109, 2.
i 32, 6.
k 110, 1.
l 17, 2.
m § 106, R. VII.
n § 145, Obs. 2, & 91, 4.

sis hostĭbus occurrēbant, ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petēbant: et [1] calōnes, qui ab [2] decumānâ portâ, ac summo jugo collis, nostros[a] victōres flumen transîsse[b] conspexĕrant, prædandi causâ egressi, cùm respexissent et hostes in nostris castris [3] versāri[c] vidissent, [4] præcipĭtes[d] fugæ sese mandābant. Simul eōrum, qui cum impedimentis veniēbant, clamor fremitusque oriebātur, aliīque aliam[e] in partem perterrĭti ferebantur.[f] Quibus[g] omnĭbus rebus permōti equĭtes Trevĭri, quorum inter Gallos virtūtis opinio est singulāris, qui auxilii causâ ab civitāte missi ad Cæsărem venĕrant, cùm multitudĭne[h] hostium castra[a] nostra complēri,[c] legiōnes[a] premi[c] et pæne circumventas tenēri, calōnes,[a] equĭtes, funditōres, Numĭdas, [5] diversos dissipatosque, in omnes partes fugĕre vidissent,[i] desperātis nostris rebus, domum contendērunt: Romānos[a] pulsos[b] superatosque, castris[k] impedimentisque eōrum hostes potītos,[b] civitāti renunciavērunt.

25. Cæsar, ab decĭmæ legiōnis cohortatiōne ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos[a] [6] urgēri,[c] signisque in unum locum collātis duodecĭmæ legiōnis confertos milĭtes[a] sibi[m] ipsos[l] ad pugnam esse impedimento;[m] quartæ cohortis omnĭbus centurionĭbus occīsis, signiferōque interfecto, signo amisso, reliquārum cohortium omnĭbus ferè centurionĭbus aut vulnerātis aut occīsis, in his [7] primopīlo, Publio Sextio Bacŭlo,[n] fortissĭmo viro,[n] multis gravibusque vulnerĭbus [8] confecto, ut jam se sustinēre non posset;[o] relĭquos[a] esse tardiōres, et nonnullos ab novissĭmis desertos [p] prœlio[q] excedĕre ac tela vitāre; hostes[a] neque [9] a fronte ex inferiōre loco [10] subeuntes intermittĕre, et ab utrōque latĕre instāre; et rem[a] esse in angusto vidit, neque ullum esse subsidium, quod submitti posset:[s] scuto ab novissĭmis uni milĭti[r] de-

---

a § 145. R. LVIII.
b 98, 2.
c 96, 6.
d § 98, Obs. 10
e § 98, Obs. 11, & 25.
f 116 3.
g 38. § 129, R
h § 126. R. V.
i § 140, Obs. 4.
k § 121, R. XXVI
l 33, 1.
m § 114, R.
n § 97, R.
o § 140, 1, 1st. (*ita.*)
p 101, 4.
q § 136, R. LII
r § 126, R. III. & 5, 1
s § 141, R. I.

tracto (quòd ipse eò sine scuto venĕrat), in primam aciem processit, centurionibusque nominātim appellātis,[a] relĭquos cohortātus milĭtes, [1] signa inferre et manipŭlos laxāre[b] jussit, quò faciliùs gladiis[c] uti possent.[d] [2] Cujus adventu spe illātâ militĭbus,[e] ac redintegrāto anĭmo, cùm [3] pro se quisque,[f] in conspectu imperatōris, et jam in extrēmis suis rebus, opĕram navāre cupĕrent,[g] paulum hostium impĕtus tardātus est.

26. Cæsar cùm septĭmam legiōnem,[h] quæ juxta constitĕrat, item urgēri[i] ab hoste vidisset, tribūnos[k] milĭtum monuit, ut paulātim sese [4] legiōnes conjungĕrent, et conversa signa in hostes inferrent. Quo facto, cùm alius[f] alii subsidium ferrent,[g] neque timērent [5] ne[l] aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur, audaciùs resistĕre ac fortiùs pugnāre cœpērunt. Intĕrim milĭtes legiōnum duārum, quæ in novissĭmo agmĭne præsidio[m] impedimentis fuĕrant, prœlio nunciāto, cursu incitāto, in summo colle ab hostĭbus conspiciebantur. Et Titus Labiēnus, castris[c] hostium potītus, et ex loco superiōre, quæ res in nostris castris gererentur,[n] conspicātus, decĭmam legiōnem subsidio[m] nostris misit. Qui,[o] cùm ex equĭtum et calōnum fugâ, quo in loco res esset,[n] quantōque in perĭcŭlo et castra, et legiōnes, et imperātor [6] versarētur,[p] cognovissent,[g] [7] nihil ad celeritātem sibi relĭqui fecērunt.

27. Horum adventu tanta rerum commutatio facta est, ut nostri, etiam qui vulnerĭbus confecti procubuissent,[q] scutis[r] innixi, prœlium redintegrārent;[s] tum calōnes, perterrĭtos hostes conspicāti, etiam inermes armātis[r] occurrĕrent; equĭtes vero, ut turpitudĭnem fugæ virtūte delērent,[t] [8] omnĭbus in locis pugnæ se legionariis militĭbus præferrent. At hostes, etiam in extrēmâ spe salūtis, tantam virtūtem [9] præstit-

---

[a] 104, 1.
[b] 90, 4, (*eos.*)
[c] § 120, R. XXVI. & 7, 5.
[d] § 140, 1.
[e] § 126, R. III.
[f] § 98. Ex. 4 (*illi*).
[g] § 140, Obs. 4.
[h] § 145, R. LVIII.
[i] 96, 6.
[k] 63, 3.
[l] § 140, Obs. 6.
[m] § 114, R.
[n] § 140, 5.
[o] 39, 2.
[p] § 102, Obs. 1.
[q] § 141, Obs. 3.
[r] § 112, R. IV.
[s] § 140, 1, 1st.
[t] § 140, 1, 2d.

ērunt, ut, cùm primi eōrum cecidissent, proxĭmi jacentĭbus insistĕrent, atque ex eōrum corporĭbus pugnārent: his dejectis, et coacervātis cadaverĭbus, [1]qui[a] superessent,[b] [2]utì ex tumŭlo, tela in nostros conjicĕrent,[c] et pila intercepta remittĕrent:[c] ut non nequicquam tantæ virtūtis[d] homĭnes judicāri debēret[e] ausos esse[f] transīre latissĭmum flumen,[g] ascendĕre altissĭmas ripas, subīre iniquissĭmum locum:[g] quæ facilia ex difficillĭmis anĭmi magnitūdo [3]redegĕrat.

28. Hoc prœlio facto,[h] et [4]prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nomĭne Nerviōrum redacto,[h] majōres natu, quos[i] unà cum puĕris mulieribusque in [5]æstuaria ac palūdes collectos[i] dixerāmus, hâc pugnâ nunciātâ,[h] cùm victorĭbus [6]nihil[k] impedītum,[l] victis nihil[k] tutum[l] arbitrarentur, omnium, qui superĕrant, consensu legātos ad Cæsărem misērunt seque ei dedidērunt; et, in commemorandâ[m] civitātis calamitāte, ex sexcentis ad tres senatōres, ex homĭnum millĭbus sexaginta vix ad quingentos, qui arma ferre possent,[n] sese redactos esse[f] dixērunt. [7]Quos Cæsar, ut in misĕros ac supplĭces usus[o] misericordiâ viderētur,[e] diligentissĭmè conservāvit, suisque finĭbus atque oppĭdis uti jussit, et finitĭmis[p] imperāvit, ut ab injuriâ et maleficio se suosque prohibērent.[q]

29. Aduatŭci, de quibus suprà scripsĭmus, cùm omnĭbus copiis auxilio[r] Nerviis venīrent, hâc pugnâ[h] nunciātâ, ex itinĕre domum revertērunt; cunctis oppĭdis castellisque desertis, sua omnia in unum oppĭdum, egregiè naturâ munītum, contulērunt. Quod[s] cùm ex omnĭbus in circuĭtu partĭbus [8]altissĭmas rupes despectusque habēret, unâ ex parte lenĭter acclīvis adĭtus, in latitudĭnem [9]non ampliùs ducentōrum pedum, relinquebātur: quem[s] locum duplĭci altissĭmo muro muniĕrant; tum magni pondĕris[d] saxa et præacūtas trabes

[a] 37, (*ii.*)
[b] § 140, Obs. 8.
[c] § 140, 1, 1st.
[d] § 106, R. VII.
[e] § 140, 1, 2d.
[f] 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.
[g] § 136, R. LII.
[h] 109, 2.
[i] § 145, Obs. 2.
[k] § 145, R. LVIII. (*esse*)
[l] § 103, Obs. 2.
[m] 112, 8.
[n] § 141, Obs. 7.
[o] § 145, Obs. 3.
[p] 63, 3.
[q] § 140, 1, 3d.
[r] § 114, R.
[s] 38, 1, (*oppĭdum.*)

in muro collocârant. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prognāti; qui, cùm iter in provinciam nostram atque Italiam facĕrent, [1] iis impedimentis,[a] quæ secum agĕre ac portāre non potĕrant, citra flumen Rhenum deposĭtis custodiæ[a] ex suis ac præsidio[a] sex millia homĭnum reliquērunt. Hi, post eōrum obĭtum, multos annos[b] a finitĭmis exagitāti, [2] cùm aliàs bellum inferrent, aliàs illātum defendĕrent, consensu eōrum omnium pace factâ, hunc sibi[a] domicilio[a] locum delegērunt.

30. Ac primo adventu[c] exercĭtûs nostri crebras ex oppĭdo excursiōnes faciēbant, parvulisque prœliis[d] cum nostris contendēbant: postea, vallo [3] pedum[e] duodĕcim, in circuĭtu quindĕcim millium,[e] crebrisque castellis[d] circummunīti, oppĭdo[f] sese continēbant. Ubi, [4] vineis actis,[g] aggĕre exstructo, turrim[h] procul constitui vidērunt, primùm irridēre[i] ex muro, atque increpitāre[i] vocĭbus,[d] [5] quò tanta machinatio ab[k] tanto spatio instituerētur[l]? quibusnam manĭbus,[d] aut quibus virĭbus, præsertim homĭnes tantŭlæ statūræ[e] (nam plerumque homĭnĭbus Gallis,[a] [6] præ magnitudĭne corpŏrum suōrum, brevĭtas nostra contemtui est), tanti onĕris[e] turrim[h] in muros sese collocāre confidĕrent?[l]

31. Ubi verò [7] movēri, et appropinquāre mœnĭbus[m] vidērunt, novâ atque inusitātâ specie[d] commōti, legātos ad Cæsărem de pace misērunt, qui, [8] ad hunc modum locūti: "Non se existimāre[n] Romānos sine ope divīnâ bellum gerĕre,[n] qui [9] tantæ altitudĭnis[e] machinatiōnes tantâ celeritāte promovēre, [10] et ex propinquitāte pugnāre, possent: se[o] suăque omnia eōrum potestāti permittĕre," dixērunt. [11] "Unum petĕre[n] ac deprecāri: si fortè, pro suâ clementiâ ac mansuetudĭne, quam ipsi ab aliis audīrent,[p] statuisset, Aduatŭcos

---

[a] § 114, R.
[b] § 131, R. XLI.
[c] § 131, R. XL.
[d] § 129, R.
[e] § 106, R. VII.
[f] § 136, Obs. 5.
[g] 109, 2.
[h] § 15, 3.
[i] § 144, Obs. 6.
[k] § 132, Obs. 5.
[l] § 140, 5.
[m] § 112, R. IV.
[n] 96, 2.
[o] 31.
[p] § 141, Obs. 7.

esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliāret:[a] sibi omnes ferè finitĭmos[b] esse inimīcos,[c] ac suæ virtūti[d] invidēre; a quibus se defendĕre, tradĭtis armis,[e] non possent.[f] [1] Sibi[d] præstāre, si in eum casum deducerentur,[g] quamvis fortūnam a Popŭlo Romāno pati, quàm ab his[h] per cruciātum interfĭci, inter quos domināri consuêssent."[f]

32. Ad hæc Cæsar respondit: "Se magis consuetudĭne[i] suâ, quàm merĭto[i] eōrum, civitātem conservatūrum,[k] si [2] priùs, quàm murum aries attigisset,[l] se dedidissent:[l] sed deditiōnis nullam esse conditiōnem,[b] nisi armis tradĭtis: se[b] id, quod [3] in Nerviis fecisset,[m] factūrum,[k] finitimisque imperatūrum,[k] ne quam dedititiis[n] Popŭli Romāni injuriam inferrent."[a] Re nunciātâ ad suos, "quæ imperarentur, facĕre"[o] dixērunt. Armōrum magnâ multitudĭne[e] de muro in fossam, quæ erat ante oppĭdum, jactâ, sic ut propè summam [4] muri aggerisque altitudĭnem acervi armōrum adæquārent; et tamen circĭter parte[e] tertiâ, ut postea perspectum est, celātâ atque in oppĭdo retentâ, portis[e] patefactis, eo die pace[p] sunt usi.

33. [5] Sub vespĕrum Cæsar portas claudi[q] militesque ex oppĭdo exīre[q] jussit, ne quam noctu oppidāni ab milităbus injuriam accipĕrent[r] Illi, antè inĭto, ut intellectum est, consilio,[e] quòd, deditiōne[e] factâ, nostros præsidia deductūros,[k] aut denĭque indiligentiùs servatūros,[k] credidĕrant, partim cum his, quæ retinuĕrant et celavĕrant, armis, partim scutis ex cortĭce factis aut viminĭbus intextis, quæ subĭto (ut tempŏris exiguĭtas postulābat), pellĭbus[s] induxĕrant, [6] tertiâ vigiliâ,[t] quà minĭmè arduus ad nostras munitiōnes ascensus videbātur, omnĭbus copiis[u] repentè ex oppĭdo eruptiōnem fecērunt. Celerĭter, ut antè Cæsar imperârat, [7] ignĭbus[i]

---

[a] § 140, 1, 3d.
[b] § 145, R. LVIII.
[c] § 103, Obs. 2.
[d] § 112, R. IV.
[e] 109, 2.
[f] § 141, Obs. 7.
[g] § 140, 2.
[h] § 126, Obs. 2.
[i] § 129, R.
[k] 100, 2.
[l] 80, 1, & 2.
[m] § 140, 6.
[n] § 123, R.
[o] 94, 3.
[p] § 121, R. XXVI
[q] 90, 4.
[r] § 140, 1, 2d, & 121, 3.
[s] § 125, R.
[t] § 131, R. XL.
[u] § 136, Obs. 5, *cum*.

significatiōne factâ, ex proxĭmis castellis eò concursum est,[a] pugnatumque[a] ab hostĭbus [1]ita acrĭter, ut[b] a viris fortĭbus, in extrēmâ spe salūtis, inīquo loco, contra eos, qui ex vallo turribusque tela jacĕrent,[c] pugnāri debuit,[d] cùm in unâ virtūte omnis spes salūtis consistĕret.[e] Occīsis [2]ad homĭnum millĭbus[f] quatuor, relĭqui in oppĭdum rejecti sunt. Postridie ejus diēi, refractis portis,[f] cùm jam defendĕret[e] nemo, atque intromissis milĭtĭbus nostris, [3]sectiōnem ejus oppĭdi universam Cæsar vendĭdit. Ab his, qui emĕrant, [4]capĭtum numĕrus ad eum relātus est millium quinquaginta trium.

34. Eōdem tempŏre[g] a Publio Crasso, quem cum legiōne unâ misĕrat ad Venĕtos, Unellos, Osismios, Curiosolĭtas, Sesuvios, Aulercos, Rhedŏnes, quæ sunt maritĭmæ civitātes [5]Oceanumque attingunt, [6] certior factus est, omnes eas civitātes in ditiōnem potestatemque Popŭli Romāni esse redactas.[h]

35. His rebus[f] gestis, omni Galliâ[f] pacātâ, tanta hujus belli ad barbăros opinio perlāta est, utì ab his nationĭbus, quæ trans Rhenum incolĕrent,[i] mitterentur[k] legāti ad Cæsărem, quæ se[l] obsĭdes datūras,[m] imperāta factūras, pollicerentur:[i] quas[n] legatiōnes Cæsar, quòd in Italiam Illyricumque properābat, inĭtâ proxĭmâ æstāte[o] ad se reverti jussit. Ipse in Carnūtes, Andes, Turonesque, quæ[p] civitātes propinquæ his locis[q] erant, ubi bellum gessĕrat, legionĭbus[f] in hiberna deductis, in Italiam profectus est, ob easque res, ex litĕris Cæsăris, [7]dies[r] quindĕcim supplicatio decrēta est, quod[s] ante id tempus accĭdit nulli.[t]

---

[a] 67, 1.
[b] § 140, Obs. 1.
[c] § 141, Obs. 3.
[d] § 113, Obs. 1, & 88, 7.
[e] § 140, Obs. 4.
[f] 109, 2.
[g] § 131, R. XL.
[h] 98, 6.
[i] § 141, Obs. 3.
[k] § 140, 1, 1st.
[l] § 145, R. LVIII.
[m] 100, 2.
[n] 38.
[o] § 146, Obs. 9.
[p] 37, 4, & Note. 1.
[q] § 111, R.
[r] § 131, R. XLI.
[s] 37, Note. 3, 9.
[t] § 112, R. IV. & 19

BOOK III.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. War with the Nantuates, Veragri, and Seduni—Chap. 1–6 II. War with the Veneti—Chap. 7–16. III. War with the Unelli—Chap. 17–19. IV. Expedition of Crassus into Aquitania—Chap. 20–27. V. Expedition of Cæsar against the Morini and Menapii—Chap. 28–29.

1. Cum in Italiam proficiscerētur Cæsar, Servium Galbam cum legiōne duodecĭmâ, et parte equitātûs, in Nantuātes, Verāgros, Sedunosque misit, qui ab finĭbus Allobrŏgum, et lacu Lemanno, et flumĭne Rhodăno, ad summas[a] Alpes pertĭnent. Causa mittendi fuit, quòd iter[b] per Alpes, [1]quo, magno cum pericŭlo [2]magnisque cum portoriis, mercatōres ire consuêrant, patefiĕri[c] volēbat. Huic[d] permīsit, si opus esse arbitrarētur, utì in eis locis legiōnem hiemandi causâ collocārct.[e] Galba, secundis aliquot prœliis[f] factis, castellisque complurĭbus eōrum expugnātis, missis ad eum undĭque legātis,[f] obsidibusque datis, et pace factâ, constituit, cohortes duas in Nantuatĭbus collocāre, et ipse[g] cum relĭquis ejus legiōnis cohortĭbus in vico Veragrōrum, qui appellātur Octodūrus,[h] hiemāre: qui[i] vicus, posĭtus in valle, non magnâ adjectâ planitie, altissĭmis montĭbus undĭque continētur. Cùm [3]hic in duas partes flumĭne dividerētur, altĕram[l] partem ejus vici Gallis[k] concessit, altĕram,[l] vacuam ab illis relictam, cohortĭbus ad hiemandum attribuit. [4]Eum locum vallo fossâque munīvit.

2. Cùm dies hibernōrum complūres transîssent, frumentumque eò comportāri[c] jussisset, subĭtò per exploratōres certior factus est, ex eâ parte vici, quam Gallis concessĕrat, omnes[b] noctu discessisse,[m] montesque, qui impendērent, a

---

a 17, 2.
b § 145. R. LVIII.
c 94, 3.
d 63.
e § 140, 1, 3d.
f 109, 2.
g 32,3,(*constituit.*)
h § 103, R.
i § 38, 2.
k § 123, R.
l 27, 10, Obs.
m 98, 2.

maxĭmâ multitudĭne Sedunōrum et Veragrōrum tenēri.[a] Id alĭquot de causis accidĕrat, ut subĭtò Galli belli renovandi[b] legionisque opprimendæ[b] consilium capĕrent:[c] primùm, quòd legiōnem, [1] neque eam plenissĭmam, detractis cohortĭbus duābus, et complurĭbus[d] [2] singillātim, qui commeātûs petendi causâ missi erant, absentĭbus, propter paucitātem despiciēbant: tum etiam, quòd, propter iniquitātem loci, cùm ipsi ex montĭbus in vallem [3] decurrĕrent,[e] et tela conjicĕrent,[e] [4] ne primum quidem posse impĕtum sustinēre[f] existimābant. [5] Accedēbat, quòd suos ab se libĕros[g] abstractos[h] obsĭdum nomĭne dolēbant: et Romānos[g] non solum itinĕrum causâ, sed etiam perpetuæ possessiōnis, culmĭna Alpium occupāre conāri, et ea loca finitĭmæ provinciæ adjungĕre, [6] sibi[i] persuāsum habēbant.

3. His nuntiis acceptis, Galba, cùm neque opus hibernōrum, munitionesque plenè essent perfectæ, [7] neque de frumento reliquōque commeātu satis esset provĭsum,[k] quòd, deditiōne factâ, obsidibusque acceptis, [8] nihil de bello timendum existimavĕrat, consilio celerĭter convocāto, sententias exquirĕre cœpit. Quo[l] in consilio, cùm tantum repentĭni pericŭli præter opiniōnem accidisset, ac jam omnia ferè superiōra loca multitudĭne[m] armatōrum complēta conspicerentur, [9] neque subsidio[o] venīri, neque commeātus supportāri interclūsis itinerĭbus[p] possent, prope jam desperātâ salūte,[p] nonnullæ hujusmŏdi sententiæ dicebantur, ut, impedimentis[p] relictis, eruptiōne factâ, iisdem itinerĭbus,[q] quibus [q] eò pervenissent, ad salūtem contendĕrent.[n] [10] Majōri tamen parti[r] placuit, hoc[p] reservāto ad extrēmum[s] consilio, intĕrim rei eventum experīri et[t] castra defendĕre.

---

[a] 96, 2.
[b] 112, 5.
[c] § 140, 1, 4th.
[d] 19, (*militĭbus*.)
[e] § 140, Obs. 3, & § 45, II. 1.
[f] 87, 7.
[g] § 145, R. LVIII.
[h] 98, 2.
[i] § 126, R. III.
[k] 65.
[l] 38.
[m] § 126, R. V.
[n] § 140, 1, 1st.
[o] § 136, Obs. 5. *cum*
[p] 109, 2.
[q] § 129, R.
[r] § 113, R
[s] 19, (*casum*.)
[t] § 149, R.

4. Brevi spatio interjecto, vix ut his rebus,[a] quas constituissent,[b] [1]collocandis[c] atque administrandis[c] tempus darētur,[d] hostes ex omnĭbus partĭbus, signo dato, decurrĕre,[e] lapĭdes [2]gæsăque in vallum conjicĕre:[e] nostri primo [3]intĕgris virĭbus fortĭter repugnāre,[e] neque ullum [4]frustra telum ex loco superiōre mittĕre[e]: ut[f] quæque pars castrōrum nudāta defensorĭbus[g] premi videbātur, eò occurrĕre,[e] et auxilium ferre:[e] [5]sed hôc superāri,[e] quòd diuturnitāte pugnæ hostes defessi prœlio[h] excedēbant, alii intĕgris virĭbus succedēbant: quarum rerum a nostris propter [6]paucitātem fiĕri nihil potĕrat; ac [7]non modò[i] defesso[k] ex pugnâ excedendi, sed ne saucio[k] quidem ejus loci, ubi constitĕrat, relinquendi,[l] ac sui recipiendi,[l] facultas dabātur.

5. Cùm jam ampliùs horis[m] sex continenter pugnarētur, ac non solùm vires, sed etiam tela, nostris[n] deficĕrent,[o] atque hostes acriùs instārent, languidioribusque nostris[p] vallum scindĕre, et fossas complēre, cœpissent,[o] resque esset[o] jam [8]ad extrēmum perducta casum, Publius Sextius Bacŭlus, primi pili centurio [9]quem[q] Nervĭco prœlio complurĭbus confectum vulnerĭbus dixĭmus, et item Caius Volusēnus, tribūnus milĭtum, vir et consilii[r] magni et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt, atque unam esse spem salūtis docent, si eruptiōne factâ, extrēmum auxilium experirentur. Ităque, [10]convocātis centurionĭbus, celerĭter milĭtes certiōres facit, paulisper intermittĕrent[s] prœlium, ac tantummŏdo tela missa excipĕrent,[s] seque ex labōre reficĕrent; pòst, dato signo, ex castris erumpĕrent,[s] atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte ponĕrent.[s]

6. Quod jussi sunt, faciunt; ac, subĭtò [11]omnĭbus portis eruptiōne factâ, neque cognoscendi, quid fiĕret, neque sui[i]

---

[a] § 114, R, (*sibi.*)
[b] § 141, Obs. 8.
[c] 112, 6.
[d] § 140, 1, 1st, (*ita.*)
[e] § 144, Obs. 6.
[f] § 140, Obs. 1.
[g] § 126, R. V.
[h] § 136, R. LII.
[i] § 134, Obs. 5.
[k] 19, & § 126, R. III.
[l] 112, 5.
[m] § 120, R
[n] § 112, R. V.
[o] § 140, Obs. 4.
[p] 19, & 110.
[q] 91, 4.
[r] § 106, R. VII.
[s] § 140, Obs. 5.

colligendi, hostĭbus [a] facultātem relinquunt. Ita commutātâ fortūnâ,[b] eos, qui in spem potiundōrum [c] castrōrum venĕrant, undĭque circumventos interficiunt, et, [1] ex homĭnum millĭbus ampliùs [d] triginta, quem [e] numĕrum barbarōrum ad castra venisse constābat,[2] plus [d] tertiâ parte interfectâ, relĭquos perterrĭtos in fugam conjiciunt, ac ne in locis quidem superiorĭbus consistĕre patiuntur. Sic, omnĭbus hostium copiis [b] [3] fusis, armisque exūtis, se in castra munitionesque suas recipiunt. Quo [f] prœlio facto, quòd sæpiùs fortūnam tentāre Galba nolēbat, atque [4] alio [g] sese in hiberna consilio venisse [h] meminĕrat, aliis [g] occurrisse [h] rebus vidĕrat, maxĭmè frumenti commeatûsque inopiâ permōtus, postĕro die [i] omnĭbus ejus vici ædificiis [b] incensis, in Provinciam reverti contendit; ac, nullo hoste prohibente, aut iter demorante, incolŭmem legiōnem in Nantuātes, inde in Allobrŏgas, perduxit, ibĭque hiemāvit.

7. His rebus [b] gestis, cùm [5] omnĭbus de causis Cæsar pacātam Galliam existimāret, superātis Belgis,[b] expulsis Germānis, victis in Alpĭbus Sedūnis, atque ita, inĭtâ hiĕme,[b] in Illyrĭcum profectus esset, quòd eas quoque natiōnes [k] adīre, et regiōnes cognoscĕre, volēbat, subĭtum bellum in Galliâ coortum est. Ejus belli hæc fuit causa. Publius Crassus adolescens cum legiōne septĭmâ proxĭmus [6] mare [l] Oceănum in Andĭbus hiemārat. Is, quòd in his locis inopia frumenti erat,[7] præfectos tribunosque milĭtum complūres in finitĭmas civitātes, frumenti commeatûsque petendi [c] causâ, dimīsit: quo in numĕro erat Titus Terrasidius, missus in Esubios; Marcus Trebius Gallus in Curiosolĭtas; Quintus Velanius, cum Tito Silio, in Venĕtos.

8. Hujus est civitātis longè amplissĭma auctorĭtas omnis oræ [m] maritĭmæ regiōnum eārum; quòd et naves habent Ve-

---

[a] § 123, R.
[b] 109, 2.
[c] 112, 5.
[d] § 120, Obs. 3.
[e] 37, 2d, & Note. 1.
[f] 38, 3.
[g] § 98, Obs. 12.
[h] 98, 2.
[i] § 131, R. XL.
[k] § 136, R. LII.
[l] § 136, Obs. 5, (*ad.*)
[m] § 107, R. X. Exp.

nĕti plurĭmas, quibus in Britanniam navigāre consuêrunt, et [1] scientiâ [a] atque usu nauticārum rerum relĭquos [b] antecēdunt, et, [2] in magno impĕtu maris atque aperto, paucis portŭbus interjectis, quos tenent [3] ipsi,[c] omnes ferè, qui [4] eo mari uti consuêrunt, habent [5] vectigāles. Ab iis fit initium retinendi [d] Silii atque Velanii, quòd per eos suos se obsĭdes, quos Crasso dedissent, recuperatūros [e] exĭstimābant. Horum auctoritāte finitĭmi adducti ([6] ut sunt Gallōrum subĭta [f] et repentīna consilia), eâdem de causâ Trebium Terrasidiumque retĭnent, et, celerĭter missis legātis,[g] per suos princĭpes inter se conjūrant, nihil nisi commūni consilio actūros,[e] eundemque [7] omnis fortūnæ exĭtum esse latūros; [e] reliquasque civitātes solicĭtant, ut in eâ libertāte, quam a majorĭbus accepĕrant, permanēre, quàm [h] Romanōrum servitūtem perferre, mallent.[i] Omni orâ [g] maritĭmâ celerĭter ad suam [k] sententiam perductâ, commūnem legatiōnem ad Publium Crassum mittunt, "si velit [8] suos recipĕre, obsĭdes sibi remittat."

9. Quibus de rebus Cæsar ab Crasso certior factus, quòd ipse [c] abĕrat longiùs, [9] naves intĕrim longas ædificāri [l] in flumĭne Ligĕri, quod influit in Oceănum, [10] remĭges ex Provinciâ institui,[l] nautas gubernatoresque comparāri [l] jubet. His rebus [g] celerĭter administrātis, ipse,[c] cùm primùm per anni tempus potuit, ad exercĭtum contendit. Venĕti, reliquæque item civitātes, cognĭto Cæsăris adventu,[g] simul quòd, quantum in se [m] facĭnus admisissent,[n] intelligēbant (legātos, quod [o] nomen apud omnes natiōnes sanctum inviolatumque semper fuisset, retentos ab se et in vincŭla conjectos), [11] pro magnitudĭne pericŭli bellum parāre, et maxĭmè ea, quæ ad usum navium pertĭnent, providēre instituunt; [12] hoc majōre spe, quòd multùm natūrâ [p] loci confidēbant. [13] Pedestria

[a] § 128, R.
[b] § 116, Obs. 4.
[c] 32, 3.
[d] 112, 5.
[e] 100, 2.
[f] § 103, Obs. 2
[g] 109, 2.
[h] § 149, Obs. 1.
[i] § 140, 1, 3d, & § 137, Obs. 1.
[k] 30, 2.
[l] 90, 4.
[m] § 28, Foot note, †
[n] § 140, 5.
[o] 37, 2d, 4, & Note. 1.
[p] § 121, Obs. 2.

esse itinĕra concīsa[a] æstuariis, [1] navigatiōnem[d] impedītam[a] propter inscientiam locōrum paucitatemque portuum sciēbant: [2] neque[b] nostros exercĭtus[d] propter frumenti inopiam diutius apud se morāri posse, confidēbant: ac jam, ut omnia contra [3] opiniōnem accidĕrent,[c] tamen se[d] plurĭmum navĭbus posse:[e] Romānos[d] neque ullam facultātem habēre[e] navium, neque eōrum locōrum, ubi bellum gestūri essent,[f] vada, portus, insŭlas novisse:[g] ac [4] longè aliam esse[i] navigatiōnem in conclūso mari, atque[h] in vastissĭmo atque apertissĭmo Oceăno, perspiciēbant. His inĭtis consiliis, oppĭda muniunt, frumenta ex agris in oppĭda comportant, naves in Venetiam, ubi Cæsărem primùm bellum gestūrum[k] constābat, quàm[l] plurĭmas possunt, cogunt. Socios sibi ad id bellum Osismios, Lexovios, Nannētes, Ambiliātos, Morĭnos, Diablintes, Menapios adsciscunt: auxilia ex Britanniâ, quæ contra eas regiōnes posĭta est, arcessunt.

10. [5] Erant hæ difficultātes belli gerendi, quas supra ostendĭmus; sed multa[m] Cæsărem tamen ad id bellum incitābant: [6] injuriæ[n] retentōrum[o] equĭtum Romanōrum; [7] rebellio facta post deditiōnem; defectio[n] datis obsidĭbus; tot civitātum conjuratio;[n] in primis, [8] ne, hâc parte neglectâ, relĭquæ natiōnes [9] idem[p] sibi licēre arbitrarentur. Ităque cùm intelligĕret, omnes fere Gallos[d] [10] novis rebus[q] studēre,[i] et, ad bellum mobilĭter celeriterque excitāri, omnes autem homĭnes [11] natūrâ libertāti[q] studēre, et [12] conditiōnem servitūtis odisse; priusquam plures civitātes conspirārent,[r] partiendum[d] sibi[s] ac latiùs distribuendum exercĭtum putāvit.

11. Ităque Titum Labiēnum legātum in Trevĭros, qui proxĭmi Rheno flumĭni sunt, cum equitātu mittit. Huic mandat, Remos reliquosque Belgas adeat, atque in officio contineat;

[a] 98, 2.	[g] § 84, 3.	[n] § 97, R.
[b] § 93, 1, (*and—not.*)	[h] § 149, Obs. 6.	[o] § 146, Obs. 2.
[c] § 140, 3.	[i] 96, Exc. I. 9.	[p] § 113, Obs. 3. *facĕre*
[d] § 145, R. LVIII.	[k] 100, 2.	[q] § 112, R. V.
[e] 96, 2.	[l] § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.	[r] § 140, 4.
[f] § 140, 5, & § 79. 8.	[m] 19, (*negotia.*)	[s] § 147, R. & 113. 5.

Germanosque, qui [1] auxilio [a] a Belgis arcessīti [b] dicebantur, si per vim navĭbus flumen transīre conentur, prohibeat.[c] Publium Crassum cum cohortĭbus legionariis duodĕcim, et magno numĕro equitātûs, in Aquitaniam proficisci jubet, ne ex his nationĭbus auxilia in Galliam mittantur,[d] ac tantæ nationes conjungantur.[d] Quintum Titurium Sabīnum legātum cum legionĭbus tribus in Unellos, Curiosolĭtas, Lexoviosque mittit, [2] qui [e] eam manum distinendam [f] curet. Decĭmum Brutum adolescentem classi, Gallicisque navĭbus, quas ex Pictonĭbus et Santŏnis reliquisque pacātis regionĭbus convenīre jussĕrat, præfĭcit, et, cùm primùm possit,[g] in Venĕtos proficisci jubet. Ipse eò pedestrĭbus copiis contendit.

12. Erant ejusmŏdi ferè [3] situs oppidōrum, ut, posĭta [4] in extrēmis lingŭlis promontoriisque, neque pedĭbus [i] adĭtum habērent,[h] [5] cùm ex alto se æstus incitavisset,[g] quod bis accĭdit semper horārum viginti quatuor spatio, neque navĭbus,[i] quòd, rursus [6] minuente æstu, [7] naves in vadis afflictarentur.[k] Ita [8] utrâque re oppidōrum oppugnatio impediebātur; ac, si quando magnitudĭne [l] opĕris fortè superāti, extrūso mari [9] aggĕre [l] ac molĭbus, atque his ferme oppĭdi mœnĭbus [m] adæquātis, suis fortūnis [n] desperāre cœpĕrant, magno numĕro navium [10] appulso, cujus rei summam facultātem habēbant, sua deportābant omnia, seque in proxĭma oppĭda recipiēbant. Ibi se rursus iisdem opportunitatĭbus [l] loci defendēbant. Hæc eo faciliùs magnam partem [o] æstātis faciēbant, quòd nostræ naves tempestatĭbus [l] detinebantur; summăque erat vasto atque aperto mari,[n] [11] magnĭs æstĭbus,[l] raris ac prope nullis portŭbus,[l] difficultas navigandi.

13. Namque ipsōrum naves ad hunc modum [12] factæ armatæque erant. Carīnæ [13] aliquanto planiōres, quàm [p] nos-

[a] § 114, R. & Obs. 4.
[b] 92, 2.
[c] § 140, 1, 3d.
[d] § 140, 1, 2d.
[e] § 141, Obs. 2, 4th, and 40.
[f] 108, 4.
[g] § 140, Obs. 4.
[h] § 140, 1, 1st.
[i] § 123, R.
[k] § 139, 2, & 76, 2.
[l] § 129, R.
[m] § 126, R. III.
[n] § 136, Obs. 5.
[o] § 131, R. XLI.
[p] § 149, R. Sup. *carīnæ.*

trārum navium, quo faciliùs vada ac decessum æstus[1] excipĕre possent:[a] proræ admŏdum erectæ, atque item puppes, ad magnitudĭnem fluctuum tempestatumque accommodātæ: naves totæ factæ ex robŏre,[b] [2] ad quamvis vim et contumeliam perferendam:[c] transtra [3] pedalĭbus in latitudĭnem trabĭbus[b] confixa clavis ferreis, [4] digĭti pollĭcis crassitudĭne:[d] anchŏræ, pro funĭbus, ferreis catēnis revinctæ: [5] pelles pro velis, alutæque tenuĭter confectæ, sive[e] propter lini inopiam atque ejus usûs inscientiam, sive eo,[f] quod est magis verisimĭle, quòd tantas tempestātes[g] Oceăni tantosque impĕtus ventōrum sustinēri,[h] ac tanta onĕra[g] navium [6] regi[h] velis non satis commŏdè, arbitrabantur. [7] Cum his navĭbus nostræ classi[i] ejusmŏdi congressus erat, ut unâ celeritāte[k] et pulsu remōrum præstāret, [8] relĭqua, pro loci natūrâ, pro vi tempestātum, illis[l] essent aptiōra et accommodatiōra: [9] neque enim his[m] nostræ rostro[n] nocēre potĕrant; tanta in eis erat firmitūdo: neque propter altitudĭnem facĭlè telum adjiciebātur; et eâdem de causâ minùs commŏdè [10] copŭlis[n] continebantur. Accedēbat, ut, cùm [11] sævīre ventus cœpisset et se vento dedissent, et[o] tempestātem ferrent faciliùs, et[o] in vadis consistĕrent[p] tutiùs, et, ab æstu derelictæ, nihil[q] saxa et cautes timērent: quarum rerum omnium nostris navĭbus[r] [12] casus erant extimescendi.

14. Complurĭbus expugnātis oppĭdis, Cæsar, ubi intellexit, frustra tantum labōrem[g] sumi, neque hostium fugam[g] captis oppĭdis reprĭmi, [13] neque his nocēri posse,[s] statuit expectandum classem. Quæ ubi convēnit, ac primùm ab hostĭbus visa est, circĭter ducentæ et viginti naves eōrum [14] paratissĭmæ, atque omni genĕre[n] armōrum ornatissĭmæ, profectæ ex portu, nostris[l] adversæ constitērunt: neque satis

---

[a] § 140, 1.
[b] § 128, Obs. 2.
[c] 112, 7.
[d] § 106, R. VII. & 6, 1.
[e] 124, 3.
[f] § 129, R.
[g] § 145, R. LVIII.
[h] 94, 3.
[i] § 112, R. II.
[k] § 128, R.
[l] § 111, R.
[m] § 112, R. V.
[n] § 129, R.
[o] 124, 1.
[p] § 140, 1, 4th.
[q] § 122, Obs. 6.
[r] § 126, Obs. 3.
[s] § 113, R. & Obs. 1.

[1]Bruto,[a] qui classi[b] præĕrat, vel tribūnis[a] milĭtum centurionibusque, quibus[c] singŭlæ naves erant attribūtæ, constâbat, quid agĕrent,[d] aut [2]quam ratiōnem pugnæ insistĕrent.[d] Rostro[e] enim nocēri non posse[f] cognovĕrant; turrĭbus autem excitātis, tamen has altitūdo puppium ex barbăris navĭbus superābat; [3]ut neque ex inferiōre loco satis commŏdè tela adjĭci possent,[g] et missa ab Gallis [4]graviùs accidĕrent. Una erat magno usui[h] res præparāta a nostris, [5]falces[i] præacūtæ, insertæ affixæque longuriis,[c] non absimĭli[k] formâ[l] [6]muralium falcium.[m] His[e] cùm funes, quî antennas ad malos destinābant,[7]comprehensi adductīque erant, navigio remis[c] incitāto prærumpebantur. Quibus[n] abscissis, antennæ necessariò concidēbant, ut, cùm omnis Gallĭcis navĭbus[o] spes in velis armamentisque consistĕret, his ereptis, omnis usus navium uno tempŏre eriperētur.[g] Relĭquum erat certāmen posĭtum in virtūte, quâ nostri milĭtes facĭlè superābant, atque eo magis, quòd in conspectu Cæsăris atque omnis exercĭtûs res gerebātur, ut nullum paulo fortiùs factum [8]latēre posset:[g] omnes enim colles ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus despectus in mare, ab exercĭtu tenebantur.

15. Dejectis, ut dixĭmus, antennis, [9]cùm[p] singŭlas[q] binæ ac ternæ naves circumstetĕrant, milĭtes summâ vi[e] [10]transcendĕre in hostium naves contendēbant. Quod[r] postquam barbări fiĕri animadvertērunt, expugnātis complurĭbus navĭbus, cùm ei rei[c] nullum reperirētur auxilium, fugâ[e] salūtem petĕre contendērunt: ac, jam conversis in eam partem navĭbus, [11]quò ventus ferēbat, tanta subĭtò malacia ac tranquillĭtas extĭtit, ut se ex loco movēre non possent. Quæ quidem res ad negotium conficiendum maxĭmè fuit opportūna: nam singŭlas[q] nostri consectāti expugnavērunt, ut perpaucæ

[a] § 113, R.
[b] § 112, R. I.
[c] § 126, R. III.
[d] § 140, 5.
[e] § 129, R.
[f] § 113, Obs. 1.
[g] § 140, 1, 2d.
[h] § 114, R. & Obs. 4.
[i] § 97, R.
[k] 16, 2.
[l] § 106, R. VII. or § 128, R.
[m] § 111, Obs. 2.
[n] 38, 5.
[o] § 110, Obs. 1, R.
[p] § 140, Obs. 3.
[q] 26.
[r] § 145, R. & 38, 4

ex omni numĕro, noctis interventu, ad terram pervenĕrint, cùm[a] ab horâ ferè quartâ usque ad solis occāsum pugnarētur.

16. Quo[b] prœlio bellum Venetōrum totiusque oræ maritĭmæ confectum est. Nam, cùm omnis juventus, omnes etiam [1]graviōris ætātis,[c] in quibus alĭquid consilii[d] aut dignitātis fuit, eò convenĕrant; tum, navium quod[e] ubique fuĕrat, unum in locum coëgĕrant: quibus[f] amissis, relĭqui, neque quò se recipĕrent[g] neque quemadmŏdum oppĭda defendĕrent,[g] habēbant. Ităque se suăque omnia Cæsări dedidērunt. [2]In quos eo graviùs Cæsar vindicandum[h] statuit, quo diligentiùs in relĭquum tempus a barbăris jus legatōrum conservarētur.[i] Ităque, omni senātu[f] necāto, relĭquos [3]sub corōnâ vendĭdit.

17. Dum hæc in Venĕtis geruntur, Quintus Titurius Sabīnus cum iis copiis, quas a Cæsăre accepĕrat, in fines Unellōrum pervēnit. His præĕrat Viridŏvix, ac summam imperii tenēbat eārum omnium civitātum, quæ defecĕrant, ex quibus exercĭtum magnasque copias coëgĕrat. [4]Atque his paucis diēbus[k] Aulerci Eburovīces, Lexoviīque, senātu[f] suo interfecto, quòd auctōres belli esse nolēbant, portas clausērunt seque cum Viridovīce conjunxērunt; magnăque præterea multitūdo undĭque ex Galliâ [5]perditōrum homĭnum latronumque convenĕrant, quos spes prædandi, studiumque bellandi, ab agricultūrâ et quotidiāno labōre revocābat. Sabīnus idoneo[l] omnĭbus rebus loco[m] castris sese tenēbat, cùm Viridŏvix contra eum duōrum millium spatio consedisset, quotidiēque productis copiis[f] pugnandi potestātem facĕret;[n] ut jam non solùm hostĭbus[n] in contemtiōnem Sabīnus venīret,[o] sed etiam nostrōrum milĭtum vocĭbus [6]nonnĭhil carperētur: tantamque opiniōnem timōris præbuit, ut jam ad vallum castrōrum hostes accedĕre audērent.[p] Id eâ de causâ faciēbat,

---

[a] § 140, Obs. 3.
[b] 38, 9, & § 129, R.
[c] § 106, R. VII.
[d] § 106, R. VIII.
[e] § 106, Obs. 10.
[f] 109, 2.
[g] § 140, 5
[h] 113, 5.
[i] § 140, 1.
[k] § 131, R. XLI.
[l] 16.
[m] § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)
[n] § 110, Obs. 1, R
[o] § 140, 1, 2d.
[p] § 140, 1, 1st.

quòd cum tantâ multitudĭne hostium, præsertim [1]eo[a] absente, qui summam imperii tenēret,[b] nisi æquo loco, aut opportunitāte alĭquâ datâ, legāto[c] dimicandum non existimābat.

18. [2]Hâc confirmātâ opiniōne timōris, idoneum quendam homĭnem et callĭdum delēgit, Gallum, ex his, quos auxilii causâ secum habēbat. Huic[d] magnis præmiis pollicitationibusque persuādet, utì ad hostes transeat;[e] et, quid fiĕri velit,[f] edŏcet. Qui,[g] ubi pro perfŭgâ ad eos venit, timōrem Romanōrum [3]propōnit: "quibus angustiis[h] ipse Cæsar a Venĕtis premātur,"[f] docet: [4]"neque longiùs abesse, quin proxĭmâ nocte Sabīnus clam ex castris exercĭtum edūcat,[i] et ad Cæsărem auxilii ferendi causâ proficiscātur."[i] Quod[k] ubi audītum est, conclāmant omnes, occasiōnem negotii bene gerendi amittendam non esse,[l] [5]ad castra iri oportēre. Multæ res ad hoc consilium Gallos hortabantur: superiōrum diērum Sabīni cunctatio,[m] [6]perfŭgæ confirmatio, inopia cibariōrum, cui rei[n] parum diligenter ab iis erat provīsum, spes Venetĭci belli, et quòd ferè libenter homĭnes id, quod volunt, credunt. His rebus[h] adducti, non priùs Viridovīcem reliquosque duces ex concilio dimittunt, quàm ab his sit[o] concessum, arma utì capiant[p] et ad castra contendant. Quâ re concessâ, læti, ut explorātâ victŏriâ, sarmentis virgultisque collectis, [7]quibus[q] fossas Romanōrum compleant,[q] ad castra pergunt.

19. Locus erat castrōrum edĭtus, et paulātim ab imo acclīvis circĭter passus[r] mille. Huc magno cursu contendērunt, ut [8]quàm minĭmum spatii[s] ad se colligendos armandosque Romānis darētur, [9]exanimatīque pervenērunt. Sabīnus, suos hortātus, cupientĭbus signum dat. Impedītis hostĭbus propter ea, quæ ferēbant, onĕra, subĭtò duābus portis erup-

a 110.
b § 141, Obs. 8.
c § 147, R. & 113.
d § 123, R. & 63.
e § 140, 1, 3d.
f § 140, 5.
g 39, 5.
h § 129, R.
i § 140, 3.
k 38.
l 108, 4.
m § 97, R.
n § 113, R.
o § 140. 4.
p § 140, 1, 4th.
q § 141, Obs. 2. 4th
r § 132, R. XLII.
s § 106, R. VIII.

tiōnem fiĕri jubet. Factum est opportunitāte loci, hostium inscientiâ ac defatigatiōne, virtūte milĭtum, superiōrum pugnārum exercitatiōne, ut ne unum quidem nostrōrum impĕtum ferrent,[a] ac statim terga vertĕrent. Quos[b] impedītos [1] intĕgris virībus[c] milĭtes nostri consecūti, magnum numĕrum eōrum occidērunt; relĭquos equĭtes consectāti,[d] paucos, qui ex fugâ evasĕrant, reliquērunt. Sic, uno tempŏre, et[e] de navāli pugnâ [2] Sabīnus, et de Sabīni victoriâ Cæsar certior factus; civitatesque omnes se statim Titurio dedidērunt. Nam, ut[f] ad bella suscipienda[g] Gallōrum alăcer ac promtus est anĭmus, sic mollis ac [3] minĭmè resistens ad calamitātes perferendas[g] mens eōrum est.

20. Eōdem ferè tempŏre, Publius Crassus, cùm in Aquitaniam pervenisset, quæ pars,[h] ut antè dictum est, et regiōnum latitudĭne,[i] et multitudĭne[i] homĭnum, [4] ex tertiâ parte Galliæ est æstimanda, cùm intelligĕret in his locis sibi[k] bellum gerendum, ubi paucis antè annis Lucius Valerius Præconīnus, legātus, exercĭtu pulso, interfectus esset,[l] atque unde Lucius Manilius, proconsul, impedimentis amissis profugisset,[l] [5] non mediōcrem sibi diligentiam[m] adhibendam[n] intelligēbat. Ităque re frumentariâ provīsâ, auxiliis equitatūque comparāto,[o] multis præterea viris fortĭbus Tolōsâ,[p] Carcasōne, et Narbōne, quæ sunt civitātes Galliæ Provinciæ, finitĭmæ his regionĭbus, nominātim evocātis, in Sotiātum fines exercĭtum introduxit. Cujus adventu cognĭto, Sotiātes, magnis copiis coactis, equitatūque, [6] quo plurĭmùm valēbant, in itinĕre agmen nostrum adorti, primum equestre prœlium commisērunt: deinde, equitātu suo pulso, atque insequentĭbus nostris, subĭto pedestres copias, quas in convalle in insidiis collocavĕrant, ostendērunt. Hi, nostros disjectos adorti, prœlium renovârunt.

[a] § 140, 1, 4th.
[b] 38.
[c] § 129, R.
[d] 105.
[e] 124, 1.
[f] 124. 20.
[g] 112, 7.
[h] 37. 2d, 4, Note. 1.
[i] § 128, R.
[k] § 147, R. LXI.
[l] § 141, Obs. 8.
[m] § 145, R.
[n] 108, 4.
[o] § 98, Obs. 4.
[p] § 136, R. LII

21. Pugnātum est diu atque acrĭter, cùm Sotiātes, superiorĭbus victoriis[a] freti, in suâ[b] virtūte totius Aquitaniæ salūtem posĭtam putārent;[c] nostri autem, quid sine imperatōre, et sine relĭquis legionĭbus, adolescentŭlo duce,[d] efficĕre possent, perspĭci cupĕrent.[c] Tandem, confecti vulnerĭbus, hostes terga vertĕre.[e] Quorum[f] magno numĕro interfecto, Crassus ex itinĕre oppĭdum Sotiātum oppugnāre cœpit. Quibus[g] fortĭter resistentĭbus, vineas turresque egit. Illi, aliàs eruptiōne tentātâ, aliàs cunicŭlis ad aggĕrem vineasque actis ([1]cujus rei[h] sunt longè peritissĭmi Aquitāni, propterea quòd multis locis apud eos [2]ærariæ sectūræ sunt), ubi diligentiâ nostrōrum [3]nihil[i] his rebus profĭci posse[k] intellexērunt, legātos ad Crassum mittunt, seque in deditiōnem ut recipiat petunt. Quâ[f] re impetrātâ, arma tradĕre jussi, faciunt.

22. Atque, in eâ re omnium nostrōrum intentis anĭmis, aliâ ex parte oppĭdi Adcantuannus, qui summam imperii tenēbat, cum sexcentis devōtis, quos illi soldurios appellant ([4]quorum hæc est conditio, utì omnĭbus in vitâ commŏdis[l] unà cum his fruantur,[m] quorum se amicitiæ[o] dedidĕrint;[n] si quid iis per vim accĭdat, aut eundem casum unà ferant,[m] aut [5]sibi[o] mortem consciscant:[m] neque adhuc homĭnum memoriâ repertus est quisquam, qui, eo interfecto, cujus se amicitiæ[o] devovisset, mortem recusāret),[p] cum iis Adcantuannus, eruptiōnem facĕre conātus, clamōre ab eâ parte munitiōnis sublāto, cùm ad arma milĭtes concurrissent,[c] vehementerque ibi pugnātum esset,[c] repulsus in oppĭdum, tamen utì eâdem deditiōnis conditiōne[l] uterētur,[q] ab Crasso impetrāvit.

23. Armis obsĭdibusque acceptis, Crassus in fines Vocatium et Tarusatium profectus est. Tum verò [6]barbări commōti, quòd oppĭdum,[r] [7]et natūrâ[s] loci et manu[s] munītum,

---

[a] § 119, R.
[b] 30, 2.
[c] § 140, Obs. 4.
[d] 110, 1.
[e] § 144, Obs. 6.
[f] 38.
[g] 38, & 109.
[h] § 107, R. IX.
[i] § 128, Exc.
[k] § 145, Obs. 3, (*sc.*)
[l] § 121, R. XXVI.
[m] § 140, 1, 1st.
[n] § 141, Obs. 8.
[o] § 123, R.
[p] § 141, Obs. 3.
[q] § 140, 1, 3d.
[r] § 145, R.
[s] § 129, R.

paucis diēbus,[a] quibus[a] eò ventum erat,[b] expugnātum[c] cognovĕrant, legātos quoquoversus dimittĕre, conjurāre, obsĭdes inter se dare, copias parāre cœpērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eas civitātes legāti, quæ sunt [1] citeriōris Hispaniæ,[d] finitĭmæ Aquitaniæ:[e] inde auxilia ducesque arcessuntur. Quorum[f] adventu magnâ cum auctoritāte, et magnâ cum homĭnum multitudĭne, bellum gerĕre conantur. Duces verò ii deliguntur, qui unà cum Quinto Sertorio omnes annos[g] fuĕrant, summamque scientiam rei militāris habēre existimabantur. Hi consuetudĭne Popŭli Romāni [2] loca capĕre, castra munīre, commeatĭbus nostros interclудĕre instituunt. Quod[f] ubi Crassus animadvertit, suas copias propter exiguitātem non [3] facĭlè didūci,[h] hostem et vagāri[i] et vias obsidēre[i] et castris satis præsidii relinquĕre,[i] ob eam causam minùs commŏdè frumentum commeatumque sibi[k] supportāri;[h] [4] in dies hostium numĕrum augēri; non cunctandum existimāvit, quin pugnâ decertāret.[l] [5] Hâc re ad consilium delātâ, ubi omnes [6] idem sentīre[i] intellexit, postĕrum diem pugnæ constituit.

24. Primâ luce, productis omnĭbus copiis, [7] duplĭci acie institūtâ, [8] auxiliis in mediam aciem conjectis, quid hostes consilii[m] capĕrent[n] expectābat. Illi, etsi propter multitudĭnem, et vetĕrem belli gloriam, paucitatemque nostrōrum, se tutò dimicatūros[o] existimābant, tamen tutius[p] esse arbitrabantur, obsessis viis, commeātu interclūso, sine ullo vulnĕre victoriâ potīri: et, si propter inopiam rei frumentariæ Romāni sese recipĕre cœpissent,[q] impedītos in agmĭne et sub sarcĭnis, inferiōres anĭmo,[r] adorīri cogitābant. Hoc consilio probāto ab ducĭbus, productis Romanōrum copiis, sese castris[s] tenēbant. Hâc re perspectâ Crassus, [9] cùm suâ cunctatiōne atque opiniōne timōris hostes nostros milĭtes alacri-

---

a § 131, R. XLI. Obs. 3.
b 67, 5, Note.
c 98, 2.
d § 108, R. XII.
e § 111, R.
f 38.
g § 131, R. XLI.
h 94, 3.
i 96, 2.
k § 126, R. III.
l § 140, 3.
m § 106, R. VIII.
n § 140, 5.
o 100, 1.
p § 98, Obs. 6.
q § 140, 2.
r § 128, R.
s § 136. Obs. 5, (*in*.)

ōres ad pugnandum[a] effecissent;[b] atque omnium voces audirentur,[b] expectāri[c] diutius non oportēre, quin[d] ad castra irētur;[c] cohortātus suos, omnĭbus cupientĭbus, ad hostium castra contendit.

25. Ibi cùm alii[e] fossas complērent,[b] alii[e] multis telis conjectis, defensōres vallo[f] munitionibusque depellĕrent, auxiliaresque, quibus[g] ad pugnam non multùm Crassus confidēbat, lapidĭbus[h] telisque subministrandis,[i] et ad aggĕrem cespitĭbus comportandis, speciem atque opiniōnem pugnantium[k] præbērent;[b] cùm item ab hostĭbus [1] constanter ac non timĭdè pugnarētur,[b] telăque ex loco superiōre missa non frustra accidĕrent;[b] equĭtes, circumĭtis hostium castris, Crasso renunciavērunt, non eâdem esse diligentiâ ab [2] decumānâ portâ castra[l] munīta, facilemque adĭtum habēre.

26. Crassus, equĭtum præfectos cohortātus, ut magnis præmiis[h] pollicitationibusque suos excitārent, quid fiĕri velit ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperātum, eductis quatuor cohortĭbus, quæ, præsidio[m] castris[m] relictæ, [3] intrītæ ab labōre erant, et [4] longiōre[n] itinĕre[h] circumductis, ne ex hostium castris conspĭci possent,[o] omnium ocŭlis mentibusque ad pugnam intentis, celerĭter ad eas, quas dixĭmus, munitiōnes pervenērunt, atque, his prorŭtis, priùs in hostium castris constitērunt, quàm [5] planè ab iis vidēri,[r] aut, quid rei[p] gererētur,[q] cognosci[r] posset. Tum vero, clamōre ab eâ parte audīto, nostri redintegrātis virĭbus,[h] quod[s] plerumque in spe victoriæ accidĕre consuēvit, acriùs impugnāre cœpērunt. Hostes undĭque circumventi, desperātis omnĭbus rebus,[t] se per munitiōnes dejicĕre et fugâ[h] salūtem petĕre [6] intendērunt. Quos[u] equitātus apertissĭmis campis[v] consectātus,

---

[a] § 147, Obs. 4.
[b] § 140, Obs. 4.
[c] 67, Note.
[d] § 140, 3.
[e] § 98, Obs. 12.
[f] § 136, R. LII.
[g] § 112, R. V.
[h] § 129, R,
[i] § 147. R. LXII.
[k] 19, (*militum.*)
[l] § 145, R. LVIII.
[m] § 114, R.
[n] § 120, Obs. 5.
[o] § 140. 1, 2d.
[p] § 106, R. VIII.
[q] § 140, 5.
[r] 87.
[s] 37, 9, Note. 3.
[t] 109, 2.
[u] 38.
[v] § 136, Obs. 5. (*in.*)

ex millium quinquaginta numĕro, quæ[a] ex Aquitaniâ Cantabrisque convenisse[b] constābat, vix quartâ parte relictâ [1]multâ[c] nocte[d] se in castra recēpit.

27. Hâc audītâ pugnâ,[e] magna pars Aquitaniæ sese Crasso[f] dedĭdit, obsidesque ultro misit: quo[g] in numĕro fuērunt Tarbelli, Bigerriōnes, Preciāni, Vocātes, Tarusātes, Elusātes, Garĭtes, Ausci, Garumni, Sibuzātes, Cocosātes. Paucæ ultĭmæ natiōnes, anni tempŏre[h] confīsæ, quòd hiems subĕrat, hoc facĕre neglexērunt.

28. Eōdem ferè tempŏre[d] Cæsar, etsi prope exacta jam æstas erat, tamen, quòd, omni Galliâ[i] pacātâ, Morĭni Menapiīque [2]superĕrant, qui[k] in armis essent,[k] neque[l] ad eum unquam legātos de pace misissent,[k] arbitrātus, id bellum celerĭter confĭci posse, eò exercĭtum adduxit: [3]qui longè aliâ ratiōne, ac relĭqui[m] Galli, bellum agĕre instituērunt. Nam quòd intelligēbant, maxĭmas natiōnes,[n] quæ prœlio contendissent,[o] pulsas[b] superatasque esse,[b] [4]continentesque silvas ac palūdes habēbant, eò se suăque omnia contulērunt. Ad quarum[g] initium silvārum cùm Cæsar pervenisset,[p] castrăque munīre instituisset,[p] neque[l] hostis intĕrim visus esset,[p] dispersis in opĕre nostris,[i] subĭtò ex omnĭbus partĭbus silvæ evolavērunt et in nostros[q] impĕtum fecērunt. Nostri[q] celerĭter arma cepērunt, eosque in silvas repulērunt, et, complurĭbus[e] interfectis, [5]longiùs[r] impeditiorĭbus locis secūti, paucos ex suis deperdidērunt.

29. Relĭquis deinceps diēbus[s] Cæsar silvas cædĕre instituit, et, ne, quis [6]inermĭbus imprudentibusque milităbus[t] ab latĕre impĕtus fiĕri[m] posset,[u] omnem eam [7]materiam, quæ

---

[a] § 145, R. & Obs. 2.
[b] 98, 2.
[c] 17, 1.
[d] § 131, R. XL.
[e] 109, 2.
[f] § 123, R.
[g] 38.
[h] § 121, Obs. 2.
[i] 109, 2.
[k] § 141, R. V, (*soli.*)
[l] § 93, 1.
[m] § 149, Obs. 6.
[n] § 145, R.
[o] § 141, Obs. 7.
[p] § 140, Obs. 4.
[q] 19, 2.
[r] 22, 3.
[s] § 131. R. XLI.
[t] § 126, R. III.
[u] § 140, 1, 2d.

erat cæsa, [1]conversam ad hostem collocābat, et pro vallo ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incredibĭli celeritāte[a] magno spatio[b] paucis diēbus[c] [2]confecto, cùm jam pecus atque [3]extrēma[d] impedimenta ab nostris tenerentur,[e] ipsi[f] densiōres silvas petĕrent; ejusmŏdi sunt tempestātes consecūtæ, utì opus necessariò intermitterētur,[g] et, continuatiōne[a] imbrium diutius [4]sub pellĭbus milĭtes continēri[h] non possent.[g] Ităque vastātis omnĭbus eōrum agris,[b] vicis ædificiisque incensis, Cæsar exercĭtum reduxit, et in Aulercis, Lexoviisque, relĭquis item civitatĭbus, [5]quæ proxĭmè bellum fecĕrant, in hibernis collocāvit.

[a] § 129, R.
[b] 109, 2.
[c] § 131, R. XLI.
[d] 17, 2.
[e] § 140, Obs. 4.
[f] 32, 3.
[g] § 140, 1, 1st.
[h] 87, 6.

BOOK IV.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I War with the Usipetes and Tenchtheri—Chap. 1–15. II. Cæsar's bridge over the Rhine, and his crossing into Germany—Chap. 16–19. III. Cæsar passes into Britain.—A battle—surrender of the Britains, and subsequent revolt.—Chap. 20–36. IV. War with the Morini and Menapii—Chap. 37–38.

1. [1] Ea, quæ secūta est, hiĕme,[a] qui fuit annus [2]Cneio Pompeio,[b] Marco Crasso consulĭbus, Usipĕtes Germāni, et item Tenchthĕri, magnâ cum multitudĭne homĭnum, flumen Rhenum transiērunt, non longè a mari, [3]quo Rhenus influit. Causa transeundi fuit, quòd, ab Suēvis complūres annos[c] exagitāti, bello premebantur et agricultūrâ[d] prohibebantur. Suevōrum gens est longè maxĭma et bellicosissĭma Germanōrum[e] omnium. Hi centum pagos habēre dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singŭla[f] millia armatōrum bellandi causâ ex finĭbus edūcunt. Relĭqui, [4]qui domi mansĕrint,[g] se atque illos alunt. Hi rursus invĭcem anno post in armis sunt; illi domi remānent. Sic neque agricultūra, [5]nec ratio atque usus belli, intermittĭtur. Sed privāti ac separāti agri apud eos nihil est; neque longiùs anno[h] remanēre uno in loco incolendi causâ licet. Neque multùm frumento,[i] sed [6]maxĭmam partem[k] lacte atque pecŏre[l] vivunt, multùmque sunt in venationĭbus; quæ res et cibi genĕre,[l] et quotidiānâ exercitatiōne, et libertāte vitæ (quòd, a puĕris [7]nullo officio[l] aut disciplīnâ assuefacti, nihil omnīno contra voluntātem faciant),[m] et vires alit, et immāni corpŏrum magnitudĭne[n] homines effĭcit. Atque in eam[o] se consuetudĭnem adduxērunt,

---

[a] § 131, R. XL.
[b] § 110, Obs. 1, & 2.
[c] § 131, R. XLI.
[d] § 136, Obs. 5, (*ab.*)
[e] § 106, Obs.3, (*gens*)
[f] 26, 1.
[g] § 141, R. III.
[h] § 120, R.
[i] § 121, Obs. 2.
[k] § 136, Obs. 5, (*Secundum.*)
[l] § 129, R.
[m] § 140, Obs. 2.
[n] § 106, R. VII. & 6, 1.
[o] § 31, Obs. 2, & 28. 1.

ut locis frigidissĭmis, neque vestītûs,[a] præter pelles, habeant[b] quicquam (quarum propter exiguitātem magna est corpŏris pars aperta),et laventur[b] in fluminĭbus.

2. Mercatorĭbus[c] est ad eos adĭtus magis eo, [1]ut, quæ bello cepĕrint,[d] quibus vendant,[e] habeant,[b] quàm quò ullam rem ad se importāri desidĕrent:[f] quinetiam [2]jumentis,[g] quibus[h] maxĭmè Gallia delectātur, quæque impenso parant pretio,[i] Germāni importātis non utuntur: sed quæ sunt apud eos nata, parva atque deformia, hæc [3]quotidiānâ exercitatiōne, summi ut sint[k] labōris,[l] efficiunt. Equestrĭbus prœliis sæpe ex equis desiliunt, ac pedĭbus[m] prœliantur; equosque eōdem remanēre vestigio[m] assuefaciunt; ad quos se celerĭter, cùm usus est, recipiunt: neque eōrum morĭbus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur, quàm ephippiis[g] uti. [4]Ităque ad quemvis numĕrum ephippiatōrum equĭtum, quamvis pauci, adīre audent. Vinum ad se omnīno importāri non sinunt, quòd eâ re ad labōrem ferendum remollescĕre homĭnes, atque effemināri, arbitrantur.

3. [5]Publĭcè maxĭmam putant esse laudem, quàm latissĭmè a suis finĭbus vacāre agros:[n] hâc re [6]significāri, magnum numĕrum[n] civitatium suam vim sustinēre non posse. Ităque, unâ ex parte, a Suēvis, circĭter millia passuum sexcenta agri [7]vacāre dicuntur. [8]Ad altĕram partem succēdunt Ubii (quorum fuit civĭtas ampla atque florens, [9]ut est captus Germanōrum), et paulo quàm sunt ejusdem genĕris cetĕri humaniōres; propterea quòd Rhenum attingunt, multùmque ad eos mercatōres ventĭtant, et ipsi propter propinquitātem Gallĭcis sunt morĭbus assuefacti. Hos cùm Suēvi, multis sæpe bellis experti, propter [10]amplitudĭnem gravitatemque civitātis, finĭbus[o] expellĕre non potuissent, tamen vectigāles sibi fecērunt, ac multo[p] humiliōres infirmioresque redegērunt.

[a] § 106, R. VIII.
[b] § 140, 1, 1st.
[c] § 112, R. II.
[d] § 141, Obs. 3.
[e] § 141.R.I. & Obs.1.
[f] § 140, 1.
[g] § 121, R. XXVI.
[h] § 121, Obs. 2.
[i] § 133, R.
[k] § 140, 1, 3d.
[l] § 106, R. VII.
[m] § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)
[n] § 115, R.
[o] § 136, R. LII.
[p] § 132, R. XLIII

4. [1]In eâdem causâ fuērunt Usipĕtes et Tenchthĕri, quos suprà dixĭmus, qui complūres annos[a] Suevōrum vim sustinuērunt; ad extrēmum[b] tamen, agris[c] expulsi, et multis Germaniæ locis[d] triennium[a] vagāti, ad Rhenum pervenērunt: [2]quas[e] regiōnes Menapii incolēbant, et ad utramque ripam flumĭnis agros, ædificia, vicosque habēbant; sed tantæ multitudĭnis adĭtu[f] perterrĭti, ex his ædificiis, quæ trans flumen habuĕrant, demigravĕrant, et, cis Rhenum disposĭtis præsidiis,[g] Germānos transīre prohibēbant. Illi, omnia experti, cùm neque vi[f] contendĕre propter inopiam navium, neque [3]clam transīre propter custodias Menapiōrum, possent,[h] reverti se in suas sedes regionesque simulavērunt; et, [4]tridui viam progressi, rursus revertērunt, atque, omni hoc itinĕre unâ nocte equitātu[i] confecto, inscios inopinantesque Menapios oppressērunt, qui, de Germanōrum discessu per exploratōres certiōres facti, sine metu trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigravĕrant. His[g] interfectis, navibusque eōrum occupātis,[g] priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum, quæ citra Rhenum quiēta in suis sedĭbus erat, certior fiĕret,[k] flumen transiērunt, atque, omnĭbus eōrum ædificiis[g] occupātis, [5]relĭquam partem[a] hiĕmis se eōrum copiis aluērunt.

5. His de rebus Cæsar certior factus, et [6]infirmitātem Gallōrum verĭtus,[l] quòd sunt in consiliis capiendis mobĭles, et novis plerumque rebus[m] student, [7]nihil his[n] committendum existimāvit. [8]Est autem hoc Gallĭcæ consuetudĭnis,[o] utì et viatōres, etiam invītos, consistĕre cogant,[p] et, quod quisque eōrum de quâque re audiĕrit[q] aut cognovĕrit, quærant;[p] et mercatōres in oppĭdis vulgus circumsistat,[p] quibusque ex regionĭbus veniant,[q] quasque ibi res cognovĕrint, pronunciāre cogant.[p] His rumorĭbus atque auditionĭbus per-

[a] § 131, R. XLI.
[b] 19, (*tempus*)
[c] § 136, R. LII.
[d] § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)
[e] 37, 2d, 4, Note 1.
[f] § 129, R.
[g] 109, 2.
[h] § 140, Obs. 4.
[i] § 136, Obs. 5, (*ab.*)
[k] § 140, 4.
[l] 106, 1.
[m] § 112, R. V.
[n] § 126, R. III
[o] § 108, R.
[p] § 145, Obs. 5.
[q] § 140, 5.

mōti, de [1] summis sæpe rebus consilia ineunt, quorum[a] eos [2] e vestigio pœnitēre necesse est, [3] cùm incertis rumorĭbus[b] serviant,[c] et plerīque ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.[c]

6. Quâ consuetudĭne cognĭtâ, Cæsar, [4] ne[d] graviōri bello[e] occurrĕret, maturiùs quàm consuêrat ad exercĭtum proficiscitur. Eò cùm venisset, ea, quæ fore suspicātus erat, [5] facta[f] cognōvit; missas[f] legatiōnes a nonnullis civitatĭbus ad Germānos, invitatosque[f] eos, utì ab Rheno discedĕrent;[g] omniăque quæ postulâssent,[h] ab se fore parāta. Quâ[i] spe adducti Germāni latiùs jam vagabantur, et in fines Eburōnum et Condrusōrum, qui sunt Trevirōrum clientes, pervenĕrant. Principĭbus Galliæ evocātis, Cæsar ea quæ cognovĕrat [6] dissimulanda[k] sibi[l] existimāvit, eorumque anĭmis permulsis et confirmātis, equitatūque imperāto, bellum cum Germānis gerĕre constituit.

7. Re[m] frumentariâ comparātâ, equitibusque delectis, iter in ea loca facĕre cœpit, quibus[n] in locis esse Germānos audiēbat. A quibus cùm paucōrum diērum iter[o] abesset, legāti ab his venērunt, quorum hæc fuit oratio: "Germānos[p] neque priōres[q] Popŭlo Romāno bellum inferre, neque tamen recusāre,[r] si lacessantur, quin armis contendant;[s] quòd Germanōrum consuetūdo hæc sit[t] a majorĭbus tradĭta, quicumque bellum infĕrant,[h] [7] resistĕre, neque deprecāri: hæc tamen dicĕre, venisse[f] invītos,[q] ejectos domo.[u] Si [8] suam gratiam Romāni velint, posse eis utĭles esse amīcos: vel sibi agros attribuant, vel patiantur [9] eos tenēre quos armis possedĕrint.[v] Sese unis Suēvis [10] concedĕre, quibus ne Dii quidem immortāles pares esse possint: relĭquum quidem [11] in terris esse nemĭnem, quem non superāre possint."

[a] § 113, Ex. II.
[b] § 112, R. V.
[c] § 140, Obs. 3.
[d] § 140, 1, 2d.
[e] § 112, R. IV
[f] 98, 2.
[g] § 140, 1. 3d.
[h] § 141, Obs. 8.
[i] 38.
[k] 108, 4.
[l] § 126, Obs. 3.
[m] 109, 2.
[n] 37, 6, Note. 1.
[o] 132, R. XLII.
[p] § 145, R. LVIII.
[q] § 98, Obs. 10.
[r] 94, 3.
[s] § 140, 3.
[t] § 140, 6.
[u] § 136, R. LII.
[v] § 141, Obs. 3.

8. [1] Ad hæc Cæsar, quæ visum est, respondit; sed [2] exĭtus fuit oratiōnis: "Sibi [a] nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse, si in Galliâ remanērent: neque [3] verum esse, qui [b] suos fines tuēri non potuĕrint,[c] aliēnos occupāre: [4] neque ullos in Galliâ vacāre agros qui dari, tantæ præsertim multitudĭni,[d] sine injuriâ possint.[e] Sed licēre, si velint, in Ubiōrum finĭbus considĕre, quorum sint [f] legāti apud se, et de Suevōrum injuriis querantur,[f] et a se auxilium petant: hoc se ab iis impetratūrum."[g]

9. Legāti hæc se ad suos relatūros [g] dixērunt, et, re deliberātâ, post diem tertium ad Cæsărem reversūros: interea ne propiùs se [h] castra movēret,[i] petiērunt. Ne id quidem [k] Cæsar ab se impetrāri posse dixit: cognovĕrat enim, magnam partem equitātûs ab iis aliquot diēbus [l] ante prædandi frumentandīque causâ ad Ambivarĕtos trans Mosam missam. Hos [m] expectāri equĭtes, atque ejus rei causâ moram [m] interpōni, arbitrabātur.

10. Mosa profluit ex monte Vosĕgo, qui est in finĭbus Lingŏnum, [5] et, parte quâdam ex Rheno receptâ, quæ appellātur Vahălis,[n] insŭlam effĭcit Batavōrum, neque longiùs ab eo milĭbus [o] passuum octoginta in Oceănum transit. Rhenus autem orĭtur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpes incŏlunt, et longo spatio [p] per fines Nantuatium, Helvetiōrum, Sequanōrum, Mediomatricōrum, Tribocōrum, Trevirōrum citātus [q] fertur;[r] et, ubi Oceăno [s] appropinquat, [6] in plures diffluit partes, multis ingentibusque insŭlis effectis, quarum pars magna a feris barbarisque nationĭbus incolĭtur [t] (ex quibus sunt, qui piscĭbus [u] atque ovis avium vivĕre existimantur), [7] multisque capitĭbus in Oceănum influit.

---

[a] § 112, R. II.
[b] 37, (*eos.*)
[c] § 141, Obs. 3.
[d] § 126, R. III.
[e] § 141, R. I. & Obs. 1.
[f] § 141. Obs. 7.
[g] 100, 2.
[h] § 136, Obs. 5, (*ad.*)
[i] § 140, 1, 3d.
[k] 121, Note. 2.
[l] § 131, R. XLI.
[m] § 145, R.
[n] § 103, R.
[o] § 120, R. XXIV.
[p] § 132, R. XLII.
[q] § 98, Obs. 10.
[r] 116, 3.
[s] § 112, R. IV.
[t] § 102, R. II.
[u] § 121, Obs. 2.

11. Cæsar cùm ab hoste non ampliùs passuum duoděcim millĭbus abesset, ut erat constitūtum, ad eum legāti revertuntur: qui,[a] in itiněre congressi, magnopěre, ne longiùs progrederētur,[b] orābant. Cùm id non impetrâssent,[c] petebant, utì ad eos equĭtes, qui agmen antecessissent, præmittěret,[b] eosque pugnâ[d] prohibēret; sibique utì potestātem facěret, in Ubios legātos mittendi: quorum[e] si Princĭpes ac Senātus [1] sibi jurejurando[f] fidem fecissent, eâ conditiōne,[g] quæ a Cæsăre ferrētur, se usūros ostendēbant: ad has res conficiendas sibi tridui spatium daret.[b] Hæc omnia Cæsar [2] eōdem illo pertinēre[h] arbitrābatur, ut, tridui morâ interposĭtâ, equĭtes eōrum, qui abessent,[i] reverterentur:[k] tamen sese non longiùs millĭbus passuum quatuor aquatiōnis causâ processūrum eo die dixit: huc postěro die[l] quàm frequentissĭmi convenīrent,[b] ut de eōrum postulātis cognoscěret.[k] Intěrim ad præfectos, qui cum omni equitātu antecessěrant, mittit, qui[m] nunciārent, ne hostes prœlio lacessěrent,[b] et, si ipsi lacesserentur, [3] sustinērent, quoad ipse cum exercĭtu propiùs accessisset.[n]

12. At hostes, ubi primùm nostros equĭtes conspexērunt, quorum erat quinque millium numěrus, cùm ipsi non ampliùs[o] octingentos equĭtes habērent, quòd ii, qui frumentandi causâ iěrant trans Mosam, nondum rediěrant, nihil timentĭbus nostris,[p] quòd legāti eōrum paulo antè a Cæsăre discessěrant, atque is dies induciis[q] erat ab eis petītus, impětu facto, celerĭter nostros perturbavērunt. Rursus resistentĭbus nostris,[p] consuetudĭne suâ[f] ad pedes desiluērunt, subfossisque equis, compluribusque nostris dejectis, relĭquos in fugam conjecērunt, atque ita perterrĭtos egērunt, ut non priùs fugâ[r] desistěrent,[s] quàm in conspectu agmĭnis nostri venissent.

---

[a] 39, 5.
[b] § 140, 1, 3d.
[c] § 140, Obs. 4.
[d] § 136, Obs. 5, (*ab.*)
[e] 39.
[f] § 129. R.
[g] § 121, R. XXVI.
[h] 96, 2.
[i] § 141, Obs. 3.
[k] § 140, 1, 2d.
[l] § 131, R. XL.
[m] § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.
[n] § 140. 4.
[o] § 120, Obs. 3
[p] 109, 1.
[q] § 114, R. & Obs. 4
[r] § 136, Obs. 5, (*ex.*)
[s] § 140, 1, 1st.

In eo prœlio ex equitĭbus[a] nostris interficiuntur quatuor et septuaginta, in his vir fortissĭmus, Piso, Aquitānus, [1]amplissĭmo genĕre[b] natus, cujus avus in civitāte suâ regnum obtinuĕrat, amīcus[c] ab Senātu nostro appellātus. Hic cùm fratri[d] [2]interclūso ab hostĭbus auxilium ferret,[e] illum ex perīcŭlo[f] eripuit: ipse, equo vulnerāto dejectus, quoad potuit, fortissĭmè restĭtit. Cùm circumventus, multis vulnerĭbus acceptis, cecidisset,[e] atque id frater, qui jam prœlio[g] excessĕrat, procul animadvertisset, incitāto equo [3]se hostĭbus[d] obtŭlit atque interfectus est.

13. Hoc facto prœlio, Cæsar neque jam sibi[h] legātos[i] audiendos,[k] neque conditiōnes accipiendas[k] arbitrabātur ab his, qui per dolum atque insidias, petītâ pace, ultro bellum intulissent:[l] expectāre[m] verò, dum hostium copiæ augerentur,[n] equitatusque reverterētur, [4]summæ dementiæ[o] esse[p] judicābat; et, cognĭtâ Gallōrum infirmitāte, quantum jam apud eos hostes uno prœlio auctoritātis[q] essent consecūti, sentiēbat: quibus[r] ad consilia capienda nihil[l] spatii dandum existimābat. His constitūtis rebus, et consilio cum legātis et quæstōre communicāto, [5]ne quem diem pugnæ prætermittĕret, opportunissĭma res accĭdit, quòd postridie ejus diēi[s] mane, eâdem et perfidiâ et simulatiōne usi Germāni, frequentes, [6]omnĭbus principĭbus majoribusque natu adhibĭtis, ad eum in castra venērunt; simul, ut dicebātur, [7]sui purgandi causâ, quòd [8]contrà atque esset dictum, et ipsi petissent, prœlium pridie commisissent; simul ut, si quid possent, de induciis fallendo impetrārent. [9]Quos[i] sibi Cæsar oblātos gavīsus, illĭco retinēri jussit; ipse omnes copias castris eduxit, equitatumque, quòd recenti prœlio perterrĭtum esse existimābat, agmen subsĕqui jussit.

---

[a] § 107, Obs. 8.
[b] § 119, R. & 6, 5.
[c] § 103, R.
[d] § 123, R.
[e] § 140, Obs. 4.
[f] § 123, Obs. 1.
[g] § 136, R. LII.
[h] § 126, Obs. 3.
[i] § 145, R. (*esse.*)
[k] 108, 4.
[l] § 141, Obs. 8.
[m] § 144, R. LVI.
[n] § 140, 4.
[o] § 108, R.
[p] 94, 3.
[q] § 106, R. VIII.
[r] 39, & § 126, R III.
[s] § 135, XLVI.

14. Acie triplĭci institūtâ, et celerĭter octo millium[a] itinĕre confecto, priùs ad hostium castra pervēnit, quàm, quid agerētur, [b] Germāni sentīre possent.[c] Qui,[d] omnĭbus rebus subĭto perterrĭti, et celeritāte adventûs nostri, et discessu suōrum, neque consilii habendi[e] neque arma capiendi[f] spatio dato, [1] perturbantur, copiasne adversus hostem educĕre, an castra defendĕre, an fugâ salūtem petĕre, præstāret.[b] Quorum[g] timor cùm fremĭtu et concursu [2] significarētur, milĭtes nostri, [3] pristĭni diēi perfidiâ incitāti, in castra irrupērunt. Quorum[h] qui[i] celerĭter arma capĕre potuērunt, paulisper nostris restitērunt, atque inter carros impedimentăque prœlium commisērunt: at relĭqua multitūdo puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnĭbus suis domo excessĕrant Rhenumque transiĕrant), passim fugĕre cœpit; ad quos[g] consectandos Cæsar equitātum misit.

15. Germāni, post tergum [4] clamōre audīto, cùm suos[k] interfĭci vidērent, armis abjectis, signisque militarĭbus relictis, se ex castris ejecērunt: et, cùm [5] ad confluentem Mosæ et Rheni pervenissent, [6] relĭquâ fugâ desperātâ, magno numĕro interfecto, relĭqui se in flumen præcipitavērunt, atque ibi timōre,[l] lassitudĭne,[l] vi flumĭnis oppressi, periērunt. Nostri ad unum[m] omnes incolŭmes, perpaucis vulnerātis, [7] ex tanti belli timōre, cùm hostium numĕrus capĭtum quadringentōrum et triginta millium fuisset, se in castra recepērunt. Cæsar his,[n] quos in castris retinuĕrat, [8] discedendi potestātem fecit: illi supplicia cruciatusque Gallōrum verĭti,[o] quorum agros vexavĕrant, remanēre se apud eum velle dixērunt. His[n] Cæsar libertātem concessit.

16. Germanĭco bello confecto, multis de causis Cæsar statuit, sibi Rhenum esse transeundum: quarum[p] illa fuit justissĭma, quòd, cùm vidēret, Germānos tam facĭlè impelli,

a § 106, R. VII.
b § 140, 5.
c § 140, 4.
d 39, 5.
e 112, 5.
f 112, 1.
g 39.
h 39, & § 107, R. X.
i 37, (*ii*,)
k 19, 2, & § 145, R.
l § 129, R.
m 19, (*homĭnem.*)
n § 123, R.
o 106, 1.
p 38, & § 107, R. X.

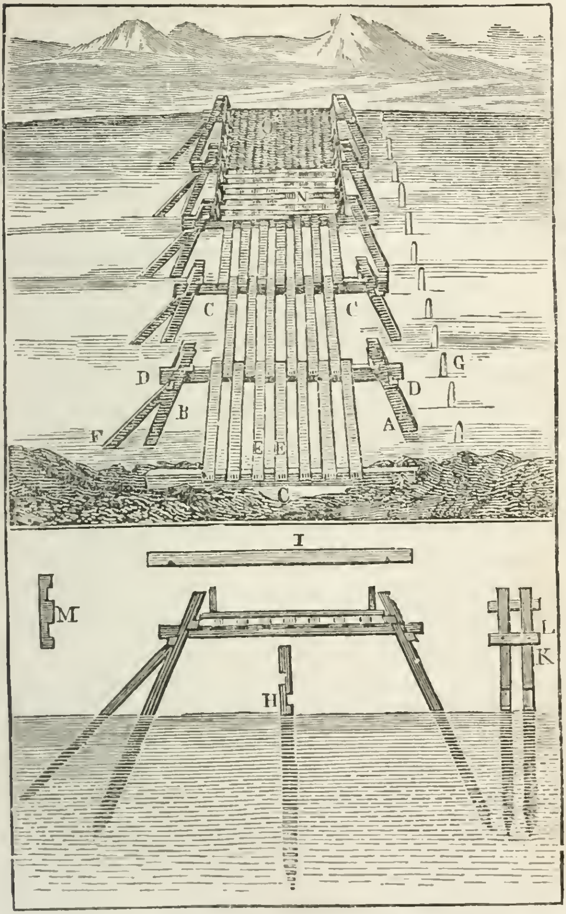
ut in Galliam venīrent,[a] [1]suis quoque rebus[b] eos timēre voluit, cùm intelligĕrent, [2]et posse et audēre Popŭli Romāni exercĭtum Rhenum transīre. [3]Accessit etiam, quòd illa pars equitātûs Usipĕtum et Tenchtherōrum, quam suprà commemorāvi, prædandi[c] frumentandīque causâ Mosam transîsse, neque prœlio[d] interfuisse, post fugam suōrum se trans Rhenum in fines Sigambrōrum recepĕrat seque cum iis conjunxĕrat. Ad quos[e] cùm Cæsar nuncios misisset, qui[f] postulārent, eos, qui sibi[g] Galliæque bellum intulissent, sibi[g] dedĕrent,[h] respondērunt: "Popŭli Romāni imperium Rhenum[i] finīre: si, se invīto Germānos in Galliam transīre non æquum existimāret, [4]cur sui[k] quicquam[l] esse imperii[l] aut potestātis trans Rhenum postulāret?"[m] Ubii autem, qui uni ex Transrhenānis ad Cæsărem legātos misĕrant, amicitiam fecĕrant, obsĭdes dedĕrant, magnopĕre orābant, "ut sibi[g] auxilium ferret,[h] quòd gravĭter ab Suēvis premerentur;[n] vel, si id facĕre [5]occupationĭbus reipublĭcæ prohiberētur, exercĭtum modò Rhenum transportāret:[h] id[l] sibi[d] ad auxilium spemque relĭqui tempŏris satis futūrum: tantum esse nomen atque opiniōnem ejus exercĭtûs, Ariovisto pulso, et hoc novissĭmo prœlio facto, etiam ad ultĭmas Germanōrum natiōnes, utì opiniōne[o] et amicitiâ Popŭli Romāni tuti[p] esse possint."[a] Navium magnam copiam ad transportandum exercĭtum pollicebantur.

17. Cæsar his de causis, quas commemorāvi, Rhenum transīre decrevĕrat; sed navĭbus transīre, neque satis tutum esse[q] arbitrabātur, [6]neque suæ[r] neque Popŭli Romāni dignitātis[k] esse statuēbat. Ităque, etsi summa difficultas faciendi pontis [7]proponebātur, propter latitudĭnem, rapiditātem, altitudinemque flumĭnis, tamen id[l] sibi[s] contendendum, aut

[a] § 140, 1, 1st.	[g] § 123, R.	[n] § 141, Obs. 7.
[b] § 112 R. XVII.	[h] § 140,1,3d, & Obs.5.	[o] § 129, R.
[c] 112, 1.	[i] § 145, R.	[p] § 103, Obs. 6.
[d] § 112, R. I.	[k] § 108, R. XII.	[q] 51, 5.
[e] 39, 9.	[l] § 106, R. VIII.	[r] 29, 1.
[f] § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.	[m] § 140, 6.	[s] 113, & § 147

PLAN OF THE BRIDGE MADE OVER THE RHINE BY CÆSAR,

IN TEN DAYS.



A. *Tigna bina sesquipedalia:* Two piles each a foot and a half thick, joined together at the distance of two feet. H. One of the piles detached. K. Form of the two piles braced together. B. Two opposite piles similarly joined together, and at the distance of forty feet down the river from the other. C. *Trabs bipedalis:* Large beam two feet square, extending from the upper to the lower piles. I. The same beam detached. D. *Fibulæ binæ:* Two braces fastening each pair of piles together, as seen at L., one on each side, (*utrimque*)—the one below, supporting the beam, (*trabs*,) the other above it. M. Form of the brace detached. E E. *Materies:* Timbers laid from beam to beam, (*directa*,) lengthwise of the bridge. N. *Longurii:* Spars laid across the timbers. O. *Crates:* Hurdles laid over the spars. F. *Sublicæ:* Stakes sunk in the river as buttresses, and fastened (*conjunctæ*,) to each lower pair of piles. G. *Aliæ sublicæ:* Other stakes driven in above the bridge, and separate from it, as a fence against trunks of trees &c. sent down the river.

alĭter non transducendum exercĭtum, existimābat. [1]Ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit. [2]Tigna bina[a] sesquipedalia, paulum ab imo præacūta, dimensa ad altitudĭnem flumĭnis, intervallo[b] pedum duōrum inter se jungēbat. [3]Hæc cùm[c] machinationĭbus[d] immissa in flumen defixĕrat, fistucisque[d] adegĕrat, [4]non sublĭcæ modo[d] directa[e] ad perpendicŭlum, sed prona[e] ac fastigāta, ut secundum natūram flumĭnis procumbĕrent; [f] [5]iis[g] item contraria bina,[a] ad eundem modum juncta, intervallo[b] pedum quadragēnûm, ab inferiōre parte, contra vim atque impĕtum flumĭnis conversa statuēbat. [6]Hæc utrăque insŭper bipedalĭbus trabĭbus[d] immissis quantum[i] eōrum tignōrum junctūra distābat, binis utrimque fibŭlis[k] ab extrēmâ parte, distinebantur: [7]quibus[l] disclūsis atque in contrariam partem revinctis, tanta erat opĕris firmitūdo, atque [8]ea[m] rerum natūra, ut, [9]quo[n] major vis aquæ se incitavisset,[o] hoc[n] arctiùs illigāta tenerentur.[p] [10]Hæc directâ materie[q] injectâ contexebantur, et [11]longuriis[q] cratibusque consternebantur: [12]ac nihĭlo secius sublĭcæ et ad inferiōrem partem flumĭnis oblīquè agebantur, quæ,[r] [13]pro pariĕte subjectæ, et cum omni opĕre conjunctæ, vim flumĭnis excipĕrent: [r] [14]et aliæ item supra pontem mediōcri spatio,[h] ut, si arbŏrum trunci, sive naves [15]dejiciendi opĕris essent[t] a barbăris missæ, his defensorĭbus[d] eārum rerum vis minuerētur,[f] neu ponti[u] nocērent.

18. Diēbus[v] decem, [16]quibus materia cœpta erat comportāri, omni opĕre effecto, exercĭtus transducĭtur. Cæsar, [17]ad utramque partem pontis firmo præsidio[h] relicto, in fines Sigambrōrum contendit. Intĕrim a complurĭbus civitatĭbus ad eum legāti veniunt,[w] quibus[x] pacem atque amicitiam pe-

[a] 26, 3.
[b] § 132, R. XLII.
[c] § 140, Obs. 3.
[d] § 129, R.
[e] § 98, Obs. 10.
[f] § 140, 1, 2d.
[g] § 111, R
[h] 109, 2.
[i] 46, (*tantum.*) &[b]
[k] 110.
[l] § 38, & 109, 2.
[m] 124, 17, & 28.
[n] § 132, Obs. 6, & 22, 4. Obs.
[o] § 141, Obs. 8.
[p] § 140, 1, 1st.
[q] § 126, R. V.
[r] § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.
[s] 19, (*sublĭcæ.*)
[t] 81, 2, & 140, 2.
[u] § 112, R. V.
[v] § 131, R. XLI.
[w] § 44, I. 3.
[x] § 112, R. XVII.

tentibus liberalĭter respondit, obsidesque ad se addūci[a] jubet, At Sigambri, ex eo tempŏre quo[b] pons institui cœptus est, fugâ comparātâ, 1 hortantĭbus iis[c] quos ex Tenchthĕris atque Usipetĭbus apud se habēbant, finĭbus[d] suis excessĕrant, suăque omnia exportavĕrant, seque 2 in solitudĭnem ac silvas abdidĕrant.

19. Cæsar, paucos dies[e] in eōrum finĭbus morātus, omnĭbus vicis ædificiisque incensis,[f] frumentisque succīsis,[f] se in fines Ubiōrum recēpit; atque iis auxilium suum pollicĭtus, si ab Suēvis premerentur,[g] hæc ab iis cognōvit: Suēvos, posteăquam per exploratōres pontem fiĕri comperissent,[h] more[i] suo concilio habĭto, nuncios in omnes partes dimisisse, utì de oppĭdis demigrārent,[k] libĕros, uxōres, suăque omnia in silvas deponĕrent,[k] atque omnes qui arma ferre possent[l] unum in locum convenīrent:[k] 3 hunc esse delectum medium[m] ferè regiōnum eārum quas Suēvi obtinērent:[n] hìc Romanōrum adventum expectāre atque ibi decertāre constituisse.[o] Quod[p] ubi Cæsar compĕrit, omnĭbus his rebus confectis, quarum rerum causâ transducĕre exercĭtum constituĕrat, ut Germānis metum injicĕret,[k] ut Sigambros 4 ulciscerētur,[k] ut Ubios obsidiōne liberāret,[k] diēbus[f] omnīno decem et octo trans Rhenum consumtis, 5 satis et ad laudem et ad utilitātem profectum[o] arbitrātus, se in Galliam recēpit, pontemque rescĭdit.

20. Exiguâ parte æstātis reliquâ, Cæsar, etsi in his locis, quòd omnis Gallia ad septentriōnes vergit, 6 matūræ sunt hiĕmes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quòd, omnĭbus fere Gallĭcis bellis,[q] hostĭbus nostris[r] 7 inde subministrāta auxilia intelligēbat: et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficĕret,[s] tamen magno sibi[s] usui fore arbitrabātur, si modò insŭlam adîsset, genus homĭnum perspexisset, loca,

[a] 90, 4.
[b] § 131, R. XL.
[c] 109, 1.
[d] § 136, R. LII.
[e] § 131, R. XLI.
[f] 104 1.
[g] § 140, 2.
[h] § 140, 4.
[i] § 129, R.
[k] § 140, 1, 2d.
[l] § 141, Obs. 3.
[m] § 97, R. Exp.
[n] § 140, 6.
[o] 98, 2.
[p] 38, 4.
[q] § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)
[r] § 126, R. III.
[s] § 114, R.

portus, adĭtus cognovisset: quæ omnia ferè Gallis erant incognĭta. Neque enim [1]temĕre præter mercatōres illò adit quisquam, [2]neque iis ipsis[a] quicquam, præter oram marĭtĭmam atque eas regiōnes quæ sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Ităque, evocātis ad se undĭque mercatorĭbus, neque quanta esset[b] insŭlæ magnitūdo, neque quæ[c] aut quantæ[c] natiōnes incolĕrent,[b] neque [3]quem[c] usum belli habērent,[b] aut quibus[c] institūtis uterentur, neque qui essent ad majōrum navium multitudĭnem idonei[d] portus, reperīre potĕrat.

21. Ad hæc cognoscenda, priusquàm pericŭlum facĕret, idoneum esse arbitrātus[e] Caium Volusēnum, cum navi longâ præmittit. Huic[f] mandat, utì, explorātis omnĭbus rebus, ad se quamprīmùm revertātur:[g] ipse cum omnĭbus copiis in Morĭnos proficiscĭtur, quòd inde erat brevissĭmus in Britanniam transjectus. Huc naves undĭque ex finitĭmis regionĭbus et, quam[h] superiōre æstāte ad Venetĭcum bellum fecĕrat, classem jubet convenīre.[i] Intĕrim, consilio ejus cognĭto et per mercatōres perlāto ad Britannos, a complurĭbus ejus insŭlæ civitatĭbus ad eum legāti veniunt, qui polliceantur[k] obsĭdes dare, atque imperio[l] Popŭli Romāni obtemperāre. Quibus[m] audĭtis, liberalĭter pollicĭtus, hortatusque ut [4]in eâ sententiâ permanērent,[g] eos domum[n] remittit, et cum his unà Commium, quem ipse, Atrebatĭbus superātis, regem ibi constituĕrat, cujus et virtūtem et consilium probābat, et quem sibi fidēlem arbitrabātur, cujusque auctorĭtas in iis regionĭbus magni[o] habebātur, mittit. Huic impĕrat, quas possit adeat[b] civitātes, [5]horteturque[g] ut Popŭli Romāni [6]fidem sequantur;[g] seque celerĭter eò ventūrum nunciet.[g] Volusēnus, perspectis regionĭbus, [7]quantum ei facultātis dari potuit, [8]qui navi egrĕdi ac se barbăris committĕre non audēret,[p] quinto die ad Cæsărem revertĭtur; quæque ibi perspexisset renunciat.

---

[a] § 126, R XXXIII.
[b] § 140, 5.
[c] 48, & § 34, Obs. 1.
[d] § 103, Obs. 2.
[e] 106, 1.
[f] 63, & § 123, Obs. 2.
[g] § 140, 1, 3d.
[h] 43.
[i] 90, 4.
[k] § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.
[l] § 112, R. V.
[m] 38, & 109, 2.
[n] § 130, 4.
[o] § 126, R. II.
[p] § 141, R. III.

22. Dum in his locis Cæsar navium parandārum[a] causâ morātur, ex magnâ parte Morinōrum ad eum legāti venērunt, qui[b] se [1] de superiōris tempŏris consilio excusārent,[b] quòd homĭnes barbări, et nostræ consuetudĭnis[c] imperīti, bellum Popŭlo Romāno fecissent,[d] seque ea, quæ imperâsset,[e] factūros pollicerentur.[b] Hoc sibi[f] satis opportūnè Cæsar accidisse arbitrātus, quòd neque post tergum hostem relinquĕre volēbat, neque belli gerendi,[a] propter anni tempus, facultātem habēbat, neque [2]has tantulārum rerum occupatiōnes[g] sibi[h] Britanniæ[i] anteponendas judicābat, magnum his[k] obsĭdum numĕrum impĕrat. Quibus adductis, eos in fidem recēpit. [3]Navĭbus circĭter octoginta onerariis coactis contractisque, quot[l] satis esse ad duas transportandas legiōnes existimābat, quicquid præterea navium[m] longārum habēbat, quæstōri, legātis, præfectisque distribuit. Huc accedēbant octodĕcim onerariæ naves, quæ ex eo loco ab[n] millĭbus passuum octo vento tenebantur, quo minùs in eundem portum pervenīre possent.[o] Has equitĭbus distribuit; relĭquum exercĭtum Quinto Titurio Sabīno et Lucio Aurunculeïo Cottæ, legātis, in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinōrum, ab quibus ad eum legāti non venērant, deducendum[p] dedit. Publium Sulpitium Rufum, legātum, cum eo præsidio quod satis esse arbitrabātur, portum tenēre jussit.

23. His constitūtis rebus, nactus idoneam ad navigandum[q] tempestātem, [4] tertiâ ferè vigiliâ [5]solvit, equitesque in ulteriōrem portum progrĕdi,[r] [6] et naves conscendĕre,[r] et se sequi[r] jussit: a quibus[s] cùm id paulo tardiùs esset administrātum, ipse [7]horâ diēi circĭter quartâ cum primis navĭbus Britanniam attĭgit, atque ibi in omnĭbus collĭbus [8] exposĭtas hostium

[a] 112, 5.
[b] § 141, Obs. 2, 4.
[c] § 107, R. IX.
[d] § 141, Obs. 7.
[e] § 141, Obs. 3.
[f] § 112, R. IV.
[g] § 145, R.
[h] § 126, Obs. 3.
[i] § 126, R. III.
[k] § 123, R. & 5, 1.
[l] 46, 2.
[m] § 106, R. VIII. & Obs 10.
[n] § 132, Obs. 5.
[o] § 140, 1.
[p] 107, 1.
[q] 112, 3.
[r] 90, 1.
[s] 38.

copias armātas conspexit. Cujus loci hæc erat natūra : [1] adeo montĭbus angustis mare continebātur, utì ex locis superiorĭbus in littus telum adjĭci[a] posset. Hunc [2] ad egrediendum nequāquam idoneum arbitrātus locum, dum relĭquæ naves eò convenīrent,[b] [3] ad horam nōnam in anchŏris expectāvit. Intĕrim legātis[c] tribunisque milĭtum convocātis, et quæ ex Voluseno cognôsset,[d] et quæ fiĕri vellet,[d] ostendit, [4] monuitque (ut rei militāris ratio, maxĭmè ut maritĭmæ res postulārent,[e] ut quæ celĕrem atque instabĭlem motum habērent), ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur.[f] His[c] dimissis, et ventum et æstum uno tempŏre nactus secundum, dato signo,[c] et sublātis anchŏris,[c] circĭter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus, aperto ac plano littŏre[g] naves constituit.

24. At barbări, consilio[c] Romanōrum cognĭto, præmisso[h] equitātu, [5] et essedariis, quo plerumque genĕre[i] in prœliis uti consuêrunt, relĭquis copiis subsecūti, nostros navĭbus[k] egrĕdi [6] prohibēbant. Erat ob has causas summa difficultas, quòd naves, propter magnitudĭnem, nisi in alto, constitui[a] non potĕrant; [7] militĭbus[l] autem, ignōtis locis,[c] impedītis manĭbus,[c] magno et gravi armōrum onĕre oppressis, simul et de navĭbus desiliendum,[l] et in fluctĭbus consistendum,[l] et cum hostĭbus erat pugnandum : [l] cùm illi aut ex arĭdo, aut paulŭlùm in aquam progressi, [8] omnĭbus membris[m] expedīti, notissĭmis locis,[g] audacter tela conjicĕrent,[n] et equos [9] insuefactos incitārent.[n] Quibus rebus nostri perterrĭti, atque hujus omnīno genĕris[o] pugnæ imperīti, non eâdem alacritāte[i] ac studio quo[i] in pedestrĭbus uti prœliis consuevĕrant, utebantur.

25. Quod ubi Cæsar anĭmum advertit, naves longas, [10] quarum et species erat barbăris[p] inusitatior, et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removēri ab onerariis navĭbus, et

---

[a] 87, 1.
[b] § 140, 4.
[c] 109, 2.
[d] § 140, 5.
[e] § 141, Obs. 7.
[f] § 140, 1; 3d. Obs. 5.
[g] § 136, Obs. 5, (*in*.)
[h] § 98, Obs. 4. & 109. 2.
[i] § 121, R. XXVI.
[k] § 136, R. LII.
[l] § 147; & 113, 2.
[m] § 128, R.
[n] § 140, Obs. 4.
[o] § 107, R. IX
[p] § 111, R.

remis incitāri,[a] et ad latus apertum hostium constitui,[a] atque inde fundis, sagittis, [2] tormentis, hostes propelli[a] ac submovēri jussit: [3] quæ res magno usui[b] nostris fuit. Nam, et navium figūrâ, et remōrum motu, et inusitāto genĕre tormentōrum permōti, barbări constitĕrunt, [4] ac paulum modò pedem retulērunt. Atque, nostris militĭbus[c] cunctantĭbus, maxĭmè propter altitudĭnem maris, [5] qui[d] decĭmæ legiōnis aquĭlam ferēbat, contestātus[e] Deos, ut [6] ea res legiōni[f] felicĭter evenīret: "Desilīte," inquit, "commilitōnes, nisi vultis aquĭlam hostĭbus prodĕre: ego certè meum reipublĭcæ atque imperatōri officium præstitĕro." Hoc cùm [7] magnâ voce dixisset, [8] ex navi se projēcit, atque in hostes aquĭlam ferre cœpit. Tum nostri, cohortāti inter se,[g] ne[h] tantum dedĕcus admitterētur, universi ex navi desiluērunt: hos item ex proxĭmis navĭbus cùm conspexissent, subsecūti hostĭbus[i] appropinquârunt.

26. Pugnātum est ab utrisque acrĭter; nostri tamen, quòd neque ordĭnes servāre,[k] neque firmĭter insistĕre,[k] neque signa subsĕqui[k] potĕrant, atque alius aliâ[l] ex navi, quibuscumque[m] signis occurrĕrat, se aggregābat, magno opĕre perturbabantur. Hostes verò, notis omnĭbus vadis, ubi ex littŏre alĭquos [9] singulāres ex navi egredientes conspexĕrant, incitātis equis impedītos adoriebantur: plures paucos[n] circumsistēbant: alii ab latĕre aperto in universos tela conjiciēbant. [10] Quod[o] cùm anĭmum advertisset Cæsar, [11] scaphas longārum navium, item [12] speculatoria navigia militĭbus complēri[a] jussit, et, quos[p] laborantes conspexĕrat, iis subsidia submittēbat. Nostri, simul[q] in arĭdo constitērunt, suis omnĭbus consecūtis, in hostes impĕtum fecērunt, atque eos in fugam dedērunt, neque longiùs prosĕqui[k] potuērunt, quòd

---

a 90, 4.
b § 114, R.
c 109, 1.
d 37, 3.
e 105, 2.
f § 112, R. XVII
g § 28, Obs. 5.
h § 140, 1, 3d, & 121.
i § 112, R. IV
k 87, 7.
l § 98, Obs. 11, & 25, 1.
m 37, 7, Note. 2, & § 99, Obs. 7.
n § 136, R. LII.
o § 38, 7.
p 43.
q 124, 18, (Sup. *ac.*)

equĭtes [1] cursum tenēre atque insŭlam capĕre non potuĕrant. Hoc unum ad pristĭnam fortūnam Cæsări defuit.

27. Hostes prœlio superāti, simul[a] atque se ex fugâ recepērunt, statim ad Cæsărem legātos de pace misērunt: obsĭdes datūros, quæque imperâsset[b] sese factūros, pollicĭti sunt. Unà cum his legātis Commius Atrĕbas venit, quem[c] [2] suprà demonstravĕram a Cæsăre in Britanniam præmissum.[d] Hunc illi e navi egressum, cùm ad eos [3] oratōris modo imperatōris mandāta perferret, comprehendĕrant, atque in vincŭla conjecĕrant: tum, prœlio facto, remisērunt et in petendâ[e] pace ejus rei [4] culpam in multitudĭnem contulērunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignoscerētur, petivērunt. Cæsar questus, quòd, cùm ultro [5] in continentem legātis missis pacem ab se petîssent,[f] bellum sine causâ intulissent,[g] ignoscĕre [6] imprudentiæ[h] dixit, obsidesque imperāvit: quorum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem, ex longinquiorĭbus locis [7] arcessītam, paucis diēbus[i] sese datūros dixērunt. Interea suos remigrāre in agros jussērunt, principesque undĭque convenīre, et se civitatesque suas Cæsări commendāre cœpērunt.

28. His rebus pace confirmātâ, [8] post diem quartum, quàm est in Britanniam ventum,[k] naves octodĕcim, de quibus [9] suprà demonstrātum est, quæ equĭtes sustulĕrant, ex superiōre portu leni vento solvērunt. [10] Quæ[l] cùm appropinquārent Britanniæ, et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subĭtò coorta est, ut nulla eārum[m] cursum tenēre posset,[n] sed aliæ eòdem, unde erant profectæ, referrentur; aliæ ad inferiōrem partem insŭlæ, [11] quæ est propiùs solis occāsum,[o] magno sui cum pericŭlo dejicerentur: [12] quæ[p] tamen, anchŏris jactis, cùm fluctĭbus complerentur,[f] [13] necessariò adversâ nocte in altum provectæ, continentem petiērunt.

---

a 124, 18.
b 80, 1.
c § 145, R. & 91, 4.
d 98, 2.
e § 147, R. LXII.
f § 140, Obs. 4.
g § 141, Obs. 7.
h § 112, R. V.
i § 131, R. XLI.
k 67, 5, Note.
l 39, 6, or 1.
m § 107, R. X.
n § 140, 1, 1st.
o § 136, Obs. 5, *(aa.)*
p § 38.

29. Eâdem nocte accĭdit, ut esset[a] luna plena, [1]qui[b] dies maritĭmos æstus maxĭmos in Oceăno efficĕre consuēvit; [2]nostrisque[c] id erat incognĭtum. Ita uno tempŏre et longas naves, quibus[d] Cæsar exercĭtum transportandum curavĕrat, quasque in arĭdum[e] subduxĕrat, æstus complēbat; et onerarias, [3]quæ ad anchŏras erant deligātæ, tempestas [4]afflictābat; neque ulla nostris[f] facultas aut administrandi, aut auxiliandi, dabātur. Complurĭbus navĭbus[g] fractis, relĭquæ cùm essent, funĭbus,[g] anchŏris, reliquisque armamentis amissis, ad navigandum inutĭles, magna, id quod[h] necesse erat accidĕre, totius exercĭtûs perturbatio facta est: neque enim naves erant aliæ, quibus reportāri possent;[i] et omnia deĕrant, quæ ad reficiendas eas usui[k] sunt, et, [5]quòd omnĭbus[l] constābat hiemāri in Galliâ oportēre, frumentum [6]his in locis in hiĕmem provīsum non erat.

30. Quibus[m] rebus[g] cognĭtis, princĭpes Britanniæ, qui post prœlium factum ad ea, quæ jussĕrat Cæsar, facienda convenĕrant, inter se collocūti, cùm equĭtes[n] et naves et frumentum Romānis[o] deesse intelligĕrent, et paucitātem milĭtum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognoscĕrent, quæ hoc erant etiam angustiōra, quòd sine impedimentis Cæsar legiōnes transportavĕrat, optĭmum factu[p] esse duxērunt, rebelliōne[g] factâ, frumento[q] commeatūque nostros prohibēre, et [7]rem in hiĕmem producĕre, quòd, iis superātis, aut redĭtu[q] interclūsis, nemĭnem postea belli inferendi causâ in Britanniam transitūrum confidēbant. Ităque, rursus conjuratiōne[g] factâ, paulātim ex castris discedĕre, ac suos clam ex agris deducĕre cœpērunt.

31. At Cæsar, etsi nondum eōrum consilia cognovĕrat, tamen et [8]ex eventu navium suārum, [9]et ex eo, quòd obsĭdes dare intermisĕrant, fore[r] id,[n] quod accĭdit, suspicabātur.

---

[a] § 140, 1, 4th.
[b] § 99, Exc. 1, & 37, 4.
[c] § 111, R.
[d] § 129, R.
[e] 19, (*locum.*)
[f] § 126, R. III.
[g] 109, 2.
[h] 37, 9, Note. 3.
[i] § 141, Obs. 1.
[k] § 114, Obs. 4.
[l] § 113, R. & 19.
[m] 38, 3.
[n] § 145, R.
[o] § 112, R. I.
[p] 114. 2.
[q] § 136, Obs. 5, (*ab.*)
[r] 100, 12.

Ităque [1] ad omnes casus subsidia comparābat: nam et frumentum ex agris quotidie in castra conferēbat,[a] et, quæ [b] gravissĭmè afflictæ erant naves, eārum [c] materiâ atque ære ad relĭquas reficiendas utebātur, et, quæ ad eas res erant usui,[d] ex continenti comportāri jubēbat. Ităque, cùm id summo studio a milităbus administrarētur, duodĕcim navĭbus amissis, [2] relĭquis [e] ut navigāri commŏdè posset, effĕcit.

32. [3] Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex consuetudĭne unâ frumentātum[f] missâ, quæ appellabātur septĭma, neque ullâ ad id tempus belli suspiciōne interposĭtâ, cùm pars homĭnum in agris remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, ii, qui pro portis castrōrum [4] in statiōne erant, Cæsări renunciârunt, pulvĕrem [g] majōrem, [5] quàm consuetūdo ferret,[h] in eâ parte vidēri, quam [i] in partem legio iter fecisset. Cæsar id, quod erat, suspicātus, alĭquid[g] novi a barbăris inĭtum [k] consilii, cohortes, quæ [6] in stationĭbus erant, secum in eam partem proficisci,[l] duas ex relĭquis [7] in statiōnem succedĕre,[l] relĭquas armāri[l] et confestim sese subsĕqui [l] jussit. Cùm paulò longiùs a castris processisset, suos [g] ab hostĭbus premi,[m] atque ægrè sustinēre, [8] et, confertâ legiōne, ex omnĭbus partĭbus tela [g] conjĭci,[m] anĭmum advertit. Nam [9] quòd, omni ex relĭquis partĭbus demesso frumento, pars una erat relĭqua, suspicāti hostes, huc nostros esse ventūros, noctu in silvis delituĕrant: tum dispersos, deposĭtis armis, in metendo [n] occupātos, subĭtò adorti, paucis interfectis, relĭquos [10] incertis ordinĭbus perturbávĕrant: simul equitātu [e] atque essĕdis[e] circumdédĕrant.

33. [11] Genus hoc est ex essĕdis pugnæ: primò per omnes partes perequĭtant, et tela conjiciunt, atque [12] ipso [o] terrōre [e] equōrum, et strepĭtu rotārum, ordĭnes plerumque perturbant;

---

[a] § 44, II. 2.
[b] 37, 6, Note. 1. & 43.
[c] 19, (*navium.*)
[d] § 114, Obs. 4.
[e] § 129, R.
[f] § 148, R. LXIII.
[g] § 145, R.
[h] § 141, Obs. 7.
[i] 37, 6, Note. 1.
[k] 98, 2.
[l] 90, 4.
[m] 96, 6.
[n] § 147, Obs. 5.
[o] 32, 5.

et cùm se inter equĭtum turmas [1]insinuavĕrint,[a] ex essĕdis desiliunt, et pedĭbus prœliantur. [2]Aurīgæ intĕrim paulātim ex prœlio excēdunt, [3]atque ita curru[b] se collŏcant, ut, si illi a multitudĭne hostium premantur,[c] expedītum ad suos receptum habeant.[d] [4]Ita mobilitātem equĭtum, stabilitātem pedĭtum, in prœliis præstant: [5]ac tantum usu quotidiāno et exercitatiōne efficiunt, utì, in declīvi ac præcipĭti loco, [6]incitātos equos sustinēre, [7]et brevi[e] moderāri ac flectĕre, et per temōnem percurrĕre, et in jugo insistĕre, et inde se in currus citissĭmè recipĕre consuêrint.[d]

34. Quibus[f] rebus,[g] perturbātis nostris novitāte pugnæ, tempŏre[h] opportunissĭmo Cæsar auxilium tulit: namque ejus adventu[i] hostes constitērunt, nostri se ex timōre recepērunt. Quo[k] facto, ad lacessendum et ad committendum prœlium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus,[l] suo se loco[g] continuit, et, brevi tempŏre intermisso, in castra legiōnes reduxit. Dum hæc geruntur, nostris omnĭbus occupātis, qui erant in agris, relĭqui discessērunt. Secūtæ sunt [8]continuos complūres dies[m] tempestātes, quæ[n] et nostros in castris continērent,[n] et hostem a pugnâ prohibērent.[n] Intĕrim barbări nuncios in omnes partes dimisērunt, paucitatemque nostrōrum milĭtum [9]suis prædicavērunt, et, [10]quanta prædæ faciendæ,[o] atque in perpetuum sui liberandi,[o] facultas darētur,[p] si Romānos castris[q] expulissent, demonstravērunt. His rebus celerĭter magnâ multitudĭne peditātûs equitatúsque coactâ, ad castra venērunt.

35, Cæsar, etsi idem,[r] quod superiorĭbus diēbus[h] accidĕrat, fore vidēbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritāte pericŭlum effugĕrent;[s] tamen nactus equĭtes circĭter triginta,

---

[a] § 140, Obs. 3.
[b] § 136, Obs. 5, (*cum.*)
[c] § 140, 2.
[d] § 140, 1, 1st.
[e] 19, (*tempŏre.*)
[f] 38.
[g] § 136, Obs. 5 (*in.*)
[h] § 131, R. XL.
[i] § 129, R.
[k] 38, 5.
[l] 106, 1.
[m] § 131, R. XLI.
[n] § 141, Obs. 3.
[o] 112, 5.
[p] § 140, 5.
[q] § 136, R. LII.
[r] § 145, R. & 19.
[s] § 145, Obs. 6.

quos Commius Atrĕbas, de quo [1]antè dictum est,[a] secum transportavĕrat, legiōnes in acie pro castris constituit. Commisso prœlio, diutius nostrōrum milĭtum impĕtum hostes ferre non potuērunt, ac terga vertērunt. Quos [b] tanto spatio [c] secūti, quantum [d] cursu [e] et virĭbus efficĕre potuērunt, complūres ex iis occidērunt; deinde, [2]omnĭbus [f] longè latèque afflictis incensisque, se in castra recepērunt.

36. Eōdem die legāti, ab hostĭbus missi ad Cæsărem de pace, venērunt. His [g] Cæsar numĕrum obsĭdum, quem antea imperavĕrat, duplicāvit, eosque in continentem addūci [h] jussit, quòd, propinquâ [3]die [i] æquinoctii, infirmis navĭbus,[i] [4]hiĕmi [k] navigatiōnem subjiciendam [l] non existimābat. Ipse, idoneam tempestātem nactus, paulò post mediam noctem naves solvit, quæ omnes incolŭmes ad continentem pervenērunt; sed ex his onerariæ duæ [5]eosdem, quos relĭquæ,[m] portus capĕre non potuērunt, et paulo infrà delātæ sunt.

37. [6]Quibus [b] ex navĭbus cùm essent exposĭti milĭtes circĭter trecenti, atque in castra contendĕrent, Morĭni, quos Cæsar, in Britanniam proficiscens, pacātos reliquĕrat, spe [e] prædæ adducti, primò [7]non ita magno suōrum numĕro circumstetērunt, ac, [8]si sese interfĭci nollent,[n] arma ponĕre jussērunt. Cùm illi, [9]orbe facto, sese defendĕrent, celerĭter ad clamōrem homĭnum circĭter millia sex convenērunt. Quâ [b] re nunciātâ, Cæsar omnem ex castris equitātum suis [o] auxilio [o] misit. Intĕrim nostri milĭtes impĕtum hostium sustinuērunt, atque ampliùs horis [p] quatuor fortissĭmè pugnavērunt, et, paucis vulnerĭbus acceptis, complūres ex iis occidērunt. Postea verò quàm equitātus noster in conspectum venit, hostes abjectis armis [10]terga vertērunt, magnusque eōrum numĕrus est occīsus.

---

[a] 67, Note. (*a nobis.*)
[b] 38.
[c] § 132, R. XLII.
[d] 44, 3.
[e] § 129, R.
[f] 19, (*negotiis.*)
[g] § 123, R.
[h] 90, 4.
[i] 110, 1
[k] § 126, R. III.
[l] 108, 4.
[m] § 101, Obs. 4, (*cepĕrunt.*)
[n] § 140, 2.
[o] § 114, R.
[p] § 120, R.

38. Cæsar postĕro die Titum Labiēnum legātum, cum iis legionĭbus, quas ex Britanniâ reduxĕrat, in Morĭnos, qui rebelliōnem fecĕrant, misit. Qui,[a] cùm propter siccitātes palūdum, quò se recipĕrent,[b] non habērent[c] (quo perfugio[d] superiōre anno fuĕrant usi), omnes ferè in potestātem Labiēni venērunt. At Quintus Titurius et Lucius Cotta, legāti, qui in Menapiōrum fines legiōnes duxĕrant, omnĭbus eōrum agris vastātis, frumentis succīsis, ædificiis incensis, quòd Menapii se omnes [1] in densissĭmas silvas abdidĕrant, se ad Cæsărem recepērunt. Cæsar in Belgis omnium legiōnum hiberna constituit. Eo duæ omnīno civitātes ex Britanniâ obsĭdes misērunt; relĭquæ neglexērunt. His rebus gestis, ex litĕris Cæsăris diērum[e] viginti supplicatio a Senātu decrēta est.

---

[a] 39, 5.
[b] § 140, 5.
[c] § 140, Obs. 4.
[d] § 121, R XXVI.
[e] § 106, R. VII.

BOOK V.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I Cæsar's second expedition into Britain—Chap 1–23. II. War with Ambiorix—Chap. 24–54 III. Insurrection among the Treviri repressed—Chap. 55–58.

1. [1] Lucio Domitio, Appio Claudio, consulĭbus, discēdens ab hibernis Cæsar in Italiam, ut quotannis facĕre consuêrat, legātis impĕrat, quos legionĭbus præfecĕrat, utì, [2] quamplurĭmas[a] possent, hiĕme[b] naves ædificandas[c] veteresque reficiendas[c] curārent. Eārum modum formamque demonstrat. [3] Ad celeritātem onerandi subductionesque paulò facit humiliōres, quàm quibus[d] in [4] nostro mari uti consuevĭmus; atque id eo[e] magis, quòd propter crebras commutatiōnes æstuum minùs magnos ibi fluctus fiĕri cognovĕrat: ad onĕra et ad multitudĭnem jumentōrum transportandam paulò latiōres, quàm quibus[d] in relĭquis utĭmur marĭbus. Has omnes [5] actuarias impĕrat fiĕri, quam ad rem multùm humilĭtas [6] adjŭvat. Ea, quæ sunt usui [7] ad armandas naves, ex Hispaniâ apportāri jubet. Ipse, conventĭbus Galliæ citeriōris peractis, in Illyrĭcum proficiscĭtur, quòd a Pirustis finitĭmam partem Provinciæ incursionĭbus vastāri audiēbat. Eò cùm venisset, civitatĭbus[f] milĭtes impĕrat, certumque in locum convenīre jubet. Quâ[g] re nunciātâ, Pirustæ legātos ad eum mittunt, qui[h] doceant, nihil eārum rerum publĭco factum consilio, sesēque parātos esse demonstrant, [8] omnĭbus rationĭbus[i] de injuriis satisfacĕre. Acceptâ oratiōne eōrum Cæsar obsĭdes impĕrat, eosque ad certam diem addūci jubet: nisi ita fecĕrint, sese bello civitātem persecutūrum de-

---

[a] § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.
[b] § 131, R. XLI.
[c] 108, 4.
[d] 37.
[e] § 132, Obs. 6.
[f] § 123, R. & 5. 1.
[g] 38, 5.
[h] § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.
[i] § 129, R.

monstrat. His ad diem adductis, ut imperavĕrat, arbĭtros inter civitātes dat, [1] qui litem æstĭment[a] pœnamque constituant.[a]

2. His confectis rebus [2]conventibusque peractis, in citeriōrem Galliam revertĭtur, atque inde ad exercĭtum proficiscĭtur. Eò cùm venisset, circuĭtis omnĭbus hibernis, singulāri milĭtum studio, in summâ omnium rerum inopiâ, circĭter sexcentas ejus genĕris, cujus[b] suprà demonstravĭmus, naves et longas viginti octo invēnit [3] instructas, [4] neque multùm abesse ab eo, quin paucis diēbus dedūci possent.[c] Collaudātis militĭbus[d] atque iis[d] qui negotio præfuĕrant, quid fiĕri velit, ostendit, atque omnes ad portum Itium convenīre jubet, quo ex portu commodissĭmum in Britanniam [5]transmissum[e] esse cognovĕrat, circĭter millium passuum[f] triginta a continenti. Huic rei quod satis esse visum est milĭtum,[g] relīquit: ipse cum legionĭbus [6]expedītis quatuor et equitĭbus octingentis in fines Trevirōrum proficiscĭtur, quòd hi neque ad concilia veniēbant, neque imperio[h] parēbant, Germanosque transrhenānos solicitāre dicebantur.

3. Hæc civĭtas longè plurĭmùm totius Galliæ equitātu valet, magnasque habet copias pedĭtum, Rhenumque, ut suprà demonstravĭmus, tangit. In eâ civitāte duo[i] de princĭpātu inter se contendēbant, Indutiomārus et Cingetŏrix: ex quibus [7] alter, simul atque[k] de Cæsăris legionumque adventu cognĭtum est, ad eum venit: se suosque omnes in officio futūros, neque ab amicitiâ Popŭli Romāni defectūros confirmāvit; quæque in Trevĭris gererentur,[l] ostendit. At Indutiomārus equitātum peditatumque cogĕre,[m] iisque,[d] qui per ætātem in armis esse non potĕrant, in [8]silvam Arduennam abdĭtis, quæ ingenti magnitudĭne per medios fines Trevirōrum a flumĭne Rheno ad initium Remōrum pertĭnet, bellum parāre[m] instituit. Sed postea quàm nonnulli princĭpes ex

[a] § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.
[b] § 99, Exc. 2.
[c] § 140, 3.
[d] 109, 2.
[e] § 145, R.
[f] § 106, R. VII.
[g] § 106.R.VIII.Obs.10.
[h] 112, R.V.
[i] 19, 1.
[k] 124, 18.
[l] § 140, 5.
[m] § 144, R. LVII

eâ civitāte, et familiaritāte Cingetorĭgis adducti et adventu nostri exercĭtûs perterrĭti, ad Cæsărem venērunt, et de suis privātim rebus ab eo petĕre cœpērunt, 1 quoniam civitāti consulĕre non possent:[a] Indutiomārus, verĭtus[b] ne[c] ab omnĭbus desererētur, legātos ad Cæsărem mittit; sese[d] idcirco ab suis discedĕre atque ad eum venīre noluisse, quò faciliùs civitātem in officio continēret, ne omnis nobilitātis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam 2 laberētur. Ităque esse civitātem in suâ potestāte, seque, si Cæsar permittĕret, ad eum in castra ventūrum, et suas civitatisque fortūnas ejus fidēi 3 permissūrum.

4. Cæsar, etsi intelligēbat, quâ de causâ ea dicerentur,[e] quæque eum res ab institūto consilio deterrēret,[e] tamen, ne æstātem in Trevĭris consumĕre cogerētur,[f] omnĭbus ad Britannĭcum bellum rebus comparātis, Indutiomārum ad se cum ducentis obsidĭbus venīre[g] jussit. His adductis, in iis filio propinquisque ejus omnĭbus, quos nominātim evocavĕrat, consolātus[h] Indutiomārum hortatusque est, utì in officio permanēret: nihĭlo tamen secius, principĭbus Trevirōrum ad se convocātis, hos singillātim Cingetorĭgi conciliāvit: quod cùm[i] merĭto ejus ab se fiĕri intelligēbat, tum[i] magni[k] interesse arbitrabātur, ejus auctoritātem inter suos quamplurĭmùm valēre, cujus tam egregiam in se voluntātem perspexisset.[l] Id factum gravĭter tulit Indutiomārus, 4 suam gratiam inter suos minui; et, qui[m] jam antè inimīco in nos anĭmo fuisset, 5 multo graviùs hôc dolōre exarsit.

5. His rebus constitūtis, Cæsar ad portum Itium cum legionĭbus pervēnit. Ibi cognoscit, quadraginta naves, quæ in Meldis factæ erant, tempestāte rejectas. 6 cursum tenēre non potuisse, atque eōdem, unde erant profectæ, revertisse relĭquas parātas ad navigandum atque omnĭbus rebus in-

[a] § 140, Obs. 2.
[b] 106, 1.
[c] § 140, Obs. 6, & 121.
[d] 91, 4, & § 145, R.
[e] § 140, 5.
[f] § 140, 1, 2d.
[g] 90, 4.
[h] 115, 1.
[i] 124, 8.
[k] § 122, R. XXVIII.
[l] § 141, Obs. 7.
[m] § 141, R. III.

structas invĕnit. Eòdem totius Galliæ equitātus convēnit, numĕro[a] millium quatuor, principesque omnĭbus ex civitatĭbus: ex quibus perpaucos, quorum in se fidem perspexĕrat, relinquĕre in Galliâ, relĭquos obsĭdum loco[a] secum ducĕre, decrevĕrat; quòd, cùm ipse abesset, motum Galliæ verebātur.

6. Erat unà cum cetĕris Dumnŏrix Æduus, de quo ab nobis [1]antea dictum est. Hunc secùm habēre in primis constituĕrat, quòd eum [2]cupĭdum rerum[b] novārum, cupĭdum imperii, magni anĭmi,[c] magnæ inter Gallos auctoritātis,[c] cognovĕrat. Accedēbat huc, quòd jam in concilio Æduōrum Dumnŏrix dixĕrat, sibi[d] a Cæsăre regnum civitātis deferri: quod[e] dictum Ædui gravĭter ferēbant, neque recusandi aut deprecandi causâ legātos ad Cæsărem mittĕre audēbant. [3]Id factum ex suis hospitĭbus Cæsar cognovĕrat. Ille omnĭbus primò precĭbus [4]petĕre contendit, ut in Galliâ relinquerētur; partim, quòd insuētus navigandi[b] mare timēret;[f] partim, quòd religionĭbus sese dicĕret impedīri. Posteaquam id obstinātè sibi[d] negāri vidit, omni spe impetrandi ademtâ, princĭpes Galliæ solicitāre, sevocāre singŭlos hortarīque cœpit, utì in continenti remanērent;[g] metu territāre [5]non sine causâ fiĕri, ut Gallia omni nobilitāte[h] spoliarētur: id esse consilium Cæsăris, ut, quos in conspectu Galliæ interficĕre vererētur, hos omnes in Britanniam transductos necāret:[g] [6]fidem relĭquis interponĕre, jusjurandum poscĕre, ut, [7]quod[i] esse ex usu Galliæ intellexissent, commūni consilio administrārent. Hæc a complurĭbus ad Cæsărem deferebantur.

7. Quâ[e] re cognĭtâ, Cæsar, [8]quòd tantum civitāti Æduæ dignitātis[k] tribuĕrat, coërcendum[l] atque deterrendum,[l] quibuscumque rebus posset, Dumnorĭgem statuēbat; quòd [9]longiùs ejus amentiam progrĕdi vidēbat, [10]prospiciendum,[m]

[a] § 136, Obs. 5,
[b] § 107, R. IX.
[c] § 106, R. VII.
[d] § 126, R. III.
[e] 38.
[f] § 141, Obs. 7.
[g] § 140, 1, 3d.
[h] § 126, R. V.
[i] 37, 2.
[k] § 106, R. VIII.
[l] 108, 4.
[m] 113, 5.

[1]ne quid[a] sibi[b] ac rei publĭcæ nocēre posset. Ităque dies[c] circĭter viginti quinque in eo loco commorātus, quòd [2]Corus ventus navigatiōnem impediēbat, qui magnam partem[c] omnis tempŏris in his locis flare consuēvit, dabat opĕram, ut in officio Dumnorĭgem continēret,[d] nihĭlo tamen secius omnia ejus consilia [3]cognoscĕret:[d] tandem, idoneam nactus tempestātem, milĭtes equitesquè conscendĕre naves jubet. At, [4]omnium impedītis anĭmis, Dumnŏrix cum equitĭbus Æduōrum a castris, insciente Cæsăre, domum[e] discedĕre cœpit. Quâ re nunciātâ, Cæsar, intermissâ profectiōne atque omnĭbus rebus postposĭtis, magnam partem equitātûs ad eum insequendum mittit, retrahīque[f] impĕrat: si vim faciat neque[g] pareat, interfĭci[f] jubet: nihil [5]hunc[h] se absente pro sano factūrum arbitrātus, qui præsentis imperium neglexisset.[i] [6]Ille enim revocātus resistĕre ac se manu defendĕre suorumque fidem implorāre cœpit, sæpe clamĭtans, "libĕrum se liberæque civitātis[k] esse." Illi, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt atque homĭnem interficiunt; at Ædui equĭtes ad Cæsărem omnes revertuntur.

8. His rebus gestis, Labiēno in continente cum tribus legionĭbus et equĭtum millĭbus duōbus relicto, ut portus tuerētur[d] et rem frumentariam providēret,[d] quæque in Galliâ gererentur[l] cognoscĕret,[d] [7]consiliumque pro tempŏre et pro re capĕret,[d] ipse cum quinque legionĭbus et [8]pari numĕro equĭtum quem in continenti relinquēbat, solis occāsu[m] naves solvit, et, leni Afrĭco provectus, mediâ circĭter nocte[m] vento intermisso, cursum non tenuit, et, [9]longiùs delātus æstu, ortâ luce, sub sinistrâ Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus, æstus commutatiōnem [10]secūtus, remis contendit, ut eam partem insŭlæ capĕret,[d] quà optĭmum esse egressum superiōre æstāte cognovĕrat. Quâ in re admŏdum fuit

---

[a] § 116, Obs. 3.
[b] § 112, R. V.
[c] § 131, R. XLI.
[d] § 140, 1. 2d.
[e] § 130, 4.
[f] 90, 4.
[g] § 93, 1, (*and not.*)
[h] § 145, R.
[i] § 141, R. III.
[k] § 108, R. XII.
[l] § 140, 5.
[m] § 131, R. XL.

milĭtum [1] virtus laudanda, qui [2] vectoriis gravibusque navigiis, non intermisso remigandi labōre, longārum navium cursum adæquârunt. [3] Accessum est [a] ad Britanniam omnĭbus navĭbus [i] meridiāno ferè tempŏre: neque in eo loco hostis est visus, sed, ut postea Cæsar ex captīvis compĕrit, cùm [b] magnæ manus eò convenissent, [b] multitudĭne navium perterrītæ (quæ [4] cum annotīnis privatisque, quas sui quisque commŏdi [c] fecĕrat, ampliùs octingentis uno erant visæ tempŏre), a littŏre discessĕrant ac se in superiōra loca abdidĕrant.

9. Cæsar, exposĭto exercĭtu et loco castris [d] idoneo capto, ubi ex captīvis cognōvit, quo in loco hostium copiæ consedissent, [e] cohortĭbus decem ad mare relictis et equitĭbus trecentis, qui [f] præsidio [g] navĭbus essent, de tertiâ vigiliâ ad hostes contendit, eo minùs [5] verĭtus navĭbus, [h] quòd [6] in littŏre molli atque aperto deligātas ad anchŏram relinquēbat; et præsidio [g] navĭbus Quintum Atrium præfēcit. Ipse, noctu progressus millia passuum circĭter duodĕcim, hostium copias conspicātus est. Illi, equitātu [i] atque essĕdis ad flumen progressi, ex loco superiōre nostros prohibēre et prœlium committĕre cœpērunt. Repulsi ab equitātu, se in silvas abdidērunt, locum nacti, egregiè et natūrâ et opĕre munītum, quem domestĭci belli, ut videbātur, causâ jam antè præparavĕrant: nam crebris arborĭbus [k] succīsis omnes introĭtus erant [7] præclūsi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnābant, nostrosque intra munitiōnes ingrĕdi prohibēbant. At milĭtes legiōnis septīmæ, [8] testudĭne [k] factâ, et aggĕre ad munitiōnes adjecto, locum cepērunt eosque ex silvis expulērunt, paucis vulnerĭbus [k] acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longiùs Cæsar prosĕqui vetuit, et quòd loci natūram ignorābat, et quòd, magnâ parte diēi consumtâ, munitiōni [l] castrōrum tempus relinqui volēbat.

---

[a] 67, 5, Note.
[b] § 140, Obs. 3.
[c] § 106, Obs. 3. (*causâ.*)
[d] § 111, R.
[e] § 140, 5.
[f] § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.
[g] § 114, R.
[h] § 112, R. XVII.
[i] § 136, Obs. 5, (*cum*)
[k] 109, 2.
[l] § 126, R. III.

10. Postridie ejus diēi[a] mane [1]tripartītò milĭtes equitesque in expeditiōnem misit, ut eos, qui fugĕrant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itinĕris[b] progressis, cùm jam extrēmi[c] essent in prospectu, equĭtes a Quinto Atrio ad Cæsărem venērunt, qui[d] nunciārent, [2]superiōre nocte, maxĭmâ coortâ tempestāte, prope omnes naves [3]afflictas[e] atque in littŏre ejectas esse;[e] quòd neque anchŏræ funesque [4]subsistĕrent,[f] neque nautæ gubernatoresque vim pati tempestātis possent:[f] ităque [5]ex eo concursu navium magnum esse [6]incommŏdum acceptum.[e]

11. His rebus cognĭtis, Cæsar legiōnes equitatumque revocāri atque itinĕre desistĕre jubet: ipse ad naves revertĭtur: eădem ferè, quæ ex nuntiis literisque cognovĕrat, [7]coram perspĭcit, sic ut, amissis circĭter quadraginta navĭbus, relĭquæ tamen refĭci posse magno negotio viderentur.[g] Ităque ex legionĭbus fabros delēgit, et ex continenti alios arcessīri jubet; Labiēno[h] scribit, ut, quàm plurĭmas posset, iis legionĭbus[i] quæ sint[k] apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, etsi [8]res erat multæ opĕræ[l] ac labōris, tamen commodissĭmum esse statuit, omnes naves [9]subdūci[m] et cum castris unâ munitiōne conjungi. In his rebus circĭter dies decem consūmit, ne nocturnis[n] quidem temporĭbus ad labōrem milĭtum intermissis. Subductis navĭbus castrisque egregiè munītis, easdem copias, quas antè, præsidio navĭbus relĭquit: ipse eòdem, unde rediĕrat, proficiscĭtur. Eò cùm venisset, majōres jam undĭque in eum locum copiæ Britannōrum convenĕrant, [10]summa imperii bellique administrandi commūni consilio permissa Cassivellauno,[o] cujus fines a maritĭmis civitatĭbus flumen divĭdit, quod appellātur Tamĕsis, a mari circĭter millia passuum octoginta. Huic[p] [11]superiōre tempŏre cum relĭquis civitatĭbus continentia bella intercessĕ-

---

[a] § 135, R. XLVI.
[b] § 106, R. VIII.
[c] Sup. *fugientium.*
[d] § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.
[e] 98, 2.
[f] § 141, Obs. 7.
[g] § 140, 1, 1st.
[h] § 123, R. Obs. 2.
[i] § 136, Obs. 5, (*ex.*)
[k] § 141, Obs. 8.
[l] § 106, R. VII.
[m] 94, 3.
[n] 121, Note. 2.
[o] § 126, R. III.
[p] § 112, R. IV.

rant: sed nostro adventu permōti Britanni hunc toti bello[a] imperiōque præfecĕrant.

12. Britanniæ pars interior ab iis incolĭtur, [1]quos[b] natos in insŭlâ ipsâ, memoriâ prodĭtum dicunt: maritĭma pars ab iis, qui prædæ ac belli inferendi causâ ex Belgis transiĕrant; qui omnes ferè iis nominĭbus civitātum appellantur, quibus[c] orti ex civitatĭbus eò pervenērunt, et [2]bello illāto ibi remansērunt atque agros colĕre cœpērunt. Homĭnum est infinīta multitūdo, [3]creberrimăque ædificia, [4]ferè Gallĭcis[d] consimilia: pecŏrum magnus numĕrus. Utuntur aut ære,[e] aut [5]taleis ferreis, ad certum pondus examinātis, pro nummo. Nascĭtur ibi [6]plumbum album in mediterraneis regionĭbus, in maritĭmis ferrum; sed ejus exigua est [7]copia: ære[e] utuntur importāto. [8]Materia cujusque genĕris, ut in Galliâ, est, præter fagum atque abiĕtem. Lepŏrem et gallīnam et ansĕrem gustāre, fas non putant; hæc tamen alunt [9]anĭmi voluptatisque causâ. [10]Loca sunt temperatiōra, quàm in Galliâ, [11]remissiorĭbus frigorĭbus.[f]

13. Insŭla natūrâ [12]triquetra, cujus unum latus est contra Galliam. Hujus latĕris alter angŭlus, qui est [13]ad Cantium, quo ferè omnes ex Galliâ naves appelluntur, ad orientem solem; inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc latus tenet circĭter millia passuum quingenta. Altĕrum vergit [14]ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem, quâ ex parte est Hibernia, [15]dimidio[h] minor, ut æstimātur, quàm Britannia;[i] [16]sed pari spatio[k] transmissus, atque[l] ex Galliâ, est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insŭla, quæ appellātur [17]Mona; complūres præterea minōres objectæ insŭlæ existimantur; de quibus[c] insŭlis nonnulli scripsērunt, [18]dies[m] continuos triginta sub brumâ, esse noctem,[b] Nos nihil de eo percontationĭbus reperiebāmus, [19]nisi certis ex aquâ mensūris breviō-

---

[a] § 123, R.
[b] § 145, R. & 91, 4.
[c] 37, 6, Note. 1.
[d] § 111. R. & 19.
[e] § 121, R. XXVI.
[f] 110.
[g] 19, (*latus.*)
[h] § 132, R. XLIII.
[i] § 120, Obs. 2, 2d.
[k] § 132, R. XLII.
[l] § 149, Obs. 6.
[m] § 131, R. XLI.

res esse, quàm in continente, noctes vidēbāmus. Hujus est longitūdo latĕris, ut fert illōrum opinio, [1] septingentōrum millium.[a] Tertium est [2] contra septentriōnes, cui parti [b] nulla est objecta terra; sed ejus angŭlus latĕris maxĭmè ad Germaniam spectat: huic [c] millia [d] passuum [3] octingenta in longitudĭnem esse existimātur.[e] Ita omnis insŭla est in circuĭtu vicies centum millium passuum.

14. Ex his omnĭbus longè sunt [4] humanissĭmi, qui Cantium incŏlunt, quæ regio est maritĭma omnis; neque multum a Gallĭcâ diffĕrunt consuetudĭne. Interiōres plerīque frumenta non serunt, sed lacte [f] et carne vivunt, pellibusque [g] sunt vestīti. Omnes verò [5] se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod cœruleum effĭcit colōrem, atque hoc horridiōre sunt in pugnâ aspectu:[h] [6] capillōque[i] sunt promisso atque omni parte corpŏris rasâ, præter caput et labrum superius. Uxōres habent [7] deni duodenīque inter se commūnes, et maxĭmè fratres cum fratrĭbus parentesque cum libĕris; sed, si qui sunt ex his nati, eōrum habentur libĕri, [8] quo [k] primùm virgo quæque deducta est.

15. Equĭtes hostium essedariīque acrĭter prœlio cum equitātu nostro in itinĕre conflixērunt, [9] tamen ut nostri omnĭbus partĭbus superiōres fuĕrint, atque eos in silvas collesque compulĕrint: sed complurĭbus interfectis, cupidiùs[l] insecūti, nonnullos ex suis amisērunt. At illi, intermisso spatio, imprudentĭbus nostris atque occupātis in munitiōne castrōrum, subĭtò se ex silvis ejecērunt, impetūque in eos facto, qui erant in statiōne pro castris collocāti, acrĭter pugnavērunt: duabusque [10] submissis cohortĭbus a Cæsăre, atque his primis legiōnum [m] duārum, cùm hæ, perexiguo intermisso loci spatio inter se, [11] constitissent, novo genĕre pugnæ perterrĭtis nostris, per medios audacissĭmè perrupērunt, seque inde in-

[a] § 132, Obs. 3.
[b] § 126, R. III.
[c] § 112, R. II.
[d] § 145, R.
[e] 51.
[f] § 121, Obs. 2.
[g] § 126, R V.
[h] § 106, R. VII.
[i] § 136, Obs.5, (*cum*)
[k] § 136, Obs. 5, (*a.*)
[l] 22, 3.
[m] § 107, R. X

colŭmes recepērunt. Eo die Quintus Laberius Durus, tribūnus milĭtum, interficĭtur. Illi, plurĭbus immissis cohortĭbus, repelluntur.

16. Toto hoc in genĕre pugnæ, [1] cùm sub ocŭlis omnium ac pro castris dimicarētur, [2] intellectum est,[a] nostros[b] propter gravitātem armatūræ, quòd neque insĕqui [3] cedentes possent, neque ab signis discedĕre audērent, minùs aptos esse ad hujus genĕris hostem; equĭtes[b] autem magno cum pericŭlo dimicāre,[c] propterea quòd illi etiam consultò plerumque [4] cedĕrent,[d] et, cùm paulùm ab legionĭbus nostros removissent, ex essĕdis desilīrent [5] et pedĭbus[e] dispări prœlio contendĕrent. Equestris autem prœlii ratio et cedentĭbus[f] et insequentĭbus par atque idem pericŭlum inferēbat. Accedēbat huc, ut, nunquam [6] conferti, sed rari magnisque intervallis[g] prœliarentur,[h] stationesque dispositas habērent,[h] atque [7] alios alii deinceps excipĕrent, integrīque et recentes defatigātis succedĕrent.[h]

17. Postĕro die procul a castris hostes in collĭbus constitērunt, rarīque se ostendĕre et [8] leniùs, quàm pridie, nostros equĭtes prœlio lacessĕre cœpērunt. Sed meridie, cùm Cæsar pabulandi causâ tres legiōnes atque omnem equitātum cum Caio Trebonio legāto misisset, repentè ex omnĭbus partĭbus ad pabulatōres advolavērunt, sic, [9] utì ab signis legionibusque non absistĕrent. Nostri, acrĭter in eos impĕtu facto, repulērunt, neque finem sequendi fecērunt, quoad subsidio[i] confīsi equĭtes, cùm post se legiōnes vidērent, præcipĭtes hostes egērunt: magnōque eōrum numĕro interfecto, neque sui colligendi, neque consistendi, aut ex essĕdis desiliendi facultātem dedērunt. Ex hâc fugâ protĭnus, quæ undĭque convenĕrant, auxilia discessērunt: [10] neque post id tempus unquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contendērunt.

---

[a] 51, 2.
[b] § 145, R.
[c] 96, 2.
[d] § 140, 6.
[e] § 129, R.
[f] 19, & § 123, R.
[g] § 132, R. XLII.
[h] § 140, 1, 4th.
[i] § 112, R. V

18. Cæsar, cognĭto consilio eōrum, ad flumen Tamĕsin in fines Cassivellauni exercĭtum duxit; quod[a] flumen uno omnīno loco[b] pedĭbus, atque hoc[c] ægrè, transīri potest. Eò cùm venisset, animadvertit, ad altĕram flumĭnis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas: ripa autem erat [1]acūtis sudĭbus[d] præfixis munīta; ejusdem genĕris sub aquá defixæ sudes flumĭne[d] tegebantur. His rebus cognĭtis a captīvis perfugisque, Cæsar, præmisso equitātu, confestim legiōnes subsĕqui jussit. Sed eâ[e] celeritāte atque eo[e] impĕtu milĭtes iĕrunt, [2]cùm capĭte solo ex aquâ exstārent,[f] ut hostes impĕtum legiōnum atque equĭtum sustinēre non possent,[g] ripasque dimittĕrent ac se fugæ mandārent.

19. Cassivellaunus, [3]ut suprà demonstravĭmus, omni depośĭtâ spe contentiōnis, [4]dimissis amploriĭbus copiis, millĭbus circĭter quatuor essedariōrum relictis, itinĕra nostra servābat, paululumque [5]ex viâ excedēbat, locisque[b] impedītis ac silvestrĭbus sese occultābat, atque iis regionĭbus,[b] quibus[b] nos iter factūros cognovĕrat, pecŏra atque homĭnes ex agris in silvas compellēbat: et, cùm equitātus noster, liberiùs[h] prædandi, vastandīque causâ, se in agros effundĕret, omnĭbus viis[i] notis semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittēbat, et magno cum pericŭlo nostrōrum equĭtum cum iis confligēbat, atque hoc metu latiùs[h] vagāri prohibēbat. [6]Relinquebātur, ut neque longiùs ab agmĭne legiōnum discēdi[k] Cæsar paterētur, et tantum[l] in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis [7]hostĭbus[m] nocerētur,[k] quantum labōre[d] atque itinĕre legionarii milĭtes efficĕre potĕrant.

20. Intĕrim Trinobantes, propè firmissĭma eārum regiōnum civĭtas, ex quâ Mandubratius adolescens, Cæsăris fidem secūtus, ad eum in continentem Galliam venĕrat (cujus pater Imanuentius in eâ civitāte regnum obtinuĕrat, interfec-

---

[a] 37, 6, Note. 1.
[b] § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)
[c] 19, *loco*, Sup. (*in.*)
[d] § 129, R.
[e] 28, 1.
[f] § 140, Obs. 3.
[g] § 140, 1, 1st.
[h] 22, 3.
[i] 109, 2.
[k] § 85, 3.
[l] § 116, Obs. 3.
[m] 66, 7.

tusque erat a Cassivellauno, ipse fugâ mortem vitavĕrat), legātos ad Cæsărem mittunt, pollicenturque, sese ei deditūros atque imperāta factūros: petunt, ut Mandubratium ab injuriâ Cassivellauni defendat,[a] [1] atque in civitātem mittat, qui præsit[b] imperiumque obtineat.[b] His[c] Cæsar impĕrat obsĭdes quadraginta frumentumque exercitui,[d] Mandubratiumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperāta celerĭter fecērunt, obsĭdes [2] ad numĕrum frumentăque misērunt.

21. Trinobantĭbus defensis atque ab omni milĭtum injuriâ [3] prohibĭtis, Cenimagni, Segontiăci, Ancalĭtes, Bibrŏci, Cassi, legationĭbus missis sese Cæsări dedunt. Ab his cognoscit, non longè ex eo loco oppĭdum Cassivellauni abesse, silvis[e] paludibusque munītum, quo[f] satis magnus homĭnum pecorisque numĕrus convenĕrit. ([4] Oppĭdum autem Britanni vocant, cùm silvas impedītas vallo atque fossâ muniērunt,[g] quò incursiōnis hostium vitandæ causâ convenīre consuêrunt.) Eò proficiscĭtur cum legionĭbus: locum repĕrit egregiè natūrâ[e] atque opĕre munītum; tamen hunc duābus ex partĭbus oppugnāre contendit. Hostes, paulisper morāti, milĭtum nostrōrum impĕtum non tulērunt, sesēque aliâ ex parte oppĭdi ejecērunt. Magnus ibi numĕrus pecŏris repertus, multīque in fugâ sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

22. Dum hæc in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod[h] esse [5] ad mare suprà demonstravĭmus, quibus[i] regionĭbus[k] quatuor reges præĕrant, Cingetŏrix, Carvilius, Taximagŭlus, Segŏnax, nuncios mittit, atque his impĕrat, utì, coactis omnĭbus copiis, castra navalia de improvīso[l] [6] adoriantur atque oppugnent. Ii cùm ad castra venissent, nostri, eruptiōne factâ, multis eōrum[m] interfectis, capto etiam nobĭli duce Lugotorĭge, suos incolŭmes reduxērunt. Cassivellaunus, hoc prœlio nunciāto, tot detrimentis accep-

---

[a] § 140, 1, 3d.
[b] § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.
[c] § 123, R. & 5, 1.
[d] § 110, R. XV.
[e] § 129, R.
[f] § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)
[g] § 140, Obs. 3.
[h] § 145, R. & 91.
[i] 37, 1, (*regiōnes.*)
[k] § 112, R. I.
[l] § 90, 6.
[m] § 107, R. X.

tis, vastātis finĭbus, maxĭmè etiam permōtus defectiōne civitatium, legātos per Atrebātem Commium de deditiōne ad Cæsărem mittit. Cæsar, cùm statuisset[a] hiĕmem in continenti propter repentīnos Galliæ [1] motus agĕre, neque multum æstātis superesset, atque id facĭlè extrăhi posse intelligĕret, obsĭdes impĕrat, et, quid in annos singŭlos vectigālis[b] Popŭlo Romāno Britannia pendĕret,[c] constituit; interdīcit atque impĕrat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubratio, neu Trinobantĭbus bellum faciat.[d]

23. Obsidĭbus acceptis, exercĭtum redūcit ad mare, naves invĕnit [2] refectas. His deductis, quòd et[e] [3] captivōrum magnum numĕrum habēbat, et nonnullæ tempestāte deperiĕrant naves, duobus [4] commeatĭbus exercĭtum reportāre instituit. Ac sic accĭdit, utì ex tanto navium numĕro, tot [5] navigatiōnĭbus, neque hoc, neque superiōre anno,[f] ulla omnīno navis, quæ milĭtes portāret,[g] [6] desiderarētur:[h] at ex iis, quæ inānes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur,[i] et [7] priōris commeātûs exposĭtis militĭbus, et quas postea Labiēnus faciendas curavĕrat numĕro sexaginta, [8] perpaucæ locum capĕrent;[k] relīquæ fere omnes rejicerentur.[k] Quas[l] cùm aliquamdiu Cæsar frustra expectâsset,[a] ne anni tempŏre a navigatiōne excluderētur, quòd æquinoctium subĕrat, [9] necessariò angustiùs milĭtes collocāvit, ac, summâ tranquillitāte consecūtâ, secundâ inĭtâ cùm solvisset vigiliâ, primâ luce terram attĭgit, omnesque incolŭmes naves perduxit.

24. [10] Subductis navĭbus, conciliōque Gallōrum Samarobrīvæ[m] peracto, quòd eo anno [11] frumentum in Galliâ propter siccitātes angustiùs provenĕrat, coactus est alĭter, ac superiorĭbus annis,[f] exercĭtum in hibernis collocāre, legionesque [12] in plures civitātes distribuĕre: ex quibus unam in Morĭnos ducendam Caio Fabio legāto dedit; altĕram in Nervios

---

[a] § 140, Obs. 4.
[b] § 106, R. VIII.
[c] § 140, 5.
[d] § 140, 1, 3d.
[e] 124, 1.
[f] § 131, R, XL.
[g] § 141,R.I. & Obs.1.
[h] § 140, 1, 4th.
[i] § 141, Obs. 3.
[k] Sup. *accĭdit ut.*
[l] 38.
[m] § 130, R. XXXVI.

Quintio Ciceroni; tertiam in Essuos Lucio Roscio; quartam in Remis cum Tito Labiēno in confinio Trevirōrum hiemāre jussit; tres in Belgio collocāvit: his Marcum Crassum, quæstōrem, et Lucium Munatium Plancum et Caium Trebonium, legātos,[a] præfēcit. Unam legiōnem, quam proxĭmè trans Padum conscripsĕrat, et cohortes quinque in Eburōnes, quorum pars maxĭma est inter Mosam ac Rhenum, qui sub imperio Ambiorĭgis et Cativolci erant, misit. His[b] militĭbus Quintum Titurium Sabīnum et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam, legātos,[a] præesse jussit. Ad hunc modum distribūtis legionĭbus, facillĭmè inopiæ[c] frumentariæ sese [1] mederi posse existimāvit: atque harum [d] tamen omnium hiberna (præter eam, quam Lucio Roscio in pacatissĭmam et quietissĭmam partem ducendam dedĕrat), [2] millĭbus passuum centum continebantur. Ipse interea, quoad legiōnes collocâsset [e] munitāque hiberna cognovisset, in Galliâ morāri constituit.

25. Erat in Carnutĭbus [3] summo loco [f] natus Tasgetius, cujus majōres in suâ civitāte regnum obtinuĕrant. Huic Cæsar, pro ejus virtūte atque in se benevolentiâ, quòd in omnĭbus bellis singulāri ejus operâ fuĕrat usus, majōrum locum restituĕrat. [4] Tertium jam hunc annum [g] regnantem inimīci palam, multis etiam ex civitāte auctorĭbus, interfecērunt. Defertur ea res ad Cæsărem. Ille verĭtus, [5] quòd ad plures pertinēbat, ne[h] civĭtas eōrum impulsu deficĕret, Lucium Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgio celerĭter in Carnūtes proficisci jubet, ibique hiemāre; quorumque opĕrâ cognovĕrit Tasgetium interfectum, hos comprehensos ad se mittĕre. Intĕrim ab omnĭbus legātis quæstoribusque, quibus legiōnes transdidĕrat, certior factus est, [6] in hiberna perventum [i] locumque hibernis esse munītum.

26. Diēbus circĭter quindĕcim, quibus in hiberna ventum est,[l] initium repentīni tumultûs ac defectiōnis ortum est ab

[a] § 97, Obs. 2.
[b] § 112, R. I.
[c] § 112, R. V.
[d] 19, (*legiōnum.*)
[e] § 140, 4.
[f] § 119, R.
[g] § 131, R. XLI.
[h] § 140, Obs. 6 & 121, 6.
[i] 67, 5, Note.

Ambiorĭge et Cativolco: [1]qui[a] cùm ad fines regni sui Sabīno[b] Cottæque præstò fuissent, frumentumque in hiberna comportavissent, Indutiomāri Trevĭri nunciis impulsi, suos concitavērunt, subitòque oppressis lignatorĭbus, magnâ manu castra oppugnātum[c] venērunt. Cùm celerĭter nostri arma cepissent vallumque ascendissent, atque, unâ ex parte Hispānis equitĭbus emissis, equestri prœlio[d] superiōres fuissent, [2]desperātâ re, hostes suos ab oppugnatiōne reduxērunt. Tum suo more conclamavērunt, utì alĭqui ex nostris[e] ad colloquium prodĭrent; habēre se, quæ [3]de re commūni dicĕre vellent,[f] quibus rebus controversias [4]minui posse sperārent.[f]

27. Mittĭtur ad eos colloquendi causâ Caius Arpineius, eques Romānus, familiāris Quintii Titurii et Quintus Junius ex Hispaniâ quidam, qui jam antè [5]missu Cæsăris ad Ambiorĭgem ventitāre consuevĕrat: apud quos Ambiŏrix [6]ad hunc modum locūtus est: [7]"Sese pro Cæsăris in se beneficiis [8]plurĭmum ei confitēri debēre, quòd ejus operâ stipendio[g] liberātus esset,[f] quod Aduatŭcis finitĭmis suis pendĕre consuêsset:[f] quòdque ei et filius et fratris filius ab Cæsăre remissi essent, quos Aduatŭci, obsĭdum numĕro missos, apud se in servitūte et catēnis tenuissent:[f] neque id, quod fecĕrit [9]de oppugnatiōne castrōrum, aut judicio[h] aut voluntāte suâ fecisse,[i] sed coactu[h] civitātis; [10]suăque esse ejusmŏdi imperia, ut non minus habēret[k] juris in se multitūdo, quàm ipse in multitudĭnem. Civitāti[l] porro hanc fuisse belli causam, quòd repentīnæ Gallōrum conjuratiōni resistĕre non potuĕrit: id se facĭlè [11]ex humilitāte suâ probāre posse, quòd non adeo sit[f] imperĭtus rerum, ut suis copiis[h] Popŭlum Romānum se superāre posse confĭdat: sed [12]esse Galliæ commūne consilium; omnĭbus hibernis Cæsăris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, ne qua legio altĕræ legiōni[m] subsidio

[a] 39, 6.
[b] § 135, R. XLVII.
[c] § 148, 1.
[d] § 128, R.
[e] § 107, Obs. 8.
[f] § 141, Obs. 7.
[g] § 126, R. V.
[h] § 129, R.
[i] § 145. Obs. 3.
[k] § 140, 1, 1st.
[l] § 112, R. II.
[m] § 114.R.

venīre posset:[a] non facĭlè Gallos Gallis[b] negāre potuisse, præsertim cùm de recuperandâ commūni libertāte consilium inĭtum viderētur. [1]Quibus[c] quoniam pro pietāte satisfecĕrit, habēre se nunc ratiōnem officii pro beneficiis Cæsăris; monēre, orāre Titurium[d] [2]pro hospitio, ut suæ ac milĭtum salūti consŭlat: magnam manum Germanōrum conductam Rhenum transîsse;[e] hanc[f] affŏre biduo. [3]Ipsōrum esse consilium, velintne[g] priùs, quàm finitĭmi sentiant,[h] eductos ex hibernis milĭtes aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum deducĕre, quorum alter[i] millia passuum circĭter quinquaginta, alter[i] paulò amplius ab his absit. Illud se pollicēri et jurejurando confirmāre, tutum iter per fines suos datūrum; [4]quod[k] cùm faciat, et[l] civitāti sese consulĕre, quòd hibernis levētur, et[l] Cæsări pro ejus merĭtis gratiam referre." Hâc oratiōne habĭtâ, discēdit Ambiŏrix.

28. Arpineius et Junius, quæ audiêrint, ad legātos defĕrunt. Illi, repentīnâ re perturbāti, etsi ab hoste ea dicebantur, non tamen negligenda existimābant: maximèque hâc re permovebantur, quòd, civitātem ignobĭlem atque humĭlem Eburōnum suâ sponte Popŭlo Romāno bellum facĕre ausam,[e] vix erat credendum.[m] Ităque ad consilium rem defĕrunt magnăque inter eos [5]existit controversia. Lucius Aurunculeius compluresque tribūni milĭtum et primōrum ordĭnum centuriōnes "nihil temĕre agendum,[m] neque ex hibernis injussu Cæsăris discedendum,[m]" existimābant: "quantasvis magnas etiam copias[f] Germanōrum [6]sustinēri posse munītis hibernis," docēbant: [7]"rem esse testimonio,[n] quòd primum hostium impĕtum, multis ultro vulnerĭbus illātis, fortissĭmè sustinuĕrint:[o] re frumentariâ non premi: interea et ex proxĭmis hibernis et a Cæsăre conventūra subsidia"

---

[a] § 140, 1, 2d.
[b] § 112, R. V.
[c] 39, & § 112, R. III.
[d] § 124, R. & § 116, Exp.
[e] 98, 2.
[f] § 145, R, & 19.
[g] § 140, 5.
[h] § 140, 4.
[i] 27, 10, Obs.
[k] 38, 4.
[l] 124, 1.
[m] 108.
[n] § 114, R. & Obs. 4.
[o] § 140, 6.

postrēmo, "quid esse [1] levius aut turpius, quàm, [2] auctōre hoste,[a] de summis rebus capĕre consilium?"

29. Contra ea Titurius, "serò factūros," [3] clamitābat, "cum majōres hostium manus, adjunctis Germānis, convenissent: aut cùm alĭquid calamitātis in proxĭmis hibernis esset acceptum, brevem consulendi esse occasiōnem: [4] Cæsărem[b] arbitrāri profectum[c] in Italiam: neque alĭter Carnūtes interficiendi Tasgetii consilium fuisse captūros, neque Eburōnes, si ille adesset, tantâ cum contentiōne nostri ad castra ventūros esse: [5] non hostem auctōrem, sed rem spectāre; subesse Rhenum; magno esse Germānis dolōri Ariovisti mortem[b] et superiōres nostras victorias:[b] [6] ardēre Galliam,[b] tot contumeliis acceptis sub Popŭli Romāni imperium redactam, superiōre gloriâ rei militāris extinctâ." Postrēmo, "quis hoc sibi[d] persuadēret,[e] [7] sine certâ re Ambiorĭgem ad ejusmŏdi consilium descendisse[c]? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tutam: [8] si nil sit durius, nullo pericŭlo ad proxĭmam legiōnem perventūros; si Gallia omnis cum Germānis consentiat, [9] unam esse in celeritāte posĭtam salūtem. Cottæ quidem atque eōrum, qui dissentīrent, consilium quem habēret[e] exĭtum? In quo si non [10] præsens pericŭlum, at certè longinquâ obsidiōne[f] fames esset pertimescenda."

30. [11] Hâc in utramque partem disputatiōne habĭtâ, cùm a Cottâ [12] primisque ordinĭbus acrĭter resisterētur,[g] [13] "Vincĭte," inquit, "si ita vultis," Sabīnus, [14] et id clariōre voce,[f] ut magna pars milĭtum exaudīret: "neque is sum," inquit, "qui[h] gravissĭmè ex vobis mortis pericŭlo terrear: [15] hi sapient, et si gravius quid accidĕrit, abs te ratiōnem reposcent: qui,[i] si per te liceat, perendĭno die cum proxĭmis hibernis conjuncti, commūnem cum relĭquis belli casum sustineant, [16] nec rejecti et relegāti longè ab cetĕris aut ferro aut fame intereant."

---

[a] 110, 1.
[b] § 145, R.
[c] 98, 2.
[d] § 123, R.
[e] § 140, 6.
[f] § 129, R.
[g] 67.
[h] § 141, Obs. 2, 2d, & 40.
[i] § 141, R. III. & Exp.

31. [1] Consurgĭtur[a] ex consilio; comprehendunt [2] utrumque et orant, "ne suâ dissensiōne et pertinaciâ rem in summum pericŭlum dedūcant:[b] facĭlem esse rem, seu maneant,[c] seu proficiscantur,[c] si modò unum omnes sentiant ac probent; contrà in dissensiōne nullam se salūtem perspicĕre." [3] Res disputatiōne ad mediam noctem perducĭtur. Tandem [4] dat Cotta permōtus manus; supĕrat sententia Sabīni. [5] Pronunciātur,[d] primâ luce itūros: consumĭtur vigiliis relĭqua pars noctis, cùm sua quisque miles circumspicĕret,[6] quid secum portāre posset,[e] quid ex instrumento hibernōrum relinquĕre cogerētur.[e] [7] Omnia excogitantur, quare nec sine pericŭlo maneātur et languōre milĭtum et [8] vigiliis pericŭlum augeātur. Primâ luce sic ex castris proficiscuntur, [9] ut quibus[f] esset persuāsum,[g] non ab hoste, sed ab homĭne amicissĭmo Ambiorīge consilium datum,[h] longissĭmo agmĭne[i] maximisque impedimentis.

32. At hostes, posteăquam ex nocturno fremĭtu vigiliisque de profectiōne eōrum sensērunt, collocātis insidiis bipartīte in silvis opportūno atque occulto loco, a[k] millĭbus passuum circĭter duōbus, Romanōrum adventum expectābant: et, cùm [10] se major pars agmĭnis in magnam convallem demisisset, ex utrâque parte ejus vallis subĭtò se ostendērunt, novissimosque premĕre et primos prohibēre ascensu atque iniquissĭmo nostris[l] loco prœlium committĕre cœpērunt.

33. Tum demum Titurius, [11] ut qui[g] nihil antè providisset, trepidāre,[m] concursāre, cohortesque disponĕre; [12] hæc tamen ipsa timĭdè atque ut[n] eum omnia deficĕre viderentur: quod[o] plerumque iis[p] accidĕre consuēvit, qui [13] in ipso negotio consilium capĕre coguntur. At Cotta, qui[g] cogitâsset, hæc posse in itinĕre accidĕre, atque ob eam causam profectiōnis

---

[a] 67, 5. Note.
[b] § 140, 1, 3d.
[c] § 140, 6.
[d] 51, 2.
[e] § 140, 5
[f] § 126, R. III.
[g] § 141, Obs. 4.
[h] 98, 2.
[i] § 129, R.
[k] § 132, Obs. 5.
[l] § 111, R.
[m] § 144, Obs. 6.
[n] § 140, 1, 2d, (*ita.*)
[o] 37, 9, Note. 3.
[p] § 112, R. IV.

[1] auctor non fuisset, nullâ in re commūni salūti[a] deĕrat, et in appellandis cohortandisque milităbus, imperatōris; et in pugnâ, milĭtis officia præstābat. Cùmque propter longitudĭnem agmĭnis [2] minùs facĭlè per se omnia obīre, et, quid quoque loco[c] faciendum esset,[b] providēre possent, [3] jussērunt pronunciāre, ut impedimenta relinquĕrent atque [4] in orbem consistĕrent. Quod[d] consilium etsi in ejusmŏdi casu reprehendendum non est, tamen [5] incommŏdè accĭdit: nam et nostris milităbus[e] spem minuit, et hostes ad pugnam alacriōres effēcit, quòd non sine summo timōre et desperatiōne id factum videbātur. Præterea accĭdit, quod[f] fiĕri necesse erat, ut [6] vulgò milĭtes ab signis discedĕrent,[h] [7] quæ quisque eōrum[g] carissĭma habēret[i] ab impedimentis petĕre atque abripĕre properāret,[h] clamōre ac fletu omnia complerentur.[h]

34. At [8] barbăris[a] consilium non defuit: nam duces eōrum totâ acie pronuntiāre jussērunt, "ne quis ab loco discedĕret; [9] illōrum[k] esse prædam, atque illis reservāri, quæcumque Romāni reliquissent: proinde omnia in victoriâ posĭta existimārent." [10] Erant et virtūte et numĕro pugnando[l] pares nostri, tamen etsi ab duce et a fortūnâ deserebantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte ponēbant, et, quoties quæque cohors procurrĕret, ab eâ parte magnus hostium numĕrus cadēbat. Quâ[d] re animadversâ, Ambiŏrix pronuntiāri jubet, ut procul tela conjiciant, neu propiùs accēdant, et, quam in partem Romāni impĕtum fecĕrint, [11] cedant (levitāte armōrum et quotidiānâ exercitatiōne [12] nihil iis nocēri posse[m]): rursus se ad signa recipientes insequantur.

35. Quo[d] præcepto ab iis diligentissĭmè observāto, cùm quæpiam cohors ex orbe excessĕrat atque impĕtum fecĕrat, hostes velocissĭmè refugiēbant. Intĕrim eam partem nudāri necesse erat et ab latĕre aperto tela recĭpi. Rursus, cùm

a § 112, R. I.
b § 140, 5.
c § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)
d 38.
e § 123, R.
f 37, 9, Note. 3.
g § 107, R. X.
h § 140, 1, 4th.
i § 141, Obs. 8.
k § 108, R. XII
l § 128, R,
m 66, & 68, 2.

in eum locum, unde erant progressi, reverti cœpĕrant, et ab iis, qui cessĕrant, et ab iis, qui proxĭmi[a] stetĕrant, circumveniebantur; sin autem [1]locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūti[b] locus relinquebātur, neque ab tantâ multitudĭne conjecta tela conferti vitāre potĕrant. Tamen tot incommŏdis conflictāti, multis vulnerĭbus acceptis, resistēbant et, magnâ parte diēi consumtâ, cùm a primâ luce [2]ad horam octāvam pugnarētur, nihil, quod ipsis[c] esset indignum, committēbant. Tum Tito Balventio,[d] qui superiōre anno primum pilum duxĕrat, viro forti et magnæ auctoritātis, [3]utrumque femur tragŭlâ transjicĭtur. Quintus Lucanius, ejusdem ordĭnis,[e] fortissĭmè pugnans, dum circumvento filio[f] [4]subvĕnit, interficĭtur: Lucius Cotta, legātus, omnes cohortes ordinesque adhortans, [5]in adversum os fundâ vulnerātur.

36. His rebus permōtus Quintus Titurius, cum procul Ambiorĭgem suos cohortantem conspexisset, interprĕtem suum, Cneium Pompeium, ad eum mittit, rogātum,[g] ut sibi[f] militibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respondit: "si velit secum collŏqui, licēre; sperāre, a multitudĭne impetrāri posse, quod[h] ad milĭtum salūtem pertineat;[i] [6]ipsi[k] vero nihil nocĭtum iri, inque eam rem se[l] suam fidem interponĕre." Ille cum Cottâ saucio communĭcat, "si videātur, pugnâ ut excēdant et cum Ambiorĭge unà colloquantur: sperāre, ab eo de suâ ac milĭtum salūte impetrāre posse." Cotta se ad armātum hostem itūrum negat [7]atque in eo constĭtit.

37. Sabīnus, quos [8]in præsentia tribūnos milĭtum circum se habēbat et primōrum ordĭnum centuriōnes, se sequi jubet, et, cum propiùs Ambiorĭgem[m] accessisset, jussus arma abjicĕre, imperātum facit, suisque, ut idem faciant, impĕrat. Intĕrim, dum de conditionĭbus inter se agunt, longiorque

[a] § 98, Obs. 10.
[b] § 126, R. III.
[c] § 119, R.
[d] § 110, Obs. 1.
[e] § 106, R. VII.
[f] § 112, Obs. 5, 2d.
[g] § 148, 1.
[h] 37, 2.
[i] § 140, 6.
[k] 66, 7.
[l] § 145, R.
[m] § 136, Obs. 5, (*ad*.)

consultò ab Ambiorĭge instituĭtur sermo, paulātim circumventus interficĭtur. Tum vero suo more [1] victoriam conclāmant atque ululātum tollunt, impetūque in nostros facto, ordĭnes perturbant. Ibi Lucius Cotta pugnans interficĭtur cum maxĭmâ parte milĭtum, relĭqui se in castra recipiunt, unde erant egressi: ex quibus Lucius Petrosidius aquilĭfer, cùm magnâ multitudĭne hostium premerētur, aquĭlam intra vallum projēcit, ipse pro castris fortissĭmè pugnans occidĭtur. [2] Illi ægrè ad noctem oppugnatiōnem sustĭnent: noctu [3] ad unum [a] omnes, desperātâ salūte, se ipsi [b] interficiunt. Pauci ex prœlio elapsi, incertis itinerĭbus [c] per silvas ad Titum Labiēnum legātum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum de rebus gestis certiōrem faciunt.

38. Hâc victoriâ [c] [4] sublātus Ambiŏrix, statim cum equitātu in Aduatŭcos, qui erant ejus regno [d] finitĭmi, proficiscĭtur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit, peditatumque se subsĕqui jubet. Re demonstrātâ, Aduatucisque concitātis, postĕro die in Nervios pervĕnit, hortaturque, "ne sui [e] in [f] perpetuum liberandi atque ulciscendi [g] Romānos, pro iis, quas accepĕrint,[h] injuriis, occasiōnem dimittant: interfectos esse [i] legātos duo magnamque partem exercĭtûs interîsse" [i] demonstrat; [5] "nihil esse negotii, subĭtò oppressam legiōnem, quæ cum Cicerōne hiĕmet,[k] interfĭci;" [6] se ad eam rem profitētur adjutōrem. [l] Facĭlè hâc oratiōne Nerviis persuādet.

39. Ităque, confestim dimissis nunciis ad Centrōnes, Grudios, Levăcos, Pleumoxios, Geidūnos, qui omnes sub eōrum imperio sunt, quàm maxĭmas manus possunt, cogunt, et de improvĭso ad Cicerōnis hiberna advŏlant, nondum ad eum famâ de Titurii morte perlātâ. [7] Huic quoque accĭdit, quod [m] fuit necesse, ut nonnulli milĭtes, qui lignatiōnis munitionis-

---

[a] 19, (*homĭnem.*)
[b] 33, 1.
[c] § 129, R.
[d] § 111, R.
[e] 112, 5.
[f] § 90. 6.
[g] 112, 1.
[h] § 141, Obs. 7.
[i] 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2.
[k] § 140, 6.
[l] § 97, R.
[m] 37, 9, Note 3

que causâ in silvas discessissent,[a] repentino equĭtum adventu interciperentur.[b] His circumventis, magnâ manu Eburōnes, Nervii, Aduatŭci atque horum omnium socii et clientes, legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt: nostri celerĭter ad arma concurrunt, vallum conscendunt. [1] Ægrè is dies sustentātur, quòd omnem spem hostes in celeritāte ponēbant, atque, hanc adepti [c] victoriam, in perpetuum se fore victōres [d] confidēbant.

40. Mittuntur ad Cæsărem confestim ab Cicerōne litěræ, magnis [2] proposĭtis præmiis, si pertulissent. Obsessis omnĭbus viis, missi [e] intercipiuntur. Noctu ex eâ materiâ, quam munitiōnis causâ comportavěrant, [3] turres admŏdum centum et viginti excitantur incredibĭli celeritāte: quæ [f] deesse opěri [g] videbantur, perficiuntur. Hostes postěro die, multo majorĭbus copiis coactis, castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Ab nostris eâdem ratiōne,[h] quà pridie, resistĭtur:[i] hoc idem deinceps relĭquis fit diēbus. Nulla pars nocturni tempŏris ad labōrem intermittĭtur: non ægris,[k] non vulnerātis, facultas quiētis datur: quæcunque[l] ad proxĭmi diēi oppugnatiōnem opus sunt, noctu comparantur: multæ [4] præustæ sudes, magnus muralium pilōrum numěrus instituĭtur; [5] turres contabulantur, pinnæ loricæque ex cratĭbus attexuntur. Ipse Cicěro, [6] cùm tenuissĭmâ valetudĭne [m] esset, ne nocturnum [n] quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut [o] ultro milĭtum concursu ac vocĭbus [7] sibi [p] parcěre cogerētur.

41. Tunc duces principesque Nerviōrum, qui [8] alĭquem sermōnis adĭtum causamque amicitiæ cum Cicerōne habēbant, collŏqui sese velle dicunt. [9] Factâ potestāte, eădem, quæ Ambiŏrix cum Titurio egěrat, commemŏrant, "omnem esse in armis Galliam, Germānos Rhenum transîsse, Cæsăr-

---

[a] § 141, R. I.
[b] § 140, 1, 4th.
[c] 105, 1.
[d] § 103, R.
[e] 19, (*homĭnes.*)
[f] 37, 2.
[g] § 112, R. I.
[h] § 129, R.
[i] 67, 1.
[k] § 126, R. III. & 19.
[l] 37, 8, Note. 2.
[m] § 106, R. VII.
[n] 121, Note. 2.
[o] § 140, 1, 1st, (*ita.*)
[p] § 112, R. V.

is reliquorumque hiberna oppugnāri." Addunt etiam de Sabīni morte. [1] Ambiorĭgem ostentant fidēi faciendæ causâ: "errāre [2] eos" dicunt, "si quicquam ab his præsidii sperent,[a] qui suis rebus[b] diffīdant;[c] sese tamen [3] hoc esse in Cicerōnem Populumque Romānum anĭmo,[d] ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsent[m] atque hanc inveterascĕre consuetudĭnem nolint:[m] [4] licēre illis[e] incolumĭbus per se ex hibernis discedĕre, et, quascumque in partes velint, sine metu proficisci." Cicĕro ad hæc unum modò respondit. "Non esse consuetudĭnem Popŭli Romāni, ullam accipĕre ab hoste armāto conditiōnem: si ab armis discedĕre velint,[a] se[f] [5] adjutōre utantur,[g] legatosque ad Cæsărem mittant:[g] sperāre, [6] pro ejus justitiâ, quæ petiĕrint,[c] impetratūros."

42. Ab hâc spe repulsi Nervii, vallo[h] pedum undĕcim et fossâ pedum quindĕcim hiberna cingunt. Hæc et superiōrum annōrum consuetudĭne[h] a nostris cognovĕrant, et, quosdam de exercĭtu nacti captīvos, ab his docebantur: [7] sed, nullâ ferramentōrum copiâ,[i] quæ sunt ad hunc usum idonea, gladiis[h] cespĭtem circumcidĕre, manĭbus[h] [8] sagulisque [9] terram exhaurīre cogebantur. Quâ[k] quidem ex re homĭnum multitūdo cognosci potuit: nam minùs horis tribus [10] millium decem in circuĭtu munitiōnem perfecērunt: reliquisque diēbus turres ad altitudĭnem valli, [11] falces testudinesque, quas iīdem captīvi docuĕrant, parāre ac facĕre cœpērunt.

43. Septĭmo oppugnatiōnis die, maxĭmo coorto vento, [12] ferventes fusĭli ex argillâ[l] glandes fundis et [13] fervefacta jacŭla in casas, quæ more[h] Gallĭco stramentis erant tectæ, jacĕre cœpērunt. Hæ celerĭter ignem comprehendērunt et venti magnitudĭne[h] in omnem castrōrum locum [14] distulērunt. Hostes, maxĭmo clamōre[h] insecūti, quasi partâ jam atque explorātâ victoriâ, turres testudinesque [15] agĕre et scalis val-

---

[a] § 140, 2.
[b] § 112, R. V.
[c] § 141, Obs. 3.
[d] § 106. R. VII
[e] 66, 2.
[f] § 121, R. XXVI.
[g] § 139, 2. § 42.Obs.5.
[h] § 129, R
[i] 110, 1.
[k] 38.
[l] § 128, Obs. 2.
[m] § 140. 1, 1st.

lum ascendĕre cœpērunt. At tanta milĭtum virtus atque ea[a] præsentia anĭmi fuit, ut, cùm undĭque flammâ torrerentur,[b] maximâque telōrum multitudĭne premerentur,[b] suăque omnia impedimenta atque omnes fortūnas conflagrāre intelligĕrent[b] non modò [1] demigrandi causâ de vallo decedĕret[c] nemo, sed pæne ne respicĕret[c] quidem quisquam; ac tum omnes [2] acerrĭmè fortissimèque pugnārent. Hic dies nostris[d] longè gravissĭmus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit eventum, ut eo die maxĭmus hostium numĕrus vulnerarētur[c] atque interficerētur, ut[e] se sub ipso vallo constipavĕrant [3] recessumque primis[f] ultĭmi non dabant. Paulum quidem intermissâ flammâ, et quodam loco[g] [4] turri[h] adactâ et contingente vallum, tertiæ cohortis centuriōnes ex eo, quo[g] stabant,[i] loco recessērunt suosque omnes removērunt; nutu[k] vocibusque hostes, "si introīre vellent," vocāre cœpērunt, [5] quorum progrĕdi ausus est nemo. Tum ex omni parte lapidĭbus[h] conjectis [6] deturbāti, turrisque succensa est.

44. Erant in eâ legiōne fortissĭmi viri centuriōnes, [7] qui jam primis ordinĭbus[l] appropinquārent, Tito Pulfio et Lucius Varēnus. Hi perpetuas controversias inter se habēbant, quinam anteferrētur,[m] omnibusque annis de loco summis simultatĭbus[k] contendēbant. Ex iis Pulfio, cùm acerrĭmè ad munitiōnes pugnarētur, "Quid dubĭtas," inquit, "Varēne? aut quem locum probandæ virtūtis tuæ [8] spectas? hic, hic dies de nostris controversiis judicābit." Hæc cùm dixisset,[b] procēdit extra munitiōnes, [9] quàque pars hostium confertissĭma visa est, in eam irrumpit. Ne Varēnus quidem tum vallo sese contĭnet, sed omnium verĭtus existimatiōnem subsequĭtur. Tum, mediocri spatio[h] relicto, Pulfio pilum in hostes mittit atque unum ex multitudĭne [10] procurrentem transjĭcit, quo[h] percusso et exanimāto, [11] hunc scutis protĕ-

---

[a] 28, 1.
[b] § 140, Obs. 4.
[c] § 140, 1, 1st.
[d] § 111, R.
[e] § 140, Obs. 1.
[f] § 123, R. & 19.
[g] § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)
[h] 109, 2.
[i] § 44, II. 2.
[k] § 129, R.
[l] § 112, R. IV.
[m] § 140, 5.

gunt hostes, [1] in illum tela universi conjiciunt neque dant regrediendi facultātem. Transfigĭtur scutum Pulfiōni[a] et verūtum in balteo defigĭtur. Avertit hic casus vagīnam et gladium educĕre conanti[b] dextram morātur manum; impedītum[c] hostes circumsistunt. [2] Succurrit inimīcus illi[d] Varēnus et laboranti[e] subvĕnit. Ad [3] hunc se confestim a Pulfiōne omnis multitūdo convertit, [4] illum verūto transfixum arbitrantur. Occursat ociùs gladio cominusque rem gerit Varēnus atque, uno interfecto, relĭquos paulum propellit: dùm cupidiùs instat, [5] in locum dejectus inferiōrem concĭdit. Huic rursus circumvento fert subsidium Pulfio atque ambo incolŭmes, complurĭbus interfectis, summâ cum laude sese intra munitiōnes recipiunt. Sic fortūna [6] in contentiōne et certamĭne utrumque versāvit, ut alter altĕri[d] inimīcus auxilio[f] salutīque esset, neque dijudicāri posset, uter utri[g] virtūte[h] anteferendus viderētur.

45. [7] Quanto[i] erat in dies gravior atque asperior oppugnatio, et maxĭmè quòd, magnâ parte milĭtum confectâ vulnerĭbus, res ad paucitātem defensōrum pervenĕrat, tanto[i] crebriōres litĕræ nuntiīque ad Cæsărem mittebantur: quorum pars deprehensa in conspectu nostrōrum milĭtum cum cruciātu necabātur. Erat [8] unus intus Nervius, nomĭne Vertĭco,[9] loco natus honesto, qui a primâ obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfugĕrat, suamque ei fidem præstitĕrat. Hic [10] servo[k] spe libertātis magnisque persuādet præmiis, ut litĕras ad Cæsărem defĕrat. Has ille in jacŭlo illigātas effert, et, Gallus inter Gallos sine ullâ suspiciōne versātus, ad Cæsărem pervĕnit. Ab eo[l] de [11] pericŭlis Cicerōnis legionisque cognoscĭtur.

46. Cæsar, acceptis litĕris [12] horâ circĭter undecĭmâ diēi, statim nuncium in Bellovăcos ad Marcum Crassum quæs-

---

[a] § 110, Obs. 1,
[b] 19, (*ei*,) & [a].
[c] 19, (*eum*.)
[d] § 111, R.
[e] § 112, R. V.
[f] § 114, R.
[g] § 126, R. III.
[h] § 128, R.
[i] § 132, R. XLIII. Obs. 6, & 44, 8, & 47.
[k] 63, & § 123, R.
[l] 67, 1.

tōrem mittit; cujus hiberna abĕrant ab eo millia passuum viginti quinque. Jubet mediâ nocte legiōnem proficisci,[a] celeriterque ad se venīre. Exiit cum nuncio Crassus, Altĕrum[b] ad Caium Fabium legātum mittit, ut in Atrebatium fines legiōnem addūcat,[c] [1] quà sibi[d] iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēno, [2] si reipublĭcæ commŏdo facĕre posset, cum legiōne ad fines Nerviōrum veniat:[c] relĭquam partem exercĭtûs, quòd paulò abĕrat longiùs, non putat expectandam;[e] equĭtes circĭter quadringentos ex proxĭmis hibernis cogit.

47. Horâ circĭter tertiâ ab antecursorĭbus de Crassi adventu certior factus, eo die millia[f] passuum viginti progredĭtur. Crassum Samarobrīvæ[g] præfĭcit, legionemque ei[g] attribuit, quòd ibi impedimenta exercĭtûs, obsĭdes civitātum, [3] litĕras publĭcas, frumentumque omne, quod eò [4] tolerandæ hiĕmis causâ devexĕrat, relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, non ita multum morātus, in itinĕre cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus, interĭtu Sabīni et cæde cohortium cognĭtâ, cùm omnes ad eum Trevirōrum copiæ venissent,[h] verĭtus, ne,[i] si ex hibernis fugæ simĭlem profectiōnem fecisset, hostium impĕtum sustinēre non posset, præsertim quos[k] recenti victoriâ efferri sciret, litĕras Cæsări remittit, quanto cum pericŭlo legiōnem ex hibernis eductūrus esset:[l] [5] rem gestam in Eburonĭbus perscrībit: docet, omnes peditātûs equitatûsque copias Trevirōrum tria millia[f] passuum longè ab suis castris consedisse.

48. Cæsar, consilio ejus probāto, etsi, [6] opiniōne[m] trium legiōnum dejectus, ad duas rediĕrat, tamen unum commūnis salūtis auxilium in celeritāte ponēbat. Venit magnis itinerĭbus in Nerviōrum fines. Ibi ex captīvis cognoscit, quæ apud Cicerōnem gerantur,[l] quantōque in pericŭlo res sit.[l] Tum cuidam[g] ex equitĭbus Gallis magnis præmiis persuādet,

---

a 90, 4.
b 19, (*nuncium.*)
c § 140, 1, 3d.
d 113, 5.
e 108, 4.
f § 132, R.
g § 123, R.
h § 140. Obs. 3.
i § 140, Obs. 6.
k § 145, R. & 91, 4.
l § 140, 5.
m § 136, R. LII.

utì ad Cicerōnem epistŏlam defĕrat. Hanc Græcis conscriptam litĕris mittit, ne, interceptâ epistŏlâ, nostra ab hostĭbus consilia cognoscantur.[a] 1 Si adīre non possit, monet, ut tragŭlam cum epistŏlâ, 2 ad amentum deligātâ, intra munitiōnes castrōrum abjiciat.[b] In litĕris scribit, se cum legionĭbus profectum celerĭter affŏre: hortātur, ut pristĭnam virtūtem retineat. Gallus, pericŭlum verĭtus, ut erat præceptum, tragŭlam mittit. Hæc 3 casu ad turrim adhæsit, neque[c] ab nostris biduo animadversa; tertio die a quodam milĭte conspicĭtur; demta ad Cicerōnem defertur. Ille 4 perlectam in conventu milĭtum recĭtat, maximâque omnes lætitiâ affĭcit. Tum fumi incendiōrum procul videbantur, quæ res omnem dubitatiōnem adventûs legiōnum 5 expŭlit.

49. Galli, re cognĭtâ per exploratōres, obsidiōnem relinquunt, ad Cæsărem omnĭbus copiis contendunt; eæ erant armatōrum circĭter millia[d] sexaginta. Cicĕro, datâ facultāte, Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne, quem suprà demonstravĭmus, repĕtit; qui litĕras ad Cæsărem refĕrat;[e] hunc[f] admŏnet, iter cautè diligenterque faciat:[g] perscrībit in litĕris, hostes ab se discessisse, omnemque ad eum multitudĭnem convertisse. Quibus[h] litĕris circĭter mediâ nocte Cæsar allātis suos facit certiōres, eosque ad dimicandum anĭmo confirmat: postĕro die luce primâ movet castra, et circĭter millia[i] passuum quatuor progressus, trans vallem magnam et rivum multitudĭnem hostium conspicātur. Erat magni pericŭli[k] res, cum tantis copiis inīquo loco[l] dimicāre. Tum, quoniam liberātum obsidiōne[m] Cicerōnem sciēbat, eoque omnīno remittendum de celeritāte existimābat, consēdit, et, quàm æquissĭmo potest loco,[l] castra commūnit. Atque hæc, etsi erant exigua per se, vix homĭnum[k] millium septem, præsertim nullis cum impedimentis, 6 tamen angustiis viārum

---

[a] § 140, 1, 2d.
[b] § 140, 1, 3d.
[c] § 93, 1.
[d] § 136, R. XLVIII.
[e] § 141, Obs. 2 4th.
[f] § 124, R.
[g] § 140, 1,3d,&Obs. 5.
[h] 38.
[i] § 132, R. XLII
[k] § 106, R. VII.
[l] § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)
[m] § 126, R. V

quàm maxĭmè potest, contrăhit, eo consilio, ut in summam contemtiōnem hostĭbus[a] veniat. Intĕrim, speculatorĭbus in omnes partes dimissis, explōrat, quo commodissĭmo[b] itinĕre vallem transīre possit.

50. Eo die, parvŭlis equestrĭbus prœliis ad aquam factis, utrīque sese suo loco contĭnent; [1] Galli, quòd ampliōres copias, quæ nondum convenĕrant, expectābant; Cæsar, si fortè timōris simulatiōne hostes [2] in suum locum elicĕre posset, ut citra vallem pro castris prœlio contendĕret;[c] si id efficĕre non posset, ut, explorātis itinerĭbus, minōre cum pericŭlo vallem rivumque transīret.[c] Primâ luce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit, prœliumque cum nostris equitĭbus committit. Cæsar consultò equĭtes cedĕre,[d] seque in castra recipĕre[d] jubet; simul ex omnĭbus partĭbus castra altiōre vallo munīri,[d] [3] portasque obstrui, atque in his administrandis rebus quàm maxĭmè concursāri et cum simulatiōne timōris agi jubet.

51. Quibus omnĭbus rebus hostes invitāti copias transdūcunt, aciemque inīquo loco constituunt; nostris verò [4] etiam de vallo deductis, propiùs accēdunt, et tela intra munitiōnem ex omnĭbus partĭbus conjiciunt; præconibusque[e] circummissis pronuntiāri jubent, "seu quis Gallus seu Romānus velit ante horam tertiam [5] ad se transīre, sine pericŭlo licēre; post id tempus non fore potestātem:" [6] ac sic nostros contemsērunt, ut obstructis in speciem portis singŭlis ordinĭbus cespĭtum, quòd [7] eâ non posse introrumpĕre videbantur, alii vallum manu scindĕre, alii fossas complēre incipĕrent. Tum Cæsar, omnĭbus portis eruptiōne factâ equitatūque emisso, celerĭter hostes dat in fugam, sic, utì omnīno pugnandi causâ resistĕret nemo; magnumque ex eis numĕrum occīdit, atque omnes armis[f] exuit.

52. [8] Longiùs prosĕqui verĭtus, quòd silvæ paludesque intercedēbant, neque etiam parvŭlo detrimento [9] illōrum locum

---

[a] § 110, Obs. 1. [c] § 140, 1, 2d. [e] 109, 2.
[b] § 98, Obs. 10. [d] 90, 4. [f] § 125, R.

relinqui vidēbat, omnĭbus suis incolumĭbus copiis eōdem die ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Institūtas turres, testudĭnes, munitionesque hostium admirātur: [1]productâ legiōne cognoscit, non decĭmum quemque esse relictum milĭtem sine vulnĕre. Ex his omnĭbus judĭcat rebus, quanto cum pericŭlo et quantâ cum virtūte res sint[a] administrātæ: Cicerōnem [2]pro ejus merĭto, legionemque collaudat: centuriōnes singillātim tribunosque milĭtum appellat, quorum egregiam fuisse virtūtem testimonio Cicerōnis cognovĕrat. De casu Sabīni et Cottæ certiùs ex captīvis cognoscit. Postĕro die conciōne habĭtâ [3]rem gestam propōnit, milĭtes consolātur et confirmat: quòd detrimentum [4]culpâ et temeritāte legāti sit[b] acceptum, [5]hoc æquiōre anĭmo ferendum docet, [6]quòd, beneficio Deōrum immortalium et virtūte eōrum [7]expiāto incommŏdo, neque hostĭbus diutīna lætatio, neque ipsis longior dolor relinquātur.[c]

53. Intĕrim ad Labiēnum per Remos incredibĭli celeritāte de victoriâ Cæsăris fama perfertur, ut, cùm ab hibernis Cicerōnis abesset millia passuum circĭter sexaginta, eòque [8]post horam nonam diēi Cæsar pervenisset, ante mediam noctem ad portas castrōrum clamor orirētur,[d] quo clamōre significatio victoriæ gratulatiōque ab Remis Labiēno[e] fiĕret. Hâc famâ ad Trevĭros perlātâ, Indutiomārus, qui postĕro die castra Labiēni oppugnāre decrevĕrat, noctu profŭgit, copiasque omnes in Trevĭros redūcit. Cæsar Fabium cum legiōne in sua remittit hiberna, ipse cum tribus legionĭbus circum Samarobrīvam [9]trinis hibernis hiemāre constituit; et, quòd tanti motus Galliæ extitĕrant, totam hiĕmem ipse ad exercĭtum manēre decrēvit. Nam illo incommŏdo de Sabīni morte perlāto, omnes ferè Galliæ civitātes de bello [10]consultābant, nuncios legationesque in omnes partes dimittēbant, et [11]quid relĭqui consilii[f] capĕrent[a] atque unde initium belli fiĕret, explorābant, nocturnăque in locis desertis [12]concĭlia

[a] § 140, 5.
[b] § 140, Obs. 2.
[c] 77, 5.
[d] § 140, 1, 3d.
[e] § 126, R. III.
[f] § 106. R. VIII.

habēbant. Neque ullum ferè totius hiĕmis tempus sine solicitudĭne Cæsăris intercessit, [1]quin[a] alĭquem de conciliis ac motu Gallōrum nuncium accipĕret.[a] In his ab Lucio Roscio legāto, quem legiōni decĭmæ tertiæ præfecĕrat, certior est factus, magnas Gallōrum copias eārum civitātum, quæ [2]Armorĭcæ appellantur, oppugnandi sui causâ convenisse: neque longiùs[b] millia passuum octo ab hibernis suis abfuisse, sed nuncio allāto de victoriâ Cæsăris, discessisse, adeo ut fugæ simĭlis discessus viderētur.

54. At Cæsar, principĭbus cujusque civitātis ad se evocātis, aliàs[c] territando, cùm se scire, quæ fiĕrent, denunciāret, aliàs cohortando, magnam partem Galliæ in officio tenuit. Tamen Senŏnes, quæ est civĭtas in primis firma et magnæ inter Gallos auctoritātis, Cavarīnum, quem Cæsar apud eos regem constituĕrat (cujus frater Moritasgus, adventu in Galliam Cæsăris, cujusque majōres regnum obtinuĕrant), interficĕre publĭco consilio conāti, cùm ille præsensisset ac profugisset, usque ad fines insecūti regno[d] domōque expulērunt: et, missis ad Cæsărem satisfaciendi causâ legātis, cùm is omnem ad se senātum venīre jussisset, [3]dicto audientes non fuĕrunt. [4]Tantum[e] apud homĭnes barbăros valuit, esse repertos alĭquos princĭpes belli inferendi, tantamque omnĭbus voluntātum commutatiōnem [5]attŭlit, ut præter Æduos et Remos, quos [6]præcipuo semper honōre Cæsar habuit, [7]altĕros pro vetĕre ac perpetuâ erga Popŭlum Romānum fide, [7]altĕros pro recentĭbus Gallĭci belli officiis, [8]nulla ferè civĭtas fuĕrit non[f] suspecta nobis. [9]Idque adeo haud scio mirandumne sit, cùm complurĭbus aliis de causis, tum maxĭmè,, [10]quòd, qui virtūte belli omnĭbus gentĭbus præferebantur, tantum se ejus opiniōnis deperdidisse, ut a Popŭlo Romāno imperia perferrent, gravissĭmè dolēbant.

55. Trevĭri vero atque Induciomārus totius hiĕmis nullum tempus intermisērunt, quin[a] trans Rhenum legātos mittĕrent,

[a] § 140, 3.
[b] § 120, Obs. 3.
[c] 124, 12.
[d] § 136, R. LII.
[e] § 116, Obs. 3.
[f] § 134, Obs. 3.

civitātes solicitārent, pecunias pollicerentur, magnâ parte exercĭtûs nostri interfectâ, multo minōrem superesse dicĕrent partem. Neque tamen ulli civitāti[a] Germanōrum persuadēri potuit, ut Rhenum transīret, cùm "se bis expertos"[b] dicĕrent, "Ariovisti bello et Tenchtherōrum transĭtu, non esse ampliùs fortūnam tentandam." 1 Hâc spe[c] lapsus Indutiomārus, nihĭlo minùs copias cogĕre, exercēre, a finitĭmis equos parāre, exŭles damnatosque totâ Galliâ[d] magnis præmiis ad se allicĕre cœpit. Ac tantam sibi jam iis rebus in Galliâ auctoritātem comparavĕrat, ut undĭque ad eum legatiōnes concurrĕrent,[e] gratiam atque amicitiam publĭcè privatimque petĕrent.

56. Ubi intellexit 2 ultro ad se venīri, altĕrâ ex parte Senŏnes Carnutesque conscientiâ facinŏris instigāri, altĕrâ Nervios Aduatucosque bellum Romānis parāre, neque sibi[f] voluntariōrum copias defŏre, si ex finĭbus suis progrĕdi cœpisset: armātum concilium indĭcit (hoc more Gallōrum est initium belli), quo lege commūni omnes pubĕres armāti convenīre consuêrunt; qui[g] ex iis novissĭmus venit, in conspectu multitudĭnis 3 omnĭbus cruciatĭbus affectus necātur. In eo concilio Cingetorĭgem, 4 alterius princĭpem[h] factiōnis, genĕrum suum (quem suprà demonstravĭmus, 5 Cæsăris secūtum fidem, ab eo non discessisse), hostem judĭcat, bonĭque ejus publĭcat. His rebus confectis, in concilio pronuntiat, arcessītum se a Senonĭbus et Carnutĭbus aliisque complurĭbus Galliæ civitatĭbus, 6 huc iter factūrum[i] per fines Remōrum, eorumque agros populatūrum,[i] ac priùs, quàm id faciat, Labiēni castra oppugnatūrum:[i] quæ fiĕri velit, præcĭpit.

57. Labiēnus, cùm et loci natūrâ et manu munitissĭmis castris sese tenēret, de suo ac legiōnis pericŭlo nihil timēbat; ne quam occasiōnem rei bene gerendæ dimittĕret, cogitābat. Ităque a Cingetorĭge atque ejus propinquis ora-

---

[a] § 126, R. III. & 68, 2. [b] 98, 2. [c] § 136, Obs. 5, (*de.*) [d] § 136, Obs. 5, (*ex.*) [e] § 140, 1, 1st. [f] § 112, R. I. [g] 37, 3. [h] § 97, R. [i] 94, 1, 2d, & 100, 1.

tiōne Indutiomāri cognĭtâ, quam in concilio habuĕrat, nuncios mittit ad finitĭmas civitātes, equitesque undĭque evŏcat: iis[a] certum diem conveniendi dicit. Intĕrim propè quotidie cum omni equitātu Indutiomārus [1] sub castris ejus vagabātur, aliàs[b] ut situm castrōrum cognoscĕret,[c] aliàs[b] colloquendi aut territandi causà: equĭtes plerumque omnes tela intra vallum conjiciēbant. Labiēnus suos intra munitiōnes continēbat, timorisque opiniōnem, [2]quibuscumque[d] potĕrat rebus, augēbat.

58. Cum majōre in dies contemtiōne Indutiomārus ad[e] castra accedĕret, nocte unâ, [3] intromissis equitĭbus omnium finitimārum civitātum, [4] quos arcessendos curavĕrat, tantâ diligentiâ omnes suos custodiis intra castra continuit, ut [5] nullâ ratiōne ea res enunciāri aut ad Trevĭros perferri posset.[c] Intĕrim ex consuetudĭne quotidiānâ Indutiomārus ad castra accēdit, atque ibi magnam partem diēi consūmit; equĭtes tela conjiciunt, et [6] magnâ cum contumeliâ verbōrum nostros ad pugnam evŏcant. Nullo ab nostris dato responso, ubi visum est, sub vespĕrum [7] dispersi[f] ac dissipāti[f] discēdunt. Subĭtò Labiēnus duābus portis omnem equitātum emittit; [8] præcĭpit atque interdĭcit, proterrĭtis hostĭbus atque in fugam conjectis (quod[g] fore, sicut accĭdit, vidēbat), unum omnes petant[h] Indutiomārum; neu quis quem priùs vulnĕret,[h] quàm illum interfectum vidĕrit, quòd [9] morâ reliquōrum spatium nactum illum effugĕre nolēbat: magna propōnit iis,[a] qui occidĕrint,[i] præmia: submittit cohortes equitĭbus subsidio. [10] Comprŏbat homĭnis consilium fortūna; et, cùm unum omnes petĕrent, in ipso flumĭnis vado deprehensus Indutiomārus interficĭtur, caputque ejus refertur in castra: redeuntes equĭtes, quos possunt, consectantur atque occīdunt. Hâc re cognĭtâ, omnes Eburōnum et Nerviōrum, quæ convenĕrant, copiæ discēdunt; pauloque habuit post id factum Cæsar quietiōrem Galliam.

---

a § 123, R.
b 124, 12.
c § 140, 1, 2d.
d 37, 7, Note 2.
e § 136, Obs. 7.
f § 98, Obs. 10.
g 37, 9, Note 3.
h § 140, 1, 3d.
i § 141, Obs. 3.

BOOK VI.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. Commotions throughout nearly all Gaul in consequence of the overthrow and death of Tiberius—Chap. 1–8. II. Cæsar's expedition against the Suevi—Chap. 9–28. III. Punishment of Ambiorix and the Eburones—Chap. 29–44.

1. MULTIS de causis Cæsar, majōrem Galliæ motum expectans, per Marcum Silānum, Caium Antistium Regīnum, Titum Sextium, legātos, [1] dilectum habēre instituit: simul ab Cneio Pompeio proconsŭle petit, [2] quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperio reipublĭcæ causâ remanēret,[a] quos [b] ex Cisalpīnâ Galliâ consŭlis sacramento rogavisset,[a] ad signa convenīre et ad se proficisci jubēret: [c] magni [d] interesse etiam in relĭquum tempus ad opiniōnem Galliæ existĭmans, tantas vidēri Italiæ facultātes,[e] ut, si quid esset in bello detrimenti acceptum, non modò id brevi tempŏre [3]sarcīri, sed etiam majorĭbus adaugēri copiis posset.[f] [4] Quod [g] cùm Pompeius et reipublĭcæ et amicitiæ tribuisset,[h] celerĭter confecto per suos dilectu, tribus ante exactam hiĕmem et constitūtis et adductis legionĭbus, duplicatōque eārum cohortium numĕro, quas cum Quinto Titurio amisĕrat, et celeritāte et copiis docuit, quid Popŭli Romāni disciplīna atque opes possent.[i]

2. Interfecto Indutiomāro, [5] ut docuĭmus, ad ejus propinquos a Trevĭris imperium defertur. Illi finitĭmos Germānos solicitāre et pecuniam pollicēri non desistunt: cùm ab proxĭmis impetrāre non possent, ulteriōres tentant. Inventis nonnullis civitatĭbus, jurejurando inter se confirmant, [6] obsidibusque de pecuniâ cavent: Ambiorĭgem sibi societāte et fœdĕre adjungunt. Quibus rebus cognĭtis, Cæsar, cùm

[a] § 141, Obs. 7.
[b] 37. (*milĭtes.*)
[c] § 140, 1, 3d.
[d] § 122 R. XXVIII.
[e] § 145, R.
[f] § 140, 1, 1st.
[g] 38.
[h] 81, 1.
[i] § 140, 5.

undĭque bellum parāri vidēret, Nervios,[a] Aduatŭcos, Menapios, adjunctis Cisrhenānis omnĭbus Germānis, esse[b] in armis, Senŏnes[a] [1]ad imperātum non venīre, et cum Carnutĭbus finitimisque civitatĭbus consilia communicāre, a Trevĭris Germānos[a] crebris legationĭbus solicitāri;[b] maturiùs sibi[c] de bello cogitandum putāvit.

3. Ităque [2]nondum hiĕme confectâ, proxĭmis quatuor coactis legionĭbus, de improvīso in fines Nerviōrum contendit, et priùs, quàm illi aut convenīre aut profugĕre possent,[d] magno pecŏris atque homĭnum numĕro capto, atque eâ prædâ militĭbus[e] concessâ, vastatisque agris, in deditiōnem venīre atque obsĭdes sibi dare coēgit. Eo celerĭter confecto negotio, rursus in hiberna legiōnes reduxit. Concilio Galliæ primo[f] vere, [3]utì instituĕrat, indicto, cùm relĭqui, præter Senŏnes, Carnūtes, Trevirosque, venissent, initium belli ac defectiōnis hoc esse arbitrātus,[g] ut [4]omnia postponĕre viderētur, concilium Lutetiam Parisiōrum transfert. Confīnes erant hi Senonĭbus,[h] civitatemque patrum memoriâ conjunxĕrant; [5]sed ab hoc consilio abfuisse existimabantur. [6]Hâc re pro suggestu pronunciātâ, eōdem die cum legionĭbus in Senŏnes proficiscĭtur, magnisque itinerĭbus eò pervĕnit.

4. Cognīto ejus adventu, Acco, qui princeps ejus consilii fuĕrat, jubet in oppĭda multitudĭnem convenīre; [7]conantĭbus,[e] priusquàm id effĭci posset,[d] adesse Romānos[a] nunciātur; necessariò [8]sententiâ desistunt, legatosque [9]deprecandi causâ ad Cæsărem mittunt; adeunt per Æduos, quorum antiquĭtùs erat in fide civĭtas. Libenter Cæsar petentĭbus Æduis dat veniam, excusationemque accĭpit; [10]quòd æstīvum tempus instantis belli, non quæstiōnis, esse arbitrabātur. Obsidĭbus imperātis centum, hos Æduis custodiendos[i] tradit. Eòdem Carnūtes legātos obsidesque mittunt, usi deprecatorĭbus Remis, quorum erant in clientēlâ: eădem

a § 145, R.
b 96, 2.
c § 147, R. LXI.
d § 140, 4.
e § 126, R. III.
f 17, 1.
g 106, 1.
h § 111, R.
i 107, 1.

ferunt responsa. Perăgit concilium Cæsar, equitesque impěrat civitatĭbus.[a]

5. Hâc parte Galliæ pacātâ, [1] totus et mente et anĭmo in bellum Trevirōrum et Ambiorĭgis insistit. Cavarīnum cum equitātu Senŏnum secum proficisci jubet, [2] ne quis aut ex hujus iracundiâ, aut ex eo, quod meruĕrat, odio civitātis, motus existat.[b] His rebus constitūtis, quòd [3] pro explorāto habēbat, Ambiorĭgem prœlio non esse concertatūrum, [4] relĭqua ejus consilia anĭmo[c] circumspiciēbat. Erant Menapii propinqui Eburōnum finĭbus,[d] [5] perpetuis paludĭbus[e] silvisque munīti, qui uni ex Galliâ de pace ad Cæsărem legātos nunquam misĕrant. Cum iis esse hospitium Ambiorĭgi[e] sciēbat: item per Trevĭros venisse Germānis[f] in amicitiam, cognovĕrat. Hæc priùs [6] illi[g] detrahenda auxilia existimābat, quàm ipsum bello lacessĕret; ne, desperātâ salūte, aut se in Menapios abdĕret, aut [7] cum Transrhenānis congrĕdi cogerētur. Hoc inĭto consilio, totius exercĭtus impedimenta ad Labiēnum in Trevĭros mittit, duasque legiōnes ad eum proficisci jubet; ipse cum legionĭbus expedītis quinque in Menapios proficiscĭtur. Illi, nullâ coactâ [8] manu, [9] loci præsidio[h] freti, in silvas paludesque confugiunt, suăque eòdem confĕrunt.

6. Cæsar, partītis copiis cum Caio Fabio legāto et Marco Crasso quæstōre, celeriterque [10] effectis pontĭbus [11] adit tripartītò, ædificia vicosque incendit, magno pecŏris atque homĭnum numĕro[i] potītur. Quibus rebus coacti Menapii, legātos ad eum pacis petendæ causâ mittunt. Ille, obsidĭbus acceptis hostium se habitūrum numĕro confirmat, si aut Ambiorĭgem, aut ejus legātos, finĭbus suis recepissent. His confirmātis rebus, Commium Atrebātem cum equitātu custōdis loco in Menapiis relinquit; ipse in Trevĭros proficiscĭtur.

---

[a] § 123, R. & 5, I.
[b] § 140, 1, 2d.
[c] § 129, R
[d] § 111, R.
[e] § 112, R. II.
[f] § 110, Obs. 1.
[g] § 126, R.III. & 5,1.
[h] § 119, R.
[i] § 121, R. XXVI

7. Dum hæc a Cæsăre geruntur, Trevĭri, magnis coactis peditātûs equitatûsque copiis, Labiēnum[a] cum unâ legiōne, quæ in eōrum finĭbus hiemābat, adorīri parābant: jamque ab eo non longiùs bidui viâ[b] abĕrant, cùm duas venisse[c] legiōnes missu Cæsăris cognoscunt. Posĭtis castris a[d] millíbus[b] passuum quindĕcim, auxilia Germanōrum expectāre constituunt. Labiēnus, hostium cognĭto consilio, sperans, temeritāte[e] eōrum fore alĭquam dimicandi facultātem, præsidio[f] cohortium quinque impedimentis relicto, cum viginti quinque cohortĭbus magnōque equitātu contra hostem proficiscĭtur, et, mille passuum intermisso spatio,[f] castra commūnit. Erat inter Labiēnum atque hostem diffĭcĭli transĭtu[g] flumen ripisque præruptis: hoc neque ipse transīre in anĭmo habēbat, neque hostes transitūros existimābat. [1]Augebātur auxiliōrum quotidie spes. [2]Loquĭtur in consilio palam, "quoniam Germāni appropinquāre dicantur,[h] sese suas exercitûsque fortūnas [3]in dubium non devocatūrum, et postĕro die primâ luce castra motūrum." Celerĭter hæc ad hostes deferuntur, ut[i] ex magno Gallōrum equitātûs numĕro nonnullos [4]Gallĭcis rebus[k] favēre natūra cogēbat. Labiēnus noctu, tribūnis milĭtum [5]primisque ordinĭbus coactis, quid sui sit consilii, propōnit, et, quo faciliùs hostĭbus timōris det[l] suspiciōnem, majōre strepĭtu[e] et tumultu, quàm Popŭli Romāni fert consuetūdo, castra movēri jubet. His rebus[e] fugæ simĭlem profectiōnem effĭcit. Hæc quoque per exploratōres ante lucem, in tantâ propinquitāte castrōrum, ad hostes deferuntur.

8. Vix agmen novissĭmum extra munitiōnes processĕrat, cùm Galli, cohortāti inter se, "ne sperātam prædam ex manĭbus dimittĕrent; [6]longum esse, perterrĭtis Romānis, Germanōrum auxilium expectāre, neque suam pati dignitā-

---

a § 136, R. LII.
b § 132, R. XLII. & § 120, Obs. 3.
c 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.
d § 132, Obs. 5.
e § 129, R.
f 109, 2.
g § 106, R. VII.
h § 140, 6.
i § 140, Obs. 1.
k § 112, R. V.
l § 140, 1, 2d.

tem, ut tantis copiis tam exiguam manum,[a] præsertim fugientem atque impedītam, adorīri non audeant;" flumen[a] transīre et inīquo loco[b] prœlium committĕre non dubĭtant. Quæ[c] fore suspicātus Labiēnus, ut omnes citra flumen elicĕret, [1] eâdem usus simulatiōne[d] itinĕris, placĭdè progrediebātur. Tum, præmissis paulum impedimentis atque in tumŭlo quodam collocātis, "Habētis," inquit, "milĭtes,[e] quam petistis, [2] facultātem: hostem impedīto atque inīquo loco[b] tenētis: [3] præstāte eandem nobis[f] ducĭbus virtūtem, quam sæpenumĕro imperatōri præstitistis: adesse eum et hæc coram cernĕre, existimāte." Simul signa ad hostem converti[g] aciemque dirĭgi jubet, et, paucis turmis [4] præsidio ad impedimenta dimissis, relĭquos equĭtes ad latĕra dispōnit. Celerĭter nostri clamōre sublāto pila in hostes immittunt. Illi, ubi [5] præter spem, quos[h] fugĕre credēbant, [6] infestis signis[i] ad se ire vidērunt, impĕtum modò ferre non potuērunt, ac, primo concursu[i] in fugam conjecti, proxĭmas silvas petiērunt: quos[k] Labiēnus equitātu consectātus, magno numĕro interfecto, complurĭbus captis, paucis pòst diēbus civitātem recēpit: nam Germāni, qui auxilio[l] veniēbant, perceptâ Trevirōrum fugâ, sese domum contulērunt. Cum iis propinqui Indutiomāri, qui defectiōnis auctōres fuĕrant, comitāti eos, ex civitāte excessēre. [7] Cingetorĭgi, quem ab initio permansisse in officio demonstravĭmus, principātus atque imperium est tradĭtum.

9. Cæsar, postquàm ex Menapiis in Trevĭros venit, duābus de causis Rhenum transīre constituit: quarum erat altĕra,[m] quòd auxilia contra se Trevĭris misĕrant; altĕra,[m] [8] ne Ambiŏrix ad eos receptum habēret. His constitūtis rebus, paulum supra eum locum, quo antè exercĭtum transduxĕrat, facĕre pontem instituit. Notâ atque institūtâ ratiōne, magno

[a] § 116. Obs. 4.
[b] § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)
[c] § 145, R. & 38.
[d] § 121, R. XXVI.
[e] § 117.
[f] § 123, R.
[g] 90, 4.
[h] 38, & 91.
[i] § 129, R.
[k] 38.
[l] § 114, Obs. 4, (*illis.*)
[m] 27, 10.

milĭtum studio, paucis diēbus opus effĭcĭtur. Firmo in Trevīrıs præsıdio ad pontem relicto, ne quis ab iis subĭtò motus orirētur,[a] relĭquas copias equitatumque transdūcit. Ubii, qui antè obsĭdes dedĕrant atque in deditiōnem venĕrant, [1] purgandi sui causâ ad eum legātos mittunt, qui doceant,[b] "neque ex suâ civitāte auxilia[c] in Trevĭros missa,[d] [2] neque ab se fidem læsam:[d]" petunt atque orant, "ut sibi parcat,[e] [3] ne commūni odio Germanōrum innocentes pro nocentĭbus pœnas pendant:" si amplius obsĭdum[f] velit, dare pollicentur. [4] Cognĭtâ Cæsar causâ[g] repĕrit, ab Suēvis auxilia missa esse:[d] Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accĭpit; adĭtus viasque in Suēvos perquīrit.

10. Intĕrim paucis post diēbus fit ab Ubiis certior, Suēvos[c] omnes unum in locum copias cogĕre, atque iis natiōnĭbus,[h] quæ sub eōrum sint[i] imperio, denunciāre, utì auxilia pedĭtātûs equitatûsque mittant.[e] His cognĭtis rebus, rem frumentariam provĭdet, castris[h] idoneum locum delĭgit, Ubiis[h] impĕrat, ut pecŏra dedūcant[c] suăque omnia ex agris in oppĭda confĕrant, sperans, barbăros atque [5]imperītos homĭnes,[c] inopiâ cibariōrum afflictos, ad inīquam pugnandi conditiōnem posse dedūci:[k] mandat, ut crebros exploratōres in Suēvos mittant,[e] quæque apud eos gerantur,[l] cognoscant.[e] Illi imperāta faciunt, et, paucis diēbus intermissis, [6] refĕrunt, "Suēvos[c] omnes, posteăquam certiōres nuncii de exercĭtu Romanōrum venĕrint, cum omnĭbus suis sociorumque copiis, quas coēgissent,[i] penĭtus ad extrēmos fines sese recepisse:[d] silvam esse ibi [7] infinītâ magnitudĭne, quæ appellātur[m] Bacēnis: hanc[c] longè introrsus pertinēre, et, pro natīvo muro objectam, Cheruscos [8] ab Suēvis, Suevosque ab Cheruscis, injuriis incursionibusque prohibēre: ad ejus initium silvæ Suēvos[c] adventum Romanōrum expectāre constituisse."[d]

---

[a] § 140, 1, 2d.
[b] § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.
[c] § 145, R.
[d] 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.
[e] § 140, 1, 3d.
[f] § 106, R. VIII.
[g] 104, 1.
[h] § 123, R.
[i] § 140, 6.
[k] 87
[l] § 140, 5.
[m] § 141, Obs. 5, 1st.

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est,[a] non [1]aliēnum, esse vidētur,[b] de Galliæ Germaniæque morĭbus, et quo[c] diffĕrant[d] eæ natiōnes inter sese, [2]proponĕre. In Galliâ, non solùm in omnĭbus civitatĭbus atque [3]in omnĭbus pagis partibusque, sed pæne etiam in singŭlis[e] domĭbus, factiōnes sunt: [4]earumque factiōnum princĭpes sunt, qui summam auctoritātem eōrum judicio habēre existimantur, quorum ad arbitrium judiciumque summa omnium rerum consiliorumque redeat.[f] [5]Idque ejus rei causâ antiquĭtùs institūtum vidētur, ne quis ex plebe contra potentiōrem auxilii[g] egēret:[h] suos enim [6]quisque opprĭmi[i] et circumvenīri non patĭtur, neque, alĭter si faciant, ullam inter suos habent auctoritātem. [7]Hæc eădem ratio est in summâ totius Galliæ: namque omnes civitātes in partes divīsæ sunt duas.

12. Cùm Cæsar in Galliam venit, alterius[k] factiōnis [8]princĭpes erant Ædui, alterius[k] Sequăni. Hi cùm per se minùs valērent, quòd summa auctorĭtas antiquĭtùs erat in Æduis, magnæque eōrum[l] erant clientēlæ, Germānos atque Ariovistum sibi adjunxĕrant, eosque ad se magnis [9]jactūris pollicitationibusque perduxĕrant. Prœliis verò complurĭbus factis secundis, atque omni nobilitāte Æduōrum interfectâ, [10]tantum potentiâ[c] antecessĕrant, ut magnam partem clientium ab Æduis ad se transducĕrent, obsidesque ab iis princĭpum filios accipĕrent, et publĭcè jurāre cogĕrent, nihil se contra Sequănos consilii initūros; et partem finitĭmi agri, per vim occupātam, possidērent: Galliæque totius principātum obtinērent. Quâ necessitāte adductus Divitiăcus, auxilii petendi causâ Romam ad Senātum profectus, [11]infectâ re rediĕrat. Adventu Cæsăris factâ commutatiōne rerum, obsidĭbus Æduis reddĭtis, veterĭbus clientēlis restitūtis, novis[m] per Cæsărem comparātis (quòd hi, qui se ad [12]eōrum

---

a 67, 5, Note.
b 51.
c § 128, R.
d § 140, 5.
e 26, 5.
f § 141, Obs. 3.
g § 121, Exc. 1.
h § 140, 1, 2d.
i 90.
k 27, 10.
l § 108, R. XII.
m 19, (*clientēlis*)

amicitiam aggregavĕrant, meliōre conditiōne[a] atque æquiōre imperio se[b] uti vidēbant), [1]relĭquis rebus[c] eōrum, gratiâ, dignitāte[c] amplificātâ, Sequăni principātum [2]dimisĕrant. In eōrum locum Remi successĕrant; [3]quos[d] quòd adæquāre apud Cæsărem gratiâ intelligebātur, ii, qui propter [4]vetĕres inimicitias nullo modo cum Æduis conjungi potĕrant, [5]se Remis[e] in clientēlam dicābant. Hos illi diligenter tuebantur. Ita et novam et repentè collectam auctoritātem tenēbant. Eo tum statu[f] res erat, ut longè princĭpes[g] haberentur[h] Ædui, secundum locum dignitātis Remi obtinērent.[h]

13. In omni Galliâ eōrum homĭnum, qui [6]alĭquo sunt numĕro[i] atque honōre,[i] genĕra sunt duo: nam plebes pæne servōrum habētur loco,[f] quæ per se nihil audet et nullo adhibētur consilio.[k] Plerīque, cùm aut [7]ære[l] aliēno, aut magnitudĭne tributōrum, aut injuriâ potentiōrum premuntur, sese in servitūtem dicant nobilĭbus:[e] [8]in hos eădem omnia sunt jura, quæ domĭnis[m] in servos. Sed de his duōbus genĕribus [9]altĕrum est Druĭdum, altĕrum equĭtum. [10]Illi rebus[n] divīnis intersunt, sacrificia publĭca ac privāta [11]procūrant, religiōnes interpretantur. Ad hos magnus adolescentium numĕrus disciplīnæ causâ[l] concurrit, magnōque [12]ii sunt apud eos honōre.[f] Nam ferè de omnĭbus controversiis publĭcis privatisque constituunt; et, si quod est[o] admissum facĭnus, si cædes facta, si de hæreditāte, si de finĭbus controversia est,[o] iidem decernunt; præmia pœnasque constituunt: si qui aut privātus aut publĭcus eōrum [13]decrēto[p] non stetit, sacrificiis interdĭcunt. Hæc pœna apud eos est gravissĭma. [14]Quibus ita est interdictum, ii numĕro impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur: iis omnes decēdunt, [15]adĭtum eōrum sermonemque defugiunt, ne quid ex contagiōne incommŏdi ac-

---

[a] § 121, R. XXVI.
[b] § 145, R.
[c] 109,2. & §98,Obs.4.
[d] 39, & 91.
[e] § 123 R.
[f] § 136, Obs. 5.(*in.*)
[g] § 103, R. & Obs. 2.
[h] § 140, 1, 1st.
[i] § 106, R. VII.
[k] § 126. R. III.
[l] § 129, R.
[m] § 112, R. II.
[n] § 112, R. I.
[o] § 140, Obs. 2.
[p] § 112, R. V.

cipiant: neque iis petentĭbus jus reddĭtur, neque honos ullus communicātur. His autem omnĭbus Druidĭbus præest unus, qui [1]summam inter eos habet auctoritātem. Hoc mortuo, si qui ex relĭquis excellit dignitāte, succēdit; at, si sunt plures pares, suffragio[a] Druĭdum deligĭtur, nonnunquam etiam armis[a] de principātu contendunt. Hi certo anni tempŏre in finĭbus Carnūtum, [2]quæ regio totius Galliæ media[b] habētur, consĭdunt in loco consecrāto. Huc omnes undĭque, qui controversias habent, conveniunt, eorumque decrētis[c] judiciisque [3]parent. [4]Disciplīna in Britanniâ reperta atque inde in Galliam translāta esse existimātur: et nunc, qui[d] [5]diligentiùs eam rem cognoscĕre volunt, plerumque illò discendi causâ proficiscuntur.

14. Druĭdes a bello abesse consuêrunt, neque tribūta unà cum relĭquis pendunt; [6]militiæ vacatiōnem [7]omniumque rerum habent immunitātem. Tantis excitāti [8]præmiis,[a] et suâ sponte[a] multi in disciplīnam conveniunt, et a parentĭbus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numĕrum versuum [9]ediscĕre dicuntur: ităque annos nonnulli vicēnos[e] in disciplīnâ permānent. Neque fas esse existĭmant, [10]ea litĕris mandāre, cùm in relĭquis ferè rebus, publĭcis privatisque rationĭbus, Græcis utantur[f] litĕris. [11]Id mihi duābus de causis instituisse videntur; quòd neque in vulgum [12]disciplīnam efferri velint, neque eos, qui discant,[g] litĕris[c] confīsos, minùs memoriæ[c] studēre: quod[h] ferè plerisque accĭdit, ut præsidio literārum diligentiam in perdiscendo ac memoriam remittant.[i] [13]In primis hoc volunt persuadēre, [14]non interīre anĭmas, sed ab aliis post mortem transīre ad alios: atque hoc[a] maxĭmè ad virtūtem excitāri putant, metu mortis neglecto. Multa præterea de siderĭbus atque eōrum motu, de mundi ac terrārum magnitudĭne, de rerum natūrâ, de Deōrum immortalium vi ac potestāte [15]dispŭtant et juventūti tradunt.

---

[a] § 129, R. [d] 37, (ii.) [g] § 141, Obs. 3.
[b] § 103, R. & Obs. 2. [e] 26, 1. [h] 37, 9, Note 3.
[c] § 112, R. V. [f] § 140, Obs. 3. [i] § 140, 1, 4th.

15. Altĕrum genus est equĭtum. Hi, [1] cùm est usus, atque alĭquod bellum incĭdit (quod [a] ante Cæsăris adventum ferè quotannis accidĕre solēbat, utì aut ipsi [b] injurias inferrent, aut illātas propulsārent), omnes in bello [2] versantur: atque eōrum ut quisque est genĕre [c] copiisque amplissĭmus, ita plurĭmos circum se [3] ambactos clientesque habent. Hanc unam gratiam potentiamque novērunt.

16. Natio est omnium Gallōrum admŏdum [4] dedĭta religionĭbus,[d] atque ob eam causam, qui sunt affecti graviorĭbus morbis, quique in prœliis periculisque versantur, aut pro victĭmis homĭnes immŏlant, aut se immolatūros vovent, administrisque ad ea sacrificia Druidĭbus utuntur; quòd, pro vitâ homĭnis nisi homĭnis vita reddātur, non posse alĭter Deōrum immortalium numen placāri arbitrantur: publicèque ejusdem genĕris habent institūta sacrificia. Alii immāni magnitudĭne [e] simulācra habent, quorum [5] contexta vimĭnĭbus membra vivis hominĭbus [f] complent, quibus succensis, circumventi flammâ exanimantur homĭnes. Supplicia eōrum, qui in furto, aut in latrocinio, aut alĭquâ noxâ sint comprehensi,[g] gratiōra Diis [d] immortalĭbus esse arbitrantur: sed, cùm [6] ejus genĕris copia defĭcit, ad innocentium supplicia descendunt.

17. [7] Deum maxĭmè Mercurium colunt: hujus sunt plurĭma simulācra, hunc [h] omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc [h] viārum atque itinĕrum ducem, hunc [h] ad quæstus pecuniæ mercaturasque habēre vim maxĭmam arbitrantur. Post hunc, [8] Apollĭnem et Martem et Jovem et Minervam: de his eandem ferè, quam relĭquæ gentes,[i] habent opiniōnem; Apollĭnem [h] morbos depellĕre, Minervam [h] opĕrum atque artificiōrum [9] initia tradĕre; Jovem [h] imperium cœlestium tenēre; Martem [h] bella regĕre. Huic, cùm prœlio dimicāre constituĕrunt, ea, quæ bello cepĕrint, plerumque de-

---

[a] 37, 9, Note 3. [d] § 111, R. [g] § 141, Obs. 8.
[b] 32, 3. [e] § 106, R. VII. [h] § 145, R.
[c] § 128, R. [f] § 125, R. [i] § 101, Obs. 4.

vōvent. [1] Quæ superavĕrint,[a] animalia capta immŏlant; relĭquas res in unum locum confĕrunt. Multis in civitatĭbus harum rerum exstructos tumŭlos locis[b] consecrātis conspicāri licet: neque sæpe accĭdit, ut, neglectâ quispiam religiōne,[c] aut capta[d] apud se occultāre, aut [2] posĭta[d] tollĕre audēret: gravissimumque ei rei[e] supplicium cum cruciātu constitūtum est.

18. Galli se omnes ab Dite patre prognātos prædĭcant, idque ab Druidĭbus prodĭtum dicunt. Ob eam causam, [3] spatia omnis tempŏris non numĕro diērum, sed noctium, finiunt; dies natāles et mensium et annōrum initia sic observant, [4] ut noctem dies subsequātur.[f] In relĭquis vitæ institūtis, hôc[g] ferè ab relĭquis diffĕrunt, quòd suos libĕros, nisi cùm adolevĕrint, ut munus militiæ sustinēre possint, [5] palàm ad se adīre non patiuntur; filiumque puerīli ætāte in publĭco, in conspectu patris assistĕre, turpe[h] ducunt.

19. Viri, quantas pecunias ab uxorĭbus dotis nomĭne accepērunt, tantas ex suis bonis, æstimatiōne factâ, cum dotĭbus communĭcant. Hujus omnis pecuniæ [6] conjunctim ratio habētur, [7] fructusque servantur: uter eōrum [8] vitâ superârit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructĭbus superiōrum tempŏrum pervĕnit. Viri in uxōres, sicut in libĕros, vitæ necisque habent potestātem: et, cùm pater familiæ, illustriōre loco natus, decessit, ejus propinqui conveniunt, et, de morte si res in suspiciōnem venit, [9] de uxorĭbus in servīlem modum quæstiōnem habent, et, [10] si compertum est, igni atque omnĭbus tormentis excruciātas interficiunt. Funĕra sunt [11] pro cultu Gallōrum magnifĭca et sumtuōsa; omniăque, quæ [12] vivis cordi[i] fuisse arbitrantur, in ignem infĕrunt, etiam animalia: ac paulo supra hanc memoriam servi et clientes, quos ab iis dilectos esse constābat, justis funerĭbus confectis, unà cremabantur.

[a] § 141, Obs. 3. [b] § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*) [c] 109, 2. [d] 19. (*animalia.*) [e] § 126, R. III. [f] § 140, 1, 1st. [g] § 128, R. [h] § 98, Obs. 6. [i] § 114, R. & 19

20. Quæ[a] civitātes [1] commodiùs suam rem publĭcam administrāre existimantur, habent legĭbus[b] sanctum, si quis quid de republĭcâ a finitĭmis rumōre ac famâ accepĕrit, utì ad magistrātum defĕrat,[c] neve cum quo alio communĭcet:[c] quòd sæpe homĭnes temerarios atque imperītos falsis rumorĭbus terrēri, et ad facĭnus impelli, et de summis rebus consilium capĕre cognĭtum est. Magistrātus, [2] quæ visa sunt, occultant; quæque[d] esse ex usu judicavĕrint, multitudĭni produnt. De republĭcâ nisi [3] per concilium loqui non concedĭtur.

21. Germāni multùm ab hac consuetudĭne diffĕrunt: nam neque Druĭdes habent, qui rebus divīnis præsint,[e] [4] neque sacrificiis[f] student. Deōrum numĕro eos solos ducunt, quos cernunt, et [5] quorum apertè opĭbus juvantur, Solem et [6] Vulcānum et Lunam: relĭquos ne famâ quidem accepērunt. Vita omnis in venationĭbus atque in studiis rei militāris consistit: [7] ab parvŭlis labōri[f] ac duritiæ[f] student. Qui diutissĭmè [8] impubĕres permansērunt, maxĭmam inter suos ferunt laudem: hôc ali statūram,[g] ali hôc vires,[g] nervosque confirmāri, putant. Intra annum verò vicesĭmum femĭnæ notitiam habuisse, in turpissĭmis habent rebus: cujus rei nulla est occultatio, quòd et promiscuè in fluminĭbus perluuntur, et pellĭbus aut parvis [9] rhenōnum tegimentis utuntur, magnâ corpŏris parte nudâ.

22. Agricultūræ[f] non student; majorque pars victûs eōrum in lacte, caseo, carne consistit: neque quisquam agri modum certum aut fines habet proprios; sed magistrātus ac princĭpes in annos singŭlos gentĭbus[h] cognationibusque homĭnum, qui unà coiĕrint, [10] quantum,[i] et quo loco visum est, agri attribuunt, atque anno pòst aliò transīre cogunt. [11] Ejus rei multas affĕrunt causas; ne assiduâ consuetudĭne capti, studium belli gerendi agricultūrâ commū-

[a] 37, 4, (*civitātes.*)
[b] § 129, R.
[c] § 140, 1, 3d.
[d] § 141, Obs. 3.
[e] § 141, R. II.
[f] § 112, R. V.
[g] § 145, R.
[h] § 123, R.
[i] 46, 1.

tent;[a] ne latos fines parāre studeant,[a] potentioresque humiliōres possessionĭbus[b] expellant;[a] ne [1]accuratiùs ad frigŏra atque æstus vitandos[c] ædifĭcent;[a] ne qua oriātur[a] pecuniæ cupidĭtas, quâ ex re factiōnes dissensionesque nascuntur; ut [2]anĭmi æquitāte plebem contineant, cùm suas quisque opes cum potentissĭmis æquāri videat.[d].

23. Civitatĭbus[e] maxĭma laus est, quàm latissĭmas circum se vastātis finĭbus solitudĭnes habēre. Hoc [3]proprium virtūtis[f] existĭmant, expulsos agris[g] finitĭmos[h] cedĕre, neque quenquam[h] prope audēre consistĕre: simul hôc se[h] fore tutiōres arbitrantur, repentīnæ incursiōnis timōre[i] sublāto. Cùm bellum civĭtas aut illātum defendit, aut infert; magistrātus, qui ei bello[k] præsint,[l] ut vitæ necisque habeant potestātem, deliguntur. In pace nullus est commūnis magistrātus, sed princĭpes regiōnum atque pagōrum inter suos [4]jus dicunt, controversiasque minuunt. Latrocinia nullam habent infamiam, quæ extra fines cujusque civitātis fiunt; atque ea juventūtis exercendæ[m] ac desidiæ minuendæ causâ fiĕri prædĭcant. Atque, ubi quis ex principĭbus in concilio dixit, "se ducem fore; [5]qui[n] sequi velint, profiteantur;[o]" consurgunt ii, qui et causam et homĭnem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ab multitudĭne collaudantur: qui ex iis secūti non sunt, in desertōrum ac proditōrum numĕro ducuntur, omniumque iis[p] rerum postea fides derogātur. Hospĭtes violāre, fas non putant; qui[n] quâque de causâ ad eos venĕrint, ab injuriâ prohĭbent, sanctosque habent; iis omnium domus patent, victusque communicātur.

24. [6]Ac fuit antea tempus, cùm Germānos Galli virtūte superārent, ultro bella inferrent, propter homĭnum multitudĭnem agrīque inopiam trans Rhenum colonias mittĕrent.

---

[a] § 140, 1, 2d.	[f] § 107, R. IX.	[l] § 141, R. II. Obs. 2, 4th.
[b] § 136, R. LII.	[g] § 136, R. LII.	[m] 112, 5.
[c] § 98, Obs. 2, & 112, 7.	[h] § 145, R.	[n] § 141, Obs. 3.
[d] § 140. Obs. 3.	[i] 109, 2.	[o] § 45, I. 1.
[e] § 110, Obs. 1.	[k] § 112, R. I.	[p] § 126, R. V.

Itāque ea, quæ fertilissĭma sunt, Germaniæ loca circum Hercyniam silvam (quam[a] Eratosthĕni et quibusdam Græcis famâ notam esse video, quam illi Orcyniam appellant), Volcæ Tectosăges occupavērunt, atque ibi consedērunt. Quæ[b] gens ad hoc tempus iis sedĭbus sese contĭnet, [1] summamque habet justitiæ et bellĭcæ laudis opiniōnem: nunc quòque in eâdem inopiâ, egestāte, patientiâ, quâ Germāni, permănent, eōdem victu[c] et cultu corpŏris utuntur; [2] Gallis[d] autem Provinciæ propinquĭtas, et transmarinārum rerum notitia, [3] multa ad copiam atque usus largītur. Paulātim assuefacti superāri, multisque victi prœliis, ne se quidem ipsi[e] cum illis virtūte compărant.

25. Hujus Hercyniæ silvæ, quæ suprà demonstrāta est, latitūdo novem diērum iter[f] [4] expedīto[g] patet: non enim alĭter [5] finīri potest, neque mensūras itinĕrum novērunt. Orĭtur ab Helvetiōrum et Nemētum et Rauracōrum finĭbus, rectâque flumĭnis Danubii regiōne[h] pertĭnet ad fines Dacōrum et Anartium: hinc se flectit [6] sinistrorsus, diversis ab flumĭne regionĭbus, multarumque gentium fines propter magnitudĭnem attingit: neque quisquam est hujus Germaniæ, qui se aut adîsse ad initium ejus silvæ dicat,[i] cùm diērum iter[f] sexaginta processĕrit,[k] aut quo ex loco oriātur,[l] accepĕrit. Multa in eâ genĕra[a] ferārum nasci constat, quæ relĭquis in locis visa non sint:[m] ex quibus, quæ maxĭmè diffĕrant ab cetĕris et [7] memoriæ[n] prodenda[o] videantur, hæc sunt.

26. [8] Est bos cervi figūrâ,[p] cujus a mediâ fronte inter aures unum cornu existit, excelsius magisque directum his, quæ nobis nota sunt, cornĭbus. Ab ejus summo, [9] sicut palmæ, rami quàm latè diffunduntur. Eădem est femĭnæ marisque natūra, eădem forma magnitudōque cornuum.

---

[a] § 145, R.
[b] 38, 2.
[c] § 121, R. XXVI.
[d] § 110, R.
[e] 33, 1.
[f] § 132. R. XLII.
[g] § 112, R. XVII.
[h] § 129, R.
[i] § 141, R. I.
[k] § 140, Obs. 3.
[l] § 140, 5.
[m] § 141, Obs. 3.
[n] § 126, R. III.
[o] 108, 6.
[p] § 106, R. VII.

27. Sunt item, quæ appellantur [1] Alces.[a] Harum est consimĭlis capreis[b] figūra et [2] variētas pellium; sed magnitudĭne[c] paulo antecēdunt, mutilæque sunt cornĭbus,[c] et crura sine nodis articulisque habent; neque quiētis causâ procumbunt, neque, si [3] quo afflictæ casu concidĕrint, erigĕre sese aut sublevāre possunt. His[d] sunt arbŏres pro cubilĭbus: [4] ad eas se applĭcant, atque ita, paulum modò reclinātæ, quiētem capiunt: quarum ex vestigiis cùm est animadversum a venatorĭbus, quò se recipĕre consuêrint,[e] omnes eo loco aut a radicĭbus subruunt, aut accĭdunt arbŏres tantùm, ut summa species eārum stantium relinquātur. Huc cùm se consuetudĭne reclinavĕrint, [5] infirmas arbŏres pondĕre afflīgunt, atque unà ipsæ concĭdunt.

28. Tertium est genus eōrum, qui [6] Uri[a] appellantur. Hi sunt magnitudĭne[c] paulo infra elephantos, specie[f] et colōre et figūrâ tauri. Magna vis eōrum, et magna velocĭtas: neque homĭni,[g] neque feræ, quam conspexĕrint, parcunt. Hos studiōsè foveis[h] captos interficiunt. Hoc se labōre[h] durant adolescentes, atque hoc genĕre[h] venatiōnis exercent; et, qui plurĭmos ex his interfecērunt, relātis in publĭcum cornĭbus, [7] quæ sint testimonio,[i] magnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuescĕre ad homĭnes, et mansuefiĕri, [8] ne parvŭli quidem excepti possunt. Amplitūdo cornuum et figūra et species multùm a nostrōrum boum cornĭbus differt. Hæc studiōsè conquisīta ab labris argento[k] circumclūdunt, atque in [9] amplissĭmis epŭlis pro pocŭlis utuntur.

29. [10] Cæsar, postquam per Ubios exploratōres compĕrit, Suēvos sese in silvas recepisse,[l] inopiam frumenti verĭtus, quòd, ut suprà demonstravĭmus, minĭmè omnes Germāni agricultūræ student, constituit, non progrĕdi longiùs: sed, ne omnīno metum redĭtûs sui barbăris[m] tollĕret, atque ut

a § 103, R. V.	e § 140, 5.	i 114, R. & Obs.4
b 19, *formis*, § 111, R.	f § 106, R. VII.	k § 125, R.
c § 128, R.	g 112, R. V.	l 98, 2.
d § 112, R. II.	h § 129, R.	m § 123, R. & 19,

eōrum auxilia tardāret, reducto exercĭtu, partem ultĭmam pontis, quæ ripas Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitudinem pedum ducentōrum rescindit; atque in extrēmo ponte [a] turrim tabulatōrum [b] quatuor constituit, præsidiumque cohortium [b] duodĕcim pontis tuendi causâ ponit, magnisque eum locum munitionĭbus firmat. Ei loco [c] præsidiōque Caium Volcatium Tullum adolescentem præfēcit: ipse, cùm maturescĕre frumenta incipĕrent,[d] ad bellum Ambiorĭgis profectus (per Arduennam silvam, quæ est totius Galliæ maxĭma, atque ab ripis Rheni finibusque Trevirōrum ad Nervios pertĭnet, millibusque [e] ampliùs [f] quingentis in longitudĭnem patet), Lucium Minucium Basĭlum cum omni equitātu præmittit, [1] si quid celeritāte itinĕris atque opportunitāte tempŏris proficĕre possit; monet, ut ignes fiĕri in castris prohibeat,[g] ne qua ejus adventûs procul significatio fiat: [h] sese confestim subsĕqui [i] dicit.

30. Basĭlus, [2] ut imperātum est, facit; celerĭter contrāque omnium opiniōnem confecto itinĕre, multos in agris inopinantes deprehendit; eōrum indicio ad ipsum Ambiorĭgem contendit, quo in loco cum paucis equitĭbus esse dicebātur. [3] Multum cùm [k] in omnĭbus rebus, tum [k] in re militāri potest fortūna. Nam sicut magno accĭdit casu, ut in ipsum incautum atque etiam imparātum incidĕret,[l] priùsque ejus adventus ab hominĭbus viderētur, quàm fama ac nuncius adventûs afferrētur: [m] sic [4] magnæ fuit fortūnæ,[n] omni militāri instrumento,[o] quod circum se habēbat, erepto, rhedis equisque comprehensis, ipsum effugĕre mortem. Sed hoc eo factum est, quòd, ædificio circumdăto silvâ (ut sunt ferè domicilia Gallōrum, qui, vitandi æstûs causâ, plerumque silvārum ac flumĭnum petunt propinquitātes), comĭtes familiaresque ejus

---

[a] 17, 1.
[b] § 106, R. VII.
[c] § 123, R.
[d] § 140, Obs. 4.
[e] § 132, R. XLII.
[f] § 120, Obs. 3.
[g] § 140, 1, 3d.
[h] § 140, 1, 2d.
[i] 94, 3
[k] 124, 8.
[l] § 140, 1, 4th.
[m] § 140, 4.
[n] § 108, R. XII.
[o] 109, 2.

angusto in loco paulisper equĭtum nostrōrum vim sustinuērunt. His pugnantĭbus, illum in equum quidam ex suis[a] intŭlit: fugientem silvæ texērunt. Sic et ad subeundum pericŭlum, et ad vitandum, [1] multùm fortūna valuit.

31. Ambiŏrix copias suas [2] judiciōne[b] non conduxĕrit,[c] quòd prœlio dimicandum[d] non existimârit, an[b] [3] tempŏre exclūsus et repentīno equĭtum adventu prohibĭtus, cùm relĭquum exercĭtum subsĕqui credĕret, dubium est: [4] sed certè, dimissis per agros nunciis, sibi[e] quemque consulĕre jussit: quorum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentes palūdes profūgit: qui proxĭmi Oceănum[f] fuērunt, hi insŭlis sese occultavērunt, quas æstus efficĕre consuêrunt: multi, ex suis finĭbus egressi, se suăque omnia [5] alienissĭmis credidērunt. Cativolcus, rex dimidiæ partis Eburōnum, qui unà cum Ambiorĭge consilium iniĕrat, ætāte jam confectus, cùm labōrem aut belli aut fugæ ferre non posset, [6] omnĭbus precĭbus detestātus Ambiorĭgem, qui[g] ejus consilii auctor fuisset, [7] taxo,[h] cujus magna in Galliâ Germaniâque copia est, se exanimāvit.

32. Segni Condrusīque ex gente et numĕro Germanōrum, qui sunt inter Eburōnes Trevirosque, legātos ad Cæsărem misērunt, orātum,[i] ne se in hostium numĕro ducĕret,[k] neve omnium Germanōrum, qui essent citra Rhenum, [8] unam[l] esse causam judicāret:[k] nihil se de bello cogitavisse, nulla Ambiorĭgi auxilia misisse. Cæsar, explorātâ re [9] quæstiōne captivōrum, si qui ad eos Eburōnes ex fugâ convenissent, ad se ut reducerentur,[k] imperāvit: si ita fecissent,[m] fines eōrum se violatūrum negāvit. Tum copiis in tres partes distribūtis, impedimenta omnium legiōnum Aduatŭcam contŭlit. Id castelli nomen est. Hoc ferè est in mediis Eburōnum finĭbus, ubi Titurius atque Aurunculeius hiemandi causâ

---

[a] § 107, Obs. 8.
[b] 124, 13.
[c] § 140, 1, 4th.
[d] 113, 5.
[e] § 112, R. V.
[f] § 136, Obs. 5, (*ad.*)
[g] § 141, R. III.
[h] § 129, R.
[i] § 148, R. LXIII.
[k] § 140, 1, 3d.
[l] § 103, R. V. & Obs. 2
[m] § 140, 2, & 80, 2.

consedĕrant. Hunc cùm relĭquis rebus locum probābat, tum, quòd superiōris anni munitiōnes intĕgræ manēbant, ut milĭtum labōrem sublevāret.[a] Præsidio[b] impedimentis legiōnem quatuordecĭmam relĭquit, unam ex iis tribus, quas proxĭmè conscriptas ex Italiâ transduxĕrat. Ei legiōni[c] castrisque Quintum Tullium Cicerōnem præfĭcit, ducentosque equĭtes attribuit.

33. Partĭto exercĭtu, Titum Labiēnum cum legionĭbus tribus ad Oceănum versus, in eas partes, quæ Menapios attingunt, proficisci jubet: Caium Trebonium cum pari legiōnum numĕro ad eam regiōnem, quæ Aduatŭcis[d] adjăcet, depopulandam[e] mittit: ipse cum relĭquis tribus ad flumen Sabim, quod influit in Mosam, extremasque Arduennæ partes ire constituit, quò cum paucis equitĭbus profectum[f] Ambiorĭgem audiēbat. Discēdens, [1] post diem septĭmum sese reversūrum, confirmat; quam ad diem ei legiōni,[g] quæ in præsidio relinquebātur, frumentum debēri sciēbat. Labiēnum Treboniumque hortātur, si reipublĭcæ commŏdo[h] facĕre possint, ad eam diem revertantur;[i] ut, rursus communicāto consilio, exploratisque hostium rationĭbus, aliud belli initium capĕre possent.[k]

34. Erat, [2] ut suprà demonstravĭmus, [3] manus certa nulla, non oppĭdum, non præsidium, quod[l] se armis defendĕret; sed omnes in partes dispersa multitūdo. Ubi cuique[c] aut vallis abdĭta, aut locus silvestris, aut palus impedīta, spem præsidii aut salūtis alĭquam offerēbat, consedĕrat. Hæc loca [4] vicinitatĭbus[m] erant nota, magnamque res diligentiam requirēbat, non in summâ exercĭtûs tuendâ (nullum enim potĕrat unĭversis ab perterrĭtis ac dispersis pericŭlum accidĕre), sed in singŭlis militĭbus conservandis; quæ tamen [5] ex parte res ad salūtem exercĭtûs pertinēbat. Nam et prædæ cupid-

---

[a] § 140, 1, 1st.
[b] § 114, R.
[c] § 123, R.
[d] § 112, R. IV.
[e] 112, 7.
[f] 98, 2.
[g] § 126, R. III.
[h] § 129, R.
[i] § 140, 1, 3d, & Obs. 5, (*ut.*)
[k] § 140, 1, 2d.
[l] § 141, R. I.
[m] § 111, Obs. 1, 4th.

ĭtas multos longiùs evocābat, et silvæ incertis occultisque itinerĭbus [1] confertos adīre prohibēbant. [2] Si negotium confĭci[a] stirpemque homĭnum sceleratōrum interfĭci[a] vellet, dimittendæ[b] plures manus diducendīque erant milĭtes: si continēre ad signa manipŭlos vellet, ut [3] institūta ratio et consuetūdo exercĭtûs Romāni postulābat, locus ipse erat præsidio[c] barbăris,[c] neque ex occulto insidiandi et dispersos circumveniendi singŭlis[d] deĕrat audacia. At in ejusmŏdi difficultatĭbus, quantum[e] diligentiâ providēri potĕrat, providebātur; ut potiùs [4] in nocendo alĭquid omitterētur, etsi omnium anĭmi ad ulciscendum ardēbant, quàm cum alĭquo milĭtum detrimento nocerētur. Cæsar ad finitĭmas civitātes nuncios dimittit, omnes ad se evŏcat spe prædæ, ad diripiendos Eburōnes, ut potiùs in silvis Gallōrum vita, quàm [5] legionarius miles, periclitētur;[f] simul ut, magnâ multitudĭne circumfūsâ, pro tali facinŏre, stirps ac nomen civitātis tollātur.[f] Magnus undĭque numĕrus celerĭter convĕnit.

35. Hæc in omnĭbus Eburōnum partĭbus gerebantur, diesque [6] appetēbat septĭmus, quem ad diem Cæsar ad impedimenta legionemque reverti constituĕrat. Hìc, quantum[g] in bello fortūna possit[h] et [7] quantos[g] affĕrat[h] casus, cognosci potuit. Dissipātis ac perterrĭtis hostĭbus, ut demonstravĭmus, [8] manus erat nulla, quæ parvam modò causam timōris afferret.[i] Trans Rhenum ad Germānos pervēnit fama, dirĭpi[k] Eburōnes, atque ultro omnes ad prædam evocāri.[k] Cogunt equĭtum duo millia Sigambri, qui sunt proxĭmi Rheno, a quibus receptos ex fugâ Tenchthĕros atque Usipĕtes [9] suprà docuĭmus: transeunt Rhenum navĭbus ratibusque, triginta millĭbus passuum infra eum locum, ubi pons erat perfectus præsidiumque ab Cæsăre relictum: primos Eburōnum fines[l] adeunt, multos ex fugâ dispersos excipiunt, magno pecŏris

---

a 94, 3.
b 108, 2.
c § 111, R.
d § 112, Obs. 1, & 19, 1.
e 46, 1.
f § 140, 1, 2d.
g 48, 4.
h § 140, 5.
i § 141, R. I.
k 96, 6.
l § 136, R. LII.

numĕro, cujus[a] sunt cupidissĭmi barbări, potiuntur. Invitāti prædâ. longiùs procēdunt: [1]non hos palus, in bello latrociniisque natos, non silvæ morantur: quibus in locis sit[b] Cæsar, ex captīvis quærunt; profectum longiùs reperiunt, omnemque exercĭtum discessisse cognoscunt. Atque unus ex captīvis, "Quid vos," inquit, "hanc misĕram ac tenuem sectamĭni prædam, quibus licet jam esse fortunatissĭmis?[c] Tribus horis[d] Aduatŭcam[e] venīre potestis: huc omnes suas fortūnas exercĭtus Romanōrum contŭlit: [2]præsidii tantum est, ut ne murus[f] quidem cingi possit,[g] neque quisquam egrĕdi extra munitiōnes audeat."[g] Oblātâ spe, Germāni, quam[h] nacti erant prædam, in occulto relinquunt, ipsi Aduatŭcam[e] contendunt, usi eōdem [3]duce, cujus hæc indicio[i] cognovĕrant.

36. Cicĕro, qui per omnes superiōres dies præceptis Cæsăris summâ diligentiâ milĭtes in castris continuisset, ac ne calōnem[f] quidem quemquam extra munitiōnem egrĕdi passus esset, septĭmo die, diffīdens de numĕro diērum Cæsărem fidem servatūrum, quòd longiùs eum progressum audiēbat, neque ulla de redĭtu ejus fama afferebātur; simul eōrum permōtus vocĭbus, [4]qui illius patientiam pæne obsessiōnem appellābant, si quidem ex castris egrĕdi non licēret; nullum ejusmŏdi casum expectans, quo, novem oppositis legionĭbus maximōque equitātu, dispersis ac pæne delētis hostĭbus, in millĭbus passuum tribus offendi posset; quinque cohortes frumentātum in proxĭmas segĕtes misit, quas inter et castra unus omnīno collis interĕrat. Complūres erant in castris ex legionĭbus ægri relicti; ex quibus [5]qui hoc spatio diērum convaluĕrant, circĭter trecenti sub vexillo unà mittuntur: magna præterea multitūdo calōnum, magna vis jumentōrum, quæ in castris [6]subsedĕrat, factâ potestāte, sequĭtur.

37. Hoc ipso tempŏre, [7]casu Germāni equĭtes interveniunt, protinusque eōdem illo, quo venĕrant, cursu ab decu-

---

a § 107, R. IX.
b § 140, 5.
c § 103, Obs. 7.
d § 131, R. XLI.
e § 130, 2.
f 121, Note 2.
g § 140, 1, 1st.
h 37, 4.
i § 129, R.

mānâ portâ in castra irrumpĕre conantur: nec priùs sunt visi, objectis ab eâ parte silvis, quàm castris appropinquārent, usque eo, ut, 1 qui [a] sub vallo tendĕrent mercatōres, recipiendi sui facultātem non habērent. Inopinantes nostri re novâ perturbantur, ac vix primum impĕtum cohors in statiōne sustĭnet. Circumfunduntur[b] ex relĭquis hostes partĭbus, si quem[c] adĭtum reperīre possent. Ægrè portas nostri tuentur, 2relĭquos adĭtus locus ipse per se munitiōque defendit. Totis trepidātur castris, atque alius ex alio causam tumultûs quærit; neque quò signa ferantur,[d] neque quam in partem quisque conveniat,[d] provĭdent. Alius capta jam castra[e] pronunciat; alius, delēto exercĭtu atque imperatōre, victōres barbăros[e] venisse contendit: 3plerīque novas sibi ex loco religiōnes fingunt, Cottæque et Titurii calamitātem, qui in eōdem occidĕrint[f] castello, ante ocŭlos ponunt. Tali timōre omnĭbus perterrĭtis, confirmātur opinio barbăris,[g] ut ex captīvo audiĕrant, nullum esse intus præsidium. Perrumpĕre nituntur, seque ipsi[h] adhortantur, ne tantam fortūnam ex manĭbus dimittant.[i]

38. Erat æger in præsidio relictus Publius Sextius Bacŭlus, 4 qui primum pilum ad Cæsărem duxĕrat, cujus mentiōnem 5superiorĭbus prœliis fecĭmus, ac diem[k] jam quintum cibo[l] caruĕrat. Hic, diffīsus suæ atque omnium salūti,[m] inermis ex tabernacŭlo prodit: videt imminēre hostes, atque in summo esse rem[e] discrimĭne: capit arma a proxĭmis atque in portâ consistit. Consequuntur hunc centuriōnes ejus cohortis quæ in statiōne erat: paulisper unà prœlium sustĭnent. 6Relinquit anĭmus Sextium, gravĭbus acceptis vulnerĭbus: ægrè per manus tractus servātur. Hoc spatio interposĭto, relĭqui sese confirmant tantùm, ut in munitionĭbus consistĕre audeant, speciemque defensōrum præbeant.

---

[a] 37, 4.
[b] 116, 6.
[c] § 35, (*siquis.*)
[d] § 140, 5.
[e] § 145, R.
[f] § 141, R. III.
[g] § 110, Obs. 1.
[h] 33, 1.
[i] § 140, 1, 3d.
[k] § 131, R. XLI.
[l] § 121, R. XXV.
[m] § 112, R. V.

39. Intĕrim confectâ frumentatiōne, milĭtes nostri clamōrem exaudiunt; præcurrunt equĭtes, quanto sit [a] res in perīcŭlo, cognoscunt. Hìc verò nulla munitio est, quæ [b] perterrĭtos recipiat: modò conscripti, atque [1] usûs [c] militāris imperīti, ad tribūnum milĭtum centurionesque ora convertunt: quid ab his præcipiātur,[a] expectant. Nemo est tam fortis, quin [d] rei novitāte perturbētur. Barbări, signa procul conspicāti, oppugnatiōne [e] desistunt: redîsse primò legiōnes credunt, quas longiùs discessisse ex captīvis cognovĕrant: postea, despectâ paucitāte, ex omnĭbus partĭbus impĕtum faciunt.

40. Calōnes in proxĭmum tumŭlum procurrunt: hinc celerĭter dejecti se in signa manipulosque conjiciunt: eo magis timĭdos perterrent milĭtes. Alii, [2] cuneo facto ut celeriter perrumpant,[f] censent, quoniam tam propinqua sint castra; et, [3] si pars alĭqua circumventa cecidĕrit, at relĭquos servāri posse confīdunt: alii,[g] ut in jugo consistant,[f] atque eundem omnes ferant [f] casum. Hoc vetĕres non probant milĭtes, quos [h] sub vexillo unà profectos docuĭmus. Ităque inter se [i] cohortāti, duce Caio Trebonio, equĭte Romāno, qui eis erat præposĭtus, per medios hostes perrumpunt, incolumesque ad unum omnes in castra perveniunt. Hos subsecūti calōnes equitesque eōdem impĕtu milĭtum virtūte servantur. At ii, qui in jugo constitĕrant, [4] nullo etiam nunc usu rei militāris percepto, neque in eo, quod probavĕrant, consilio permanēre, ut se loco superiōre defendĕrent, neque eam, quam profuisse aliis [k] vim celeritatemque vidĕrant, imitāri potuērunt; sed, se in castra recipĕre conāti, inīquum in locum demisĕrant. Centuriōnes, quorum [l] nonnulli, ex inferiorĭbus ordinĭbus reliquārum legiōnum, virtūtis causâ,[m] in superiōres erant ordĭnes hujus legiōnis trans-

[a] § 140, 5.
[b] § 141, R. I.
[c] § 107, R. IX.
[d] § 140, 3.
[e] § 136, R. LII.
[f] § 140, 1, 3d.
[g] § 101, Obs. 4, *censent.*
[h] § 145, R. & 91, 4.
[i] § 28, Obs. 5.
[k] § 112, R. V. 1st.
[l] § 107, R. X.
[m] § 129, R.

ducti ne antè partam rei militāris laudem amittĕrent,[a] fortissĭmè pugnantes concidērunt. Milĭtum pars, horum virtūte submōtis hostĭbus,[b] præter spem incolŭmis in castra pervēnit; pars a barbăris circumventa periit.

41. Germāni, desperātâ expugnatiōne[b] castrōrum, quod nostros jam constitisse[c] in munitionĭbus vidēbant, cum eâ prædâ, quam in silvis deposuĕrant, trans Rhenum sese recepērunt. Ac tantus fuit etiam post discessum hostium terror, ut eâ nocte,[d] cùm Caius Volusēnus missus cum equitātu ad castra venisset,[e] [1] fidem non facĕret,[f] adesse cum incolŭmi Cæsărem exercĭtu. Sic omnium anĭmos timor præoccupavĕrat, ut, [2] pæne alienātâ mente,[b] delētis omnĭbus copiis equitātum tantùm se ex fugâ recepisse,[c] dicĕrent,[f] neque, incolŭmi exercĭtu, Germānos castra oppugnatūros fuisse contendĕrent. Quem[g] timōrem Cæsăris adventus sustŭlit.

42. Reversus ille, eventus belli non ignōrans, [3] unum, quòd cohortes ex statiōne et præsidio essent[h] emissæ, questus, [4] ne minĭmo quidem casu[i] locum relinqui debuisse, multum fortūnam in repentĭno hostium adventu potuisse indicāvit; multo etiam ampliùs, quòd pæne ab ipso vallo portisque castrōrum barbăros avertisset. [5] Quarum[g] omnium rerum[k] maxĭmè admirandum videbātur, quòd Germāni, qui eo consilio Rhenum transiĕrant, ut Ambiorĭgis fines depopularentur,[f] ad castra Romanōrum delāti, [6] optatissĭmum Ambiorĭgi beneficium obtulĕrint.[l]

43. Cæsar, rursus, [7] ad vexandos hostes profectus, magno coacto numĕro[b] ex finitĭmis civitatĭbus, in omnes partes dimittit. Omnes vici atque omnia ædificia, quæ quisque conspexĕrat, incendebantur: præda ex omnĭbus locis agebātur: frumenta non solùm a tantâ multitudĭne jumentōrum atque homĭnum consumebantur, sed etiam anni tempŏre atque im-

[a] § 140, 1, 2d.
[b] 109, 2.
[c] 98, 2.
[d] § 131, R. XL.
[e] § 140, Obs. 4.
[f] § 140, 1, 1st.
[g] 38.
[h] § 140, 1, 3d.
[i] § 126, R. III.
[k] § 135, R. XLVII.
[l] § 140, 1, 4th.

brĭbus procubuĕrant; ut, si qui etiam in præsentia se occultâssent, tamen iis,[a] deducto exercĭtu, rerum omnium inopiâ pereundum viderētur. Ac sæpe in eum locum ventum est,[b] tanto in omnes partes divīso equitātu, ut modò visum[c] ab se Ambiorĭgem[d] in fugâ captīvi, nec planè etiam abîsse[c] ex conspectu contendĕrent, ut, spe consequendi illātâ atque infinīto labōre suscepto, qui se summam ab Cæsăre gratiam[e] initūros putārent,[f] [1]pæne natūram studio vincĕrent,[g] semperque paulum [2]ad summam felicitātem defuisse viderētur,[g] atque [3]ille latēbris aut saltĭbus se eripĕret,[g] et noctu occultātus alias regiōnes partesque petĕret,[g] non majōre equĭtum præsidio, quàm quatuor, quibus[h] solis vitam suam committĕre audēbat.

44. Tali modo vastātis regionĭbus,[i] exercĭtum Cæsar duārum cohortium damno Durocortōrum[k] Remōrum redūcit, conciliōque in eum locum Galliæ indicto,[l] de conjuratiōne Senŏnum et Carnūtum quæstiōnem habēre instituit; et de Accōne, qui princeps[l] ejus consilii fuĕrat, graviōre sententiâ[i] pronunciātâ, [4]more majōrum supplicium sumsit. Nonnulli judicium verĭti profugērunt; [5]quibus[m] cùm aquâ[n] atque igni[o] interdixisset, duas legiōnes ad fines Trevirōrum, duas in Lingonĭbus, sex relĭquas in Senŏnum finĭbus Agendĭci in hibernis collocāvit; frumentōque [6]exercĭtu[p] provīso, ut instituĕrat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos profectus est.

---

[a] § 147, R.	[f] § 141, R. III.	[l] § 103, R. V.
[b] 67, Note.	[g] § 140, 1, 1st.	[m] § 112, R. IV.
[c] 98, 2.	[h] § 123, R.	[n] § 136, Obs. 5, (*ab.*)
[d] § 145, R.	[i] 109, 2.	[o] § 15, 7.
[e] § 136, R. LII.	[k] § 130, 2.	[p] § 126, R. III.

NOTES ON BOOK I.

PAGE 53.—1. *Quarum*, supply *partium*, of these parts.—2. (Ii) *qui appellantur Celtæ ipsōrum linguâ, Galli nostrâ* (linguâ, incŏlunt*) *tertiam* (partem).—3. *Institūtis*, customs.—4. *Inter se*, among themselves; from each other.—5. Arrange: *Flumen Garumna divĭdit Gallos ab Aquitānis, Matrŏna et Sequăna* (divĭdunt Gallos) *a Belgis.*—6. *Cultu*, civilization, mode of living—*humanitāte*, refinement, mental culture.—7. *Minĭmè sæpe*, least often, *i. e.* very seldom.—8. *Eos*, i. e. *Germānos.*—9. *Ipsi*, i. e. *Helvetii.*—10. *Eōrum*, of them, i. e. of the Germans.—11. *Eōrum*, (finium), of those confines, or territories, of that country, i. e. one of the three general divisions of Gaul.—12. *Vergit ad Septentriōnes*, it inclines, or extends towards the north.

P. 54.—1. *Ab extrēmis finĭbus*, from the remotest, or most distant confines of Gaul; meaning the most northern limit of the division then inhabited by the Celtæ, or Gauls, called Gallia propria, and here called *extrēmis*, because farthest distant from Rome.—2. *Spectant*, &c., they look towards—the country faces—the northeast.—3. *Ad Hispaniam*, at—next to—Spain, *viz:* the Bay of Biscay.—4. *Consŭles*, See Index.—5. *Civitati*, his state:—*Civĭtas* means all the people living under one government.—6. *Potīri imperio*, to obtain the government.—7. *Persuāsit id eis faciliùs hoc*, he persuaded them to that measure more easily, on this account.—8. *Natūrâ loci*, by the nature of the place, or, of their situation; by their natural situation.—9. *Pro multitudĭne homĭnum*, for, in proportion to, the number of inhabitants; in proportion to the population.—10. *Belli atque fortitudĭnis*, for war and bravery.—11. *Qui patēbant*, which extended.—12. *Adducti his rebus*, induced by these circumstances. 13. *Ad proficiscendum*, for their departure. 14. *Carrōrum quàm maxĭmum numĕrum*, as great a number of wagons as possible.—15. *Sementes quàm maxĭmas*, as great sowings as possible.

P. 55.—1. *In tertium annum*, against the third year.—2. *Occupāret*, that he should take possession of:—The imperfect subjunctive here follows the present (*persuādet*) on the principle stated.

* Latin words not in Italics, or enclosed in parentheses, are not in the text, but are here supplied, to shew the full construction of the sentence.

§ 137, Obs. 1.—3. *Principātum*, the highest power or authority.—4. *Probat illis, perfacĭle esse factu, perficĕre conāta*, he (Orgetorix) assures them that the accomplishment of their designs would be easily done; that their designs would be easily accomplished.—5. *Totius Galliæ*, i. e. *civitatĭbus totius Galliæ*, &c., Of the states of all Gaul the Helvetii,—*possent* (facĕre) *plurĭmum*, could do most, *i. e.* were most powerful.—6. *Inter se*, among themselves, to each other, mutually.—7. *Per tres—popŭlos*, viz: the Helvetii, Sequăni, and Ædui.—8. Arrange: *Sperant sese posse potīri* (imperio) *totius Galliæ*.—9. *Ea res*, this design.—10. *Per indicium*, by information. 11. *Ex vincŭlis*, Out of chains, *i. e.* in chains.—12. Arrange: *Oportēbat pœnam sequi* (Orgetorīgem) *damnātum, ut cremarētur igni*, it behoved this punishment to follow, overtake, *Orgetorix*, being condemned, that he should be burned with fire.—13. *Familiam*, household—including domestics, slaves, &c.—14. *Ad millia decem*, about ten thousand;—*Ad*, with a numeral, signifies about, near, or towards.

P. 56.—1. *Magistrātus cogĕrent*, the magistrates (of the Ædui) were collecting.—2. *Quin ipse*, but that he.—3. *Ad*, about.—4. *Trium mensium*, for three months.—5. *Molĭta cibaria*, ground provisions, *i. e.* meal or flour.—6. *Usi eōdem consilio*, following the same counsel or design; adopting the same resolution.—7. *Boiosque*, &c.,—*receptos ad se*, &c., having received the Boii, &c., they join them to themselves as allies; Or, they receive, and join to themselves as allies, the Boii, &c. For this use of the perfect participle see Idioms, 104.—8. *Vix quâ*, scil. viâ, where, or, by which way. 9. *Provinciam nostram*, our province; the Roman province in the south of Gaul, afterwards called Gallia Narbonensis.—10. *Proptĕrea quòd*, because; literally, on this account that.—11. *Isque transĭtur vado*, and it is crossed by a ford, *i. e.* it is fordable.

P. 57.—1. *Bono anĭmo*, of a good mind, friendly disposition, well affected.—2. *Diem*, see *Dies*, Index.—3. *Ante diem quintum*, &c. The fifth before the Kalends of April, *i. e.* the 28th March. See Gr. App. I.—4. *Lucio Pisōne*, &c., that was, A. U. C. 696, B. C. 58.—5. *Urbe*, scil. *Româ*.—6. *Galliam ulteriōrem*, farther Gaul, *i. e.* Gaul beyond the Alps.—7. *Provinciæ toti*, &c. he orders as many soldiers as possible from the whole province, *i. e.* he levies, &c.:—For explanation of this construction see § 123. Exp.—8. *Ad*, near—9. *Facti sunt certiōres*, were made more certain; were informed. 10. *Esse sibi in anĭmo*, that they had it in design; that it was their intention; literally, that it was in the mind to them.—11. *Voluntāte*, with his consent. 12. *Sub jugum missum*, sent under the yoke:—

Two spears were set upright in the ground, and another was laid across them at top, forming what the Romans called *jugum*. Under this they who were admitted to surrender upon these terms were compelled to pass unarmed, *nudi*.—13. *Concedendum* (esse sibi,) that he ought to yield to their request.—14. *Ante diem Idus Aprīlis*, i. e. the 12th April, see App. I.

P. 58.—1. *Qui in flumen*—As the Rhone flows through the lake Lemanus, and of course out of it, it is here said that the lake flows into it. 2. *Ad montem Juram*, towards mount Jura.—3. *Millia passuum novem decem*, nineteen miles in length. See App. VI. Table 5.—4. *Castella commūnit*, he strongly fortifies castles, or redoubts. § 91, Obs. 1. 5th.—5. *Se invīto*, he being unwilling, *i. e.* against his will, or inclination.—6. *Negat se, more*, &c. he declares that he cannot, consistently with the custom, &c. *Negat* is equivalent to *dicit non*.—7 *Navĭbus junctis ratibusque*, &c., some by means of boats joined together, and numerous rafts being made; before *navĭbus* supply *Alii*.—8. *Quà minĭma*, &c., where the depth of the river was least. 9. *Perrumpĕre*, break through, force a passage.—10. *Eo deprecatōre*, he being intercessor; by his mediation.—11. *Gratiâ et largitiōne*, by his personal influence and liberality—*potŭrat* (facĕre) *plurĭmum*, could accomplish a very great deal.—12. *In matrimonium duxĕrat*, had married; literally, had led into matrimony. *Ducĕre uxōrem* (domum) "to marry," is said of the husband, because a part of the ceremony consisted in leading the wife home to his house. *Nubĕre* (se) *viro*, "to marry," is said of the wife, (literally, "to veil herself to her husband,") because during the ceremony she wore a flame-colored veil.—13. *Novis rebus studebat*, desired. wished for, new things; aimed at, plotted, a revolution in the state.

P. 59.—1. *Sequăni* (dent obsĭdes);—*Helvetii* (dent obsĭdes). 2. *Ne prohibeant*, that they would not prevent, or hinder, the Helvetii from (using) this route.—3. *Cæsări renunciatur*, Intelligence is brought to Cæsar; § 126, R. III.—4. *Intelligēbat*, &c.—he perceived it would be very dangerous to the province—*ut habēret*, to have;(literally, that it should have).—5. *Proxĭmum*, nearest, *i. e.* shortest.—6. *Quod est extrēmum* (oppĭdum) *citeriōris Provinciæ*, which is the most distant town (viz: from Rome,) of the hither province, *i. e.* of Cisalpine Gaul; See Index.—7. *Rogātum auxilium*, to ask assistance.

P. 60.—1. *Necessarii*, &c., friends and relations.—2. *Sibi præter agri*, &c. that nothing was left to them except the soil of their land; except a desolate country.—3. *Flumen est Arar*, The Arar

(now the Saone,) is a river.—4. *Incredibĭli lenitāte*, with surprising smoothness.—5. *In utram partem*, into which part; which way; in which direction.—6. *Id transībant*, were crossing that;—*lintrĭbus*, canoes, small boats.—7. *De tertiâ vigiliâ*, at the third watch, *i. e.* midnight; See App. I.—8. *Impedītos*, encumbered with their baggage.—9. *In proxĭmas silvas*, &c., went into the neighboring forests and hid themselves:—This expresses the force of the accusative after *in.*—10. *Princeps pœnas persolvit*, first suffered punishment; § 98, Obs. 10, *i. e.* was the first to suffer punishment.

P. 61.—1. Arrange: *Tigurīni* interfecērunt *L. Pisōnem legātum, avum L. Pisōnis ejus* (i. e. Cæsăris,) *socĕri eōdem prœlio quo* Tigurīni *interfecĕrant Cassium.*—2. *Consĕqui*, come up with, overtake.—3. *Pontem in Arări*, &c. that a bridge should be made over the Arar.—4. *Cassiāno bello*, in the war with Cassius; See Index, *Cassius.*—5. *Ita cum Cæsăre agit*, thus speaks with, or addresses Cæsar:—This address of Divico is in the form of oblique narration; See § 140, 6, & § 141, R. VI., with explanation, &c.—6. *Vetĕris incommŏdi*, the old disaster; alluding to the defeat of Cassius.—7.—*Tribuĕret* (quidquam) *magnopĕre*, &c., should ascribe any thing too greatly to his own bravery.—8. *Ne committĕret*, that he should not cause; bring it to pass—*aut prodĕret*, &c., or hand down to posterity the memory of such an event.—9.—*Cæsar respondit*, Cæsar replied. All that follows in this chapter is oblique narration; the the verb *respondit* being in the perfect indefinite, the leading verb governed by it in the present infinitive is translated as the perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive as the pluperfect indicative; See Idioms, Nos. 96, 98.—10. *Qui si*, if they, viz: the Roman people.

P. 62.—1. *Non fuisse*, &c., it would not have been difficult to guard against it; the subject of *fuisse* is *cavēre*, and strictly rendered is, "that to guard against it would not have been difficult."—2. *Sed eo deceptum* esse, &c., but that they (the Roman people) had been deceived by this, because they did not think any thing had been done by them;—Supply *quidquam* before *commissum.*—3. *Timendum* (esse sibi,) that they should fear.—4. *Quòd si vellet*, but if, even although, he were willing.—5. *Num etiam—posse*, &c.? Could he also lay aside, &c.?—6. *Eōdem pertinēre*, were to the same effect; *pertinēre* has for its subject the two preceding clauses.—7. *Secundiōres res*, more prosperous things; greater prosperity.—8. *Quum ea sint ita*, although these things are so; although this is the case.—9. *Testem ejus rei*, a proof of that custom.—10. *Cupidiùs*, too eagerly.— *Alieno loco*, in a disadvantageous, or unfavorable place.

P. 63.—1. *Novissĭmo agmĭne*, the rear, *i. e.* the "last line" "the hindmost" on the march.—2. *Satis habēbat*, &c., considered it sufficient for the present.—3. *Nostrum primum* (agmen), our van.—4. *Quinis aut senis*, &c., five or six miles (each day).—5. *Flagitāre* (for *flagitābat*,) continued to importune—*publĭcè*, in the name of their state.—6. *Frigŏra*, the cold; the coldness of the climate.—7. *Sub septentrionĭbus*, under the north; towards the north.—This must be understood in relation to Italy.—8. *Frumento*, corn:—At this time not meal or bread was served out to the Roman soldiers, but raw corn, which they themselves prepared.—9. *Conferri*, &c., that it was collecting, bringing in, at hand.—10. *Diutius*, too long; See Idioms, 22.—11. *Qui summo*, &c., who was invested with the office of chief magistrate.

P. 64.—1. *Tacuĕrat*, had concealed.—2. *Valĕat plurĭmùm*, is very powerful; has great influence.—3. *Privāti*, though private individuals.—4, *Necessariò coactus*, compelled by necessity, (*Necessariò* for *necessitāte*.)—5. *Designāri*, was meant.—6. *Nolēbat eas res jactāri, multis presentĭbus*, he was unwilling, he did not wish, that these affairs should be discussed, so many being present; in the presence of so many.—7. *Solo*, (Lisco,) of him alone.—8. *Redempta habēre*, &c., had farmed the customs, and all the other public revenues of the Ædui: *Portoria* means duties on exports and imports,—*vectigalia* means every other kind of tax or revenue. Those who "farmed" them bought them at the lowest price they could, from the government, and collected them for their own use.

P. 65.—1. *Facultātes magnas comparâsse*, &c., had acquired great means for bestowing presents, namely, for the purpose of extending and strengthening his influence. 2. *Largĭter posse*, had great influence—*collocâsse* (nuptum), had given in marriage.—3. *Cupĕre* (for *bene velle*), wished well to.—4. *Si quid* (adversi) *accĭdat*, if any thing unfortunate should happen; if any calamity befel—5. *Inquirendo*, by enquiry, on enquiring.—6. *Equitātu* (the old dative for *equitatui*; § 16, Exc. 2) *præĕrat*, was over, or commanded the cavalry.—7. *Certissĭmæ res*, most certain; most unquestionable facts.—8. *Injussu suo*, &c without his order and the order of the state (viz: of the Ædui).

P. 66.—1. *Voluntātem*, affection.—2. *Commonefăcit*, reminds him.—3. *Ostendit*, shews him.—4. *Causâ cognĭtâ*, the cause being tried or investigated.—5. *Nequid gravius*, &c. that he (Cæsar) should not determine any thing too severe; that he should not pass too severe a sentence.—6. *Ipse*, he himself (viz: Divitiacus).—

7 *Ille*, he (*i. e.* Dumnorix).—8. *Fraterno amōre*, by brotherly love; by love or affection for his brother.

P. 67.—1. *Adhĭbet*, brings in—*propōnit*, lays before him.—2. *Divitiăco fratri*, to his brother, *i. e.* at the request of, and for the sake of his brother, Divitiacus.—3. *Custōdes*, spies.—4. *Consedisse*, had sat down, *i. e.* had encamped.—5. *Facĭlem* (ascensum) *esse*, that the ascent was easy.—6. *Vigiliâ;* See Index; also Appendix to Gr. I.—7. See Index, *Legātus*.—8. See Index, *Prætor—Legātum proprætōre*, a lieutenant with prætorian powers.—9. *Et iis ducĭbus*, and with those as guides.—10. *In* (exercĭtu) *M. Crassi*.—11. *Primâ luce*, at the first daylight; at the dawn of day.—12. *Ipse*, he himself (*i. e.*) Cæsar).—13. *Equo admisso*, his horse being put to it; spurred up, *i. e.* at full gallop.

P. 68.—1. *Multo die* (acto) much of the day being past; when much of the day was past.—2. *Pro viso*, literally, for seen, *i. e.* as if it had actually been seen by him.—3. *Quo consuĕrat intervallo*, at the distance at which he had been accustomed to follow, *i. e.* at the usual distance. 4. *Exercĭtu* (the old dative for *exercitui*,) *frumentum metīri*, to measure out, *i. e.* to serve out corn for the army.—5. *Rei frumentariæ prospiciendum* (esse sibi), that he must provide for a supply of corn.—6. *Decurio*, See Index.—7. *Discedĕre*, were departing from them.—8. (Helvetii) *confidĕrent* (Romānos) *posse*, &c.—9. *Anĭmum advertit*, (same as *animadvertit*,) perceives; § 44, I. 3.—10. *Qui sustinēret impĕtum*, to sustain the charge.

P. 69.—1. *Citeriōre Galliâ*, hither Gaul; the north of Italy. 2. *Complēri*, to be filled, to be covered.—3. *Eum*, it, *i. e.* the place in which the baggage was.—4. *Confertissĭmâ acie*, &c., in very close array—*phalange factâ*, a phalanx being made. The German phalanx consisted of a very close body of men with their shields held over their heads, and overlapping so as to form a shed or screen like the Roman testudo, to defend them from the missiles of the enemy. The Macedonian phalanx, on the other hand, consisted of a body of men, sixteen deep and five hundred long —5. *Sub*, close up to.—6. *Suo* (equo remōto).—7. *Pericŭlo omnium* (i. e. Imperatōris et milĭtum) *æquāto*, the danger of all being equal; all being exposed to equal danger.—8. *Scutum*, See Index.—9. *Satis commŏdè*, conveniently enough; with sufficient ease or readiness.—10. *Nudo*, naked, unprotected:—Their bodies were exposed to the darts of the enemy, from having thrown down their shields.—11. *Pedem referre*, to retreat; literally, to take back the foot.—12. *Claudĕbant agmen*, closed up the rear,—13. *Bipartīto*, in two parties; in two divisions

The army was drawn up in three lines, of which the first and second lines, forming one division, made head against those who had been defeated and compelled to retreat, *i. e.* the Helvetians, who were now returning to the attack; and the third line sustained the attack of those advancing (*venientes*,) against them, the fresh troops, *i. e.* the Boii and the Tulingi, who were coming up in the rear.

P. 70.—1. *Ancipĭti prœlio*, in doubtful battle, *i. e.* victory inclining to neither side.—2. *Altĕri*, the one, *i. e.* the Helvetii—*altĕri*, the other, *i. e.* the Boii and the Tulingi.—3. *Ab septĭmâ horâ*, from the seventh hour, *i. e.* one o'clock p. m.; See Index, *hora*.—4. *Aversum*. turned away; who had turned his back; retreating; flying.—5. *Pugnātum est ad multam noctem*, It was fought till a great part of the night was past; till late at night.—6. *Matăras ac tragŭlas*, &c. continued throwing lances and javelins from beneath.—7. *Qui, si juvissent*, for, if they should aid them; See Idioms, 39.—8. Arrange: *Se habitūrum* eos (Lingònas) *eōdem loco quo* ille, (Cæsar,) habēret *Helvetios*.—9. *Qui, cùm convenissent*, and they, when they had met; See Ref.

P. 71.—1. *Occultāri*, be concealed. (viz: from Cæsar).—2. *Omnīno ignorāri*, be altogether unknown; remain altogether unnoticed.—3. *Primâ nocte*, at the beginning of the night.—4. Arrange *Imperāvit his per quorum fines iĕrant, utì*, &c.—5. *Habuit*, &c., treated as enemies; *i. e.* either put them to death or sold them as slaves.—6. *Ipsos*, them, viz: the Helvetii, Tulingi, and Latobrigi.—7. *Vacāre*, to be empty; to be uninhabited.—8. Arrange, *Concessit Æduis petentĭbus, ut* (Ædui) *collocārent Boios in suis finĭbus, quòd* (Boii) *cognĭti erant egregiâ virtūte: quibus* (Scil. Boiis) *illi* (Ædui) *dedērunt agros*.—9. *Tabŭlæ*, lists; literally, tablets:—These were made of wood covered with wax, on which the Romans were accustomed to write with the stylus.—10. *Confectæ Græcis litĕris*, written in Greek letters.—11. *Ratio*, an account.

P. 72.—1. *Capĭtum*, literally, "of heads," *i. e.* persons, souls. 2. *Censu habĭto*, the census having been held; the number having been taken:—This was only a numbering of the army, and consequently very different from the Roman *census;* See Index, *Census*.—3. *Gratulatum*, to congratulate him:—After *gratulātum* supply *dicentes*, expressing past time; See Idioms, 94, 4, and 1, 2d.—4. *Pro veterĭbus injuriis*, &c., for the ancient injuries done by the Helvetii to the Roman people. Here two genitives are governed by one noun, the one, (*Helvetiōrum*) in an active sense, and the other (*Popŭli Romāni*) in a passive sense; § 106, Obs. 1, & 2.—5. *Ne quis*, &c

that no one should disclose their deliberations, unless those to whom this charge should be given by the assembly at large.

P. 73.—1. *Non minùs*, &c.; See Note 3, preceding page. The statement of the chiefs, and of Divitiacus who spoke for them, it will be perceived, is given in the form of oblique narration—of course, the leading verbs are in the infinitive mood governed by *dicentes*, or *dicens* expressing past time, because agreeing with the subject of verbs in the perfect tense. Hence the present infinitive, with a subject, will be translated in the perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive, in the pluperfect, as the references show; and also all the verbs in subordinate clauses are in the subjunctive; See § 140, 6, and § 141, R. VI., &c.—2. *Harum* (factiōnum) &c. that the Ædui were at the head of one of these factions, and the Averni at the head of the other.—3. *Hi cùm contendĕrent*, &c.; since these (the Ædui and Averni) had contended for the superiority.—4. *Horum*, of the latter, (viz: the Germans).—5. *Copias; copia* in the singular means "abundance," in the plural, commonly "forces," but here, great abundance; the plural form rendering it emphatic.—6. *Neque recusatūros quo minùs essent*, &c. nor refuse to be forever under their sway and government: Idioms, 78, Note, & 7.—7. *Se unum*, that he (Divitiacus) was the only one.

P. 74.—1. *Quibus locus*, &c. for whom a settlement and habitations were to be procured.—2. *Futūrum esse*, that it would be; that the consequence in a few years would be.—3. *Neque enim*, &c., For neither was the Gallic territory to be compared with that of the Germans.—4. *Ut semel*. when once, i. e. as soon as.—5. *Omnia exempla cruciatusque*, all manner of cruelties: by Hendiadys (§ 150, 2, 2d,) for *exempla cruciatuum*.—6. *Nisi si*, same as *nisi*, unless.—7. *Ut*, namely, that.

P. 75.—1. *Habĭtâ*, being delivered.—2. *Exprimĕre*, draw, extort.—3. *Hoc*, on this account.—4. *Præ* (fortūnâ) *reliquōrum*, in comparison with the fortune of the rest; or simply, than the rest.—5. *Fugæ facultas*, the means of escape.—6. *Omnes cruciātus*, all tortures, *i. e.* all kinds of torture.7. *Eam rem futūram* (esse) *curæ sibi*, that that thing would be a care to him; that he would attend to that matter.—8. *Secundum ea*, &c., besides these things, many circumstances induced him—*quare putāret*, to think; literally, why he should think.

P. 76.—1. *Occurrendum*, &c., he must meet, or thwart, as early as possible.—2. *Placuit ei*, it pleased him, *i. e.* he resolved.—3. *Et summis utrisque rebus*, matters of the greatest importance to

both.—4. *Si quid ipsi*, &c, if any thing had been wanted by him from Cæsar, *i. e.* if he had wanted any thing from Cæsar.—5. *Si quid ille se velit*, if he (Cæsar,) wished any thing from him (Ariovistus).—6. *Sine magno commeātu atque emolimento*, (better than *emolumento*,) without great expense and trouble.—7. Arrange. *Quid negotii esset aut Cæsări*, &c.

P. 77.—1. *Hanc gratiam referret*, he should make this return —*ut gravarētur*, that he grudged, or, was reluctant.—2. *Neque*. used conjunctively, equivalent to *et non*.—3. *Dicendum sibi et cognoscendum*, &c., that he should not think it necessary for him to speak, and inform himself about a matter of common interest.—4. *Ne quam*, &c. (equivalent to *ne alīquam*,) that he should not lead any, &c.—5. *Injuriâ* literally, with injury, *i. e.* without just cause.—6. *Quod*, i. e. *secundum id quod*, according to that which, *i. e.* as far as (equivalent to *quantum*) he could do it consistently with the interest of the republic.—7. *Item*, in like manner.—8. *Non opportēre se impedīri*, that he ought not to be hindered.

P. 78.—1. *Longè iis abfutūrum*, would be far from them. *i. e.* would do them no good. 2. *Quod sibi*, &c. as to what Cæsar threatened to him, namely.—3. *Inter*, during.—4. *Virtūte* (facĕre) *possent*, could effect by valor.—5. *Ædui* (veniēbant) *questum*.—6. *Trevĭri autem* (veniēbant questum).—7. *Ne—minùs facĭle*, &c., lest—he (Ariovistus) might be less easily resisted.—8. *Re frumentariâ comparātâ*, having provided a supply of corn; Idioms, 104.—9. *Tridui viam*, a journey of three days.—10. *Contendĕre*. was hastening—*processisse*, had advanced—*ad occupandum Vesontiōnem*, to take possession of Vesontio.—11. *Summa facultas*, the greatest abundance. 12. *Ad ducendum bellum*, for protracting the war.

P. 79.—1. *Ut circĭno circumductum*, as if traced around it with a pair of compasses.—2. *Non amplius* (spatio), not more than the space.—3. *Contĭnet*, closes, occupies.—4. *Murus, circumdătus hunc* (montem,) *efficit arcem, et conjungit* (montem) *cum oppĭdo*, a wall, thrown around, converts this mountain into a citadel, and connects it with the town.—5. *Ex percunctatiōne*, &c., from the enquiries of our men, and the statements of the Gauls.—6. *Vultum et aciem oculōrum*, their look and the fierceness of their eyes.—7. *Tribūnis,—præfectis;* See Index.—8. *Quorum alius*, &c., of whom one having assigned one reason, another, another reason, which they said was a necessary one, (or rendered it necessary,) for them to return home.—9. *Fingĕre vultum*, compose their countenance.

P. 80.—1. *Qui*, i. e. *ii qui*, those who.—2. *Dicto audiens*, obedient to the order:—*Dicto* is governed in the dative here by *audiens*, § 111, R.: both words together commonly signify obedient. and govern a dative by the same rule; as, *Duci dicto audiens*, obedient to the general.—3. *Consilio convocāto*, a council (of war) being called; or, having called a council of war.—4. *Sibi quærendum*, that they must enquire, i. e. that it was their business to enquire.—5. *Sibi quidem persuaderi*, that he was even persuaded.—6. *Suis postulātis*, &c., his demands being known, and the fairness.—7. *Suâ*, their own—*ipsius*, his.—8. *Factum* (esse) *pericŭlum*, that trial had been made. 9. *Servīli tumultu*, (equivalent to *servōrum tumultu*) the insurrection of the slaves.

P. 81.—1. *In suis*, in their own, (*i. e.* the Helvetii)—*illōrum* (i. e. *Germanōrum*) *finĭbus*, in their territories.—2. *Quos*, for *aliquos*. any.—3. *Neque sui potestatem fecisset*, and had not given an opportunity of coming to an engagement with him:—*Facĕre potestātem sui*, means to allow one's self to be approached.—4. *Ratiōne et consilio*, by stratagem and cunning.—5. *Qui*, i. e. *ii qui*, those who.—6. *Quod non fore dicto*, &c., As to this, that it was said the soldiers would not be obedient to orders.—7. *Scire enim quibuscumque*, &c., for he knew, to whomsoever, (*i e.* in all cases in which; § 99, Obs. 7,) an army would not be obedient, that either, &c.—8. *Itāque se, quod*, &c., that he would therefore do immediately that which he was going to put off to a more distant day.

P. 82.—1. *Prætoriam cohortem*, a body guard.—2. *Confidēbat maxĭmè*, trusted most.—3. *Princeps*, first —4. *Egērunt*, strove—before *se neque*, supply *dicentes* or *dixērunt*; See Idioms, 94, 4.—5. *Satisfactiōne*, their apology, excuse.—6. *Exquisito*, being reconnoitred.—7. (Supply *qui dicĕrent*.) *quod*, &c., to say that that which, &c.—8. *Fore uti desistĕret*, that he would desist; See Ref.

P. 83.—1. *Ne quem pedĭtem*, &c. that Cæsar should not bring any infantry.—2. *Tolli*, should be prevented, thwarted.—3. *Commodissĭmum*, most expedient.—4. *Omnĭbus equis*, &c., All their horses being taken from the Gallic cavalry, to mount on them, (literally, thereon).—5. *Si quid opus*, &c., if there should be any need of action; § 118, R. XXII.—6. *Nunc rescribĕre ad equum*, he now enrolled them among the cavalry.—7. *Ex equis*. on horseback—*denos*, ten each.—8. *Ubi ventum est eò*, when they came to the place appointed; See Ref.

P. 84.—1. *Necessitudĭnis*, &c., of alliance existed between them and the Ædui.—2. *Nihil sui*, nothing of their own.—3. *Aucti-*

ōres encreased, farther advanced.—4. *Quos ampliùs*, any more.—5. *Rogātum et arcessītum*, having been asked and sent for.

P. 85.—1. *Quòd multitudĭnem, transducat*, as to his leading &c., ; literally, as to this that he led ; See Idioms, 38, Note.—2. *Defendĕrit*, had warded it off.—3. *Quid sibi vellet ?* (Cæsar) What did he (Cæsar) want ?—Here *sibi* refers to Cæsar, *suas* to Ariovistus —4. *Hanc Galliam*, &c. That this Gaul (viz : in the north,) belonged to him (Ariovistus)—*Sicut illam nostram*, just as that (viz : the Roman Province) to us.—5. *Qui*, Since we.—6. *Quòd dicĕret*; as to that which he said ; or since he said.—7. *Sese factūrum esse gratum*, that he would do an agreeable thing, a favor ; would oblige.

P. 86.—1. *In eam sententiam*, to this effect.—2. *Esse Ariovisti*, &c., belonged to Ariovistus, rather than to the Roman people.—3. *Quodque tempus*, &c., if all ancient time—the most ancient—the most distant period ought to be regarded.—4. *Voluisset*, had decreed. 5. *Propiùs* (ad) *tumŭlum*.—6. *Per fidem*, by relying on his faith.—7. *Vulgus milĭtum*, among the common soldiers.—8. *Quâ arrogantiâ usus*, &c., using what arrogance, or with what arrogance Ariovistus had interdicted the Romans from all Gaul, and his cavalry had made an attack on our men, and how that affair had broken up the conference:—These subjunctives are all in the same construction, containing an indirect question, the first and second indicated by *quâ arrōgantiâ*, and the third by *ut;* § 140, 5.—9. *Injectum est*, was infused.

P. 87.—1. *Neque perfectæ essent*, and had not been completed: § 93, 1.—2. *Quin conjicĕrent*, from throwing; See Ref.—3. *In eo peccandi*. &c., and because in him the Germans had no cause of sinning, of committing any act of violence.—4. *Causâ speculandi?* for the sake of spying? on purpose to act as spies?

P. 88.—1. *Ei potestas non deesset*, an opportunity might not be wanting to him, *i. e.* he might have the opportunity.—2 *Quos ex omni*, &c., literally, whom they had selected from the whole army, each horseman one.—3. *Si quò*, &c. if they had to advance farther than usual in any direction.—4. *Cursum adæquārent*, equalled their speed.–5*Quo in loco*, &c. in which the Germans had encamped. 6. *Quæ copiæ*, that these forces.

P. 89.—1. *Suo institūto*, according to his custom, or design —2. *A majorĭbus* (castris) from the larger camp —3. *Sortĭbus et vaticinationĭbus*, by lots and auguries.—4. *Ex usu esset*, &c., whether or not it would be of advantage that the battle should be joined.—

5. *Non esse fas*, that it was not the will of the gods.—6. *Alarios*, the auxiliaries:—So called from their being in general placed on the wings (*alæ*) of the army when in the order of battle.—7. *Pro*, in front of.—8. *Ad speciem*, for show; for appearance.—9. *Generătim*, by nations.—10. *Rhedis*, carriages,—*carris*, baggage wagons.—11. *Eò*, on them.

P. 90.—1. *Singŭlis legionĭbus*, &c., placed a lieutenant and quæstor over each legion.—2. *Minĭmè firmam*, least firm, weakest. 3. See Note 4, p. 69.—4. *Expeditior*, more disengaged; more at liberty.—5. *Neque destitĕrunt fugĕre*, nor did they cease to fly; discontinue their flight.—6. *In his*, among these.—7. *Quam duxĕrat*, whom he had married.—8. *Duæ filiæ*, &c. the two daughters of these,—the one was killed and the other taken captive.

P. 91.—1. *In ipsum Cæsărem*, &c.. fell in with Cæsar himself. 2. *Beneficio*, by the favor.—3. *Proxĭmi*, next to; bordering upon.—4. *In citeriōrem Galliam*, into hither Gaul:—The northern part of Italy, or that part of Gaul south of the Alps, was called Cisalpine, or hither Gaul, from being on *this side* of the Alps with regard to Rome.—5. *Ad agendos conventus*, to hold the assizes, or courts of justice:—This was usually attended to in the winter, when military operations could not be carried on.

NOTES ON BOOK II.

PAGE 92.—1. *Cùm esset Cæsar*, &c.:—The time here indicated was in the year of the city 697, and 57 years B. C.—2. *Crebri rumōres*, frequent reports. 3. *Dixerāmus*, we had said; B. I. Ch. 1.—4. *Conjurandi*, of the conspiracy.—5. *Partim qui*, some of whom; *ut*, as on the one hand—*ita*, so, on the other.—6. *Partim qui*, while others.—7. *Novis imperiis studēbat*, were in favor of a change of government.—8. *Ab nonnullis* (solicitarentur).—9. *Qui ad conducendos*, &c., who had the means for hiring troops.—10. *Eam rem in imperio nostro consĕqui potĕrant*, could accomplish that object under our government.—11. *Inĭta æstāte*, in the beginning of summer.—12. *Dat negotium*, he gives a commission, he directs.—13. *Cognoscant*, should learn.

P. 93.—1. *Quin proficiscerētur*, but that he should march, about marching.—2. *Celeriùsque*, &c., and sooner than the expectation of all, (of any one,) *i. e.* than all (or any one) expected.—3. *Neque se consensisse*, that they had neither agreed; approved of the design; joined, entered into the confederacy.—4. *Furōrem*, infatuation.—5. *Ab his*, from these, viz: the ambassadors from the Remi.—6. *Quantæ*, how powerful.—7. *Omnia se habēre explorāta*, that they had all things fully examined.

P. 94.—1. *Divitiăcum*, Divitiacus—not the Æduan.—2. *Totius belli summam*, the direction of the whole war.—3. *Longissĭmè absint*, are very remote.—4. *Qui appellantur uno nomĭne Germāni*, who are called by one name, Germans—*ad quadraginta millia*, about forty thousand.—5. *Liberalĭter prosecūtus oratiōne*, having complimented them highly in a speech.—6. *Ad diem*, by the day appointed.—7. *Magno opĕre*, i. e. *magnopĕrè*, greatly—*quanto opĕre*, i. e. *quantopĕre*, how much it concerned.—8. *Ne confligendum sit*, that he might not have to contend.

P. 95.—1. *Quæ res*, this position.—2. *Cohortĭbus;* See Gr. App. V.—3. *Duodeviginti pedum*, (in latitudĭnem) eighteen feet broad.—4. *Gallōrum eădem atque*, &c. of the Gauls as well as of the Belgæ.—5. *Quod tum*, &c. this was then easily done.—6. *Potestas consistendi in muro erat nulli*, the power of standing on the wall was to none; no man was able to stand on the wall.—7. *Præĕrat*, was over; had the command of; was governor of.—8. *De mediâ nocte*, soon after midnight.

P. 96.—1. *Quos*, &c., which, (viz: villages and buildings,) they could reach.—2. *Et ab millĭbus passuum* &c., at less than two miles distant (viz: *castris*, from the camp).—3. *Prœlio supersedēre*, to defer a battle.—4. *Solicitationĭbus periclitabātur*, trial was made in skirmishes.—5. *Ex utrâque parte*, &c., had a steep descent on both sides; literally, had descents of the side on both sides.—6. *Et frontem lenĭter fastigātus*, and in front gently sloping.—7. *Ad extrēmas fossas*, at the extremities, or ends of the ditches.—8. *Tormenta*, military engines, viz: the *Catapulta* and the *Balista*; See Index.—9. *Quod tantum multitudĭne potĕrat*, because they could do so much by their great number; were so powerful, or strong, in numbers.—10. *Si quâ opus*, &c. if it should be needful any where.

P. 97.—1. *Non magna palus erat*, there was a small morass.—2. *Expectābant*, continued waiting to see.—3. *Secundiōre nostris*, being more favorable to our men.—4. *Demonstrātum est*, has been

shewn: See Ch. 5.—5. *Si minùs potuissent*, if they could not do this;—*ad gerendum bellum*, for carrying on the war; for prosecuting the war.—6. *Impedītos*, embarrassed.—7. *Quorum in fines*, into whose soever boundaries, or territory.—8. *Et domestĭcis copiis*, &c., and enjoy the abundance of provisions which they had at home.

P. 98.—1. *Hæc quoque ratio*, this consideration also.—2. *His persuadēri,—non potĕrat*, these could not be persuaded; See Idioms, 68, 1.—3. *Nullo certo ordĭne*, in no fixed, determined, regular order. 4. *Cùm sibi quisque*, &c.:—Since each one sought to be foremost on the route.—5. *Insidias verĭtus*, fearing a stratagem, an ambuscade,—*qui morarētur*, that they might delay; in order to delay.—6. *Cùm* (illi) *ab extrēmo*, &c.. when those in the rear, to which they had come.—7. *Tantam multitudĭnem, quantum*, &c., as great a number as the length of the day allowed.

P. 99.—1. *Vacuum ab defensorĭbus*, empty, unprotected by defenders.—2. *Vineas agĕre*, to move forward the *vineæ*; See Index.—3. *Aggĕre jacto*, a mound being thrown up; See Index.—4. *Turrĭbusque constitūtis*, and towers being erected on it; See Index, *Turris*.—5. *Petentĭbus Remis*, the Remi requesting it; at the request of the Remi.—6. *Impĕtrant*, they obtain it; viz: that they should be preserved.—7. *Majōres natu*, greater by birth, *i. e.* older, more advanced in age.—8. *Passis manĭbus*, with extended hands.—9. *Facit verba;* literally, makes words. *i. e.* speaks,—present tense for the past; § 44, I. 3:—The pupil may here note the difference between *facĕre verba*, and *dare verba*,—the first means "to make a speech;" the last, "to put off with words," *i. e.* "to deceive." 10. *In fide*, &c., under the protection, and in the friendship of, &c., *i. e.* had always been protected and befriended by.

P. 100.—1. *Non solùm Bellovăcos*, &c., that not only the Bellovaci themselves, but also the Ædui for them, entreated that he would use.—2. *Cùm quærĕret*, when he enquired; on enquiry.—3. *Nihil vini*, no wine.—4. *Increpitāre*, &c., that they inveighed against and accused.—5. *Confirmāre*, asserted, declared; were determined, it was their fixed resolution.—6. *Conditiōnem*, offer, proposal.—7. *Expectāre*, were expecting, were waiting.—8. *Expectāri*, were expected, were waited for.

P. 101.—1. Arrange: *Conjecisse, muliĕres* (et homines) *qui viderentur inutĭles*, &c.—2. *Eōrum diērum*, &c., the custom of those days in respect of the march:—*Exercĭtûs* is governed by *itinĕris*.—3. *Neque esse quicquam*, &c., literally, and that when the first legion

had come into the camp, &c.,—to attack this legion under its baggage would be a matter of no great difficulty; *i. e.* there would be no great difficulty in attacking, &c.—4. *Quâ* (legiōne) *pulsâ, relĭquæ* (legiōnes).—5. *Ei rei*, to this subject, viz. the training of cavalry.—6. *Valent* (efficĕre).—7. *Incisis atque inflexis*, being cut in, and bent over.—8. *Crebris in latitudĭnem*, &c., numerous branches, and briars, and thorns, intervening in a lateral direction:—The young trees being gashed but not separated from the root, still continued to grow, and when bent over, their branches stood out in a lateral direction; the interstices were filled with briars and thorns, so that the whole formed a strong and impervious barrier.—9. *Loci—quem locum*, of the place which.

P. 102.—1. *Infĭmâ* (parte) *apertus*, &c., open, clear at the bottom, woody towards the top.—2. *Secundum flumen*, along the river,—*Statiōnes equĭtum*, troops of horse on guard.—3. *Alĭter se habēbat ac*, literally, had itself otherwise than; *i. e.* was different from what.—4. *Expedītas*, free from all encumbrance, *i. e.* without the load of baggage which the soldier was accustomed to carry, generally amounting in all to sixty pounds besides his arms.—5. *Identĭdem*, from time to time.—6. *Quàm quem ad finem*, i. e, *ad finem ad quem*, to the limit to which; as far as.—7. *Quod tempus*, &c., which had been agreed upon as the time of joining battle.—8. *In manĭbus*, close at hand.—9. *Adverso colle*, up the hill, viz: the hill opposite that on which they had stood.

P. 103.—1. *Vexillum proponendum*, the standard had to be displayed.—2. (Ii) *qui processĕrant paullo longiùs causâ petendi aggĕris*, (erant) *arcessendi*, *those*, who had gone to a greater distance, in order to fetch materials for the rampart *were* to be recalled.—3. *Successus et incursus*, the near approach and onset.—4. *Erant subsĭdio*, were of advantage.—5. *Singulisque legionĭbus*, and from their respective legions,—*singŭlos legātos*, every lieutenant.—6. *Nihil*, equivalent to *non* or *nullum*;—the construction is *quod ad nihil*, did not now at all wait for any order from Cæsar.—7. *Per se*, of themselves, of their own accord.—8. *Videbantur* (illis), seemed to them proper; they thought best.—9. *Quam in partem*, into whatever part.—10. *Neu perturbarentur anĭmo*, nor be agitated in their minds. 11. *Exiguĭtas*, the shortness.

P. 104.—1. *Dejectus*, declivity.—2. *Necessĭtas*, urgency.—3. *Prospectus impedirētur*, and the view in front was obstructed.—*Neque certa*, neither with certainty; § 98, Obs. 10.—4. *In tantâ iniquitāte rerum*, in such an unequal situation of affairs.—5. *In sinis-*

trâ parte acie, on the left part of the line; (*acie*) an old form of the genitive for *aciei;* § 17, Exc. If *acie* be regarded as the ablative, it will then be rendered "in the line on the left part."—6. *Exanimātos,* out of breath, panting,—*confectos,* spent, exhausted.—7. *Nam his ea pars obvenĕrat,* that party had fallen to their lot; had been accidentally opposed to them.—8. *In fugam dedērunt,* put to flight.—9. *Diversæ legiōnes,* other legions, different from those mentioned before.—10. *At tum,* but at this time.—11. *Summum locum castrōrum,* literally, the top of the place of the camp, *i. e.* the summit on which the camp stood.—12. *Levisque armatūræ pedītes,* foot soldiers of the light armor; the light armed infantry.—13. *Quos pulsos* (esse), who had been routed.—14. *Adversis hostĭbus occurrēbant,* met the enemy in front, face to face.

P. 105.—1. *Calōnes,* the soldiers' servants.—2. *Decumānâ portâ,* the decuman or rear gate of the Roman camp:—So called because the tenth cohorts were situated there.—3. *Versāri,* were actively engaged.—4. *Mandābant sese præcipĭtes fugæ,* committed themselves headlong to flight.—5. *Diversos dissipatosque,* scattered in every direction.—6. *Urgēri,* were overpowered.—7. *Primopīlo;* See Index, *Primopīlus.*—8. *Confecto,* i. e, *ita confecto ut.*—9. *A fronte.* in front.—10. *Subeuntes,* advancing.

P. 106.—1. *Signa inferre,* to carry forward the standards; *i. e.* to advance,—*laxāre manipŭlos,* to extend the maniples.—2. *Cujus adventu,* by his arrival; 38.—3. *Pro se quisque,* they, each one for himself; *i. e.* to the best of his ability.—4. *Legiōnes sese conjungĕrent et inferrent conversa signa,* that the legions (viz: the 7th and 12th, should unite and advance with the standard turned two ways; *i. e.* with double front.—5. *Ne aversi,* that when turned away.—6. *Versarētur,* were.—7. *Nihil ad celeritātem,* &c.; Arrange: *fecērunt nihil relĭqui esse sibi,* they caused that nothing remaining was to them; they did all they could as to speed; they made all the haste they could.—8. *Omnĭbus in locis,* &c., in every quarter of the fight they thrust themselves before the legionary soldiers; *i. e.* they strove to surpass them in valor.—9. *Præstitērunt,* displayed.

P. 107.—1. *Qui superessent,* those who survived.—2. *Utì ex tumŭlo,* as if from an eminence.—3. *Redegĕrat,* had rendered.—4. *Prope ad interneciōnem,* almost to extermination.—5. *Æstuaria,* &c., the low grounds and marshes.—6. *Nihil* (esse) *impedītum,* that nothing was a hindrance.—7. *Quos Cæsar,* &c., Cæsar. that he might appear to have exercised mercy towards the unfortunate and suppliants, preserved them, &c.. (39).—8. *Altissĭmas rupes despec-*

tusque, very steep rocks and commanding views of the country below.—9. *Non amplius* (quàm ad mensūram) *ducentōrum pedum*.

P. 108.—1. *Iis impedimentis*, to that baggage.—2. *Cùm* (hi) *aliàs inferrent bellum* (finitĭmis), *aliàs defendĕrent* (bellum) *illātum* (sibi a finitĭmis), when they at one time made war on their neighbors, at another time resisted the war made on themselves by their neighbors; when, at one time they acted on the offensive, at another time, on the defensive.—3. *Duodĕcim pedum*, of twelve feet.—4. *Vineis*; See Index.—5. *Quò*, for what purpose?—6. *Præ*, in comparison of.—7. *Movēri et appropinquāre*, moving and approaching; See Idioms, 89, 1.—8. *Ad hunc modum*, after this manner.—9. *Tantæ altitudĭnis*, of so great height.—10. *Et ex propinquitāte*, &c., and fight close at hand.—11. *Unum petĕre ac deprecāri*, that they begged and earnestly entreated one thing (supply *eum*) from him.

P. 109.—1. *Sibi præstāre*, that it was better for them;—*in eum casum*, to that state.—2. *Priùsquam aries*, &c., before the battering ram should touch their wall; See Index, *Aries*.—3. *In Nerviis*, in the case of the Nervii.—4. *Muri aggerisque*, of the wall (of the town) and the agger of the Roman camp; See Index, *Agger*.—5. *Sub vespĕrum*, towards evening.—6. *Tertiâ vigiliâ;* See Appendix I.—7. *Ignĭbus*, by signal fires.

P. 110.—1. *Ita acrĭter ut*, &c., as fiercely as it ought to have been fought; See Idioms, 88, 7.—2. *Ad* (used adverbially) about.—3. *Sectiōnem*, booty:—So called, because divided into small sections or portions, to be sold.—4. *Capĭtum numĕrus millium*, &c. the number of fifty-three thousand souls.—5. *Oceănum*, the Atlantic.—6. *Certior factus est*, he was informed.—7. *Dies quindĕcim supplicātio decrēta est*, a thanksgiving of fifteen days was decreed.

NOTES ON BOOK III.

PAGE 111.—1. *Quo* (itinĕre), by which (road).—2. *Cum magnis portoriis*, with heavy duties, or imposts:—The duty levied on goods in harbor, (*in portu*) was called *portorium*. This term was afterwards extended, as here, to denote the duty paid for liberty to carry goods through a particular country, or the tax paid at bridges.—3. *Hic vicus*, this village.—4. *Eum locum*, this part, *i. e.* the part of the village in which the cohorts were to pass the winter.

P. 112.—1. *Neque eam plenissĭmam,* and that not very full. See Index, *Legio.*—2. *Singillātim,* individually.—3. *Decurrĕrent,* should run down.—4. *Ne primum quidem posse,* &c., they thought that that legion could not withstand even the first onset:—With *posse* supply *illam legiōnem.*—5. *Accedēbat,* to this was added; another reason was.—6. *Sibi persuāsum habēbat,* literally, they had it persuaded unto themselves; they were firmly persuaded.—7. *Neque satis provīsum esset,* nor had it been sufficiently provided; nor had a sufficient supply been provided.—8. *Nihil de bellum timendum,* he had thought that nothing was to be feared, *i. e.* that he had nothing to fear concerning the war.—9. *Neque subsidio venīri,* literally, neither could it be come to them with assistance, *i. e.* neither could assistance come to them.—10. *Placuit majōri parti,* it pleased the greater part; it was the opinion of the majority.

P. 113.—1. *Collocandis atque administrandis* (the dative of the end or design,) for arranging and executing.—2. *Gæsăque,* and javelins (the Gallic iron javelin).—3. *Intĕgris virĭbus,* with fresh strength.—4. *Frustra,* in vain, without effect.—5. *Sed hoc* (nostri) *superāri,* but in this they (our men) were overcome, were inferior.—6. *Paucitātem,* their fewness —7. *Non modo,* &c., an opportunity was not given not only to the wearied.—8. *Perducta ad extrēmum casum,* brought to an extreme case, to the last extremity. 9. *Quem confectum* (esse), &c., who, we have said, was worn out; (See Idioms; 96, 2, & 94, 1: 1).—10. *Convocatis centurionĭbus celerĭter* (per eos) *milĭtes,* &c. the centurions being called together, he quickly, through them, directs the soldiers;—*excipĕrent,* to take up. 11. *Omnĭbus portis,* from all the gates of the camp:—Of these there were four; See Index, *Castra.*

P. 114.—1. *Ex* (numĕro) *homĭnum amplius quàm millĭbus triginta,* literally, from a number of men more than thirty thousand, *i. e.* from more than thirty thousand men.—2. (Parte) *plus tertiâ parte,* &c. literally, a part more than the third part being slain.—3. *Fusis* &c., being routed. and stripped of their arms:—Here *exūtis* agrees with *copiis,* and governs *armis* in the ablative, by § 126, R. V.—4. *Alio,—alius,* &c., with one view,—they had encountered things very different.—5. *Cæsar existimāret, de omnĭbus causis,* Cæsar supposed, from all reasons; Cæsar had every reason to suppose.—6. (Ad) *mare Oceănum,* to the Atlantic Ocean.—7. *Præfectos tribunosque milĭtum;* See Index, *Legio.*

P. 115.—1. *Scientiâ atque usu,* knowledge and experience.—2. *In magno impĕtu maris atque aperto,* in the great and open vio-

lence, force, swell (or surge) of the sea.—3. *Ipsi*, (Venĕti,) they themselves, (the Veneti).—4. *Consuĕrunt uti*, are accustomed to use; use to trade in; or usually trade in.—5 *Vectigāles*, tributary 6. *Ut consilia Gallōrum*, since the designs (resolves) of the Gauls. 7. *Omnis;* Accusative plural for *omnes*, the subject of *latūros* (esse). 8. *Suos*, his (Crassus') countrymen; § 28, Exc.;—*sibi*, to them, (the Veneti) the main subject of discourse.—9. *Naves longas*, ships of war,—so called from their being much longer than the ships of burden(*naves onerariæ*).—10. *Remĭges*, rowers,—*institui*, to be raised. 11. *Pro magnitudĭne*, in proportion to the greatness.—12. *Hoc* (faciunt), this they do.—13. *Pedestria itinĕra*, roads, or approaches by foot; *i. e.* by land.

P. 116.—1. *Navigatiōnem*, access by sea.—2. *Neque nostros*, &c., and they were confident that our army could not, &c. *Neque* here is copulative, and means "and not."—3. *Opiniōnem*, the expectation.—4. *Longè aliam atque*, &c., that the navigation was far other in a confined or inland sea (such as the Mediterranean,) than, &c.—5. *Hæ erant difficultātes*, such were the difficulties, &c.— 6. *Injuriæ retentōrum equĭtum* (the genitive passive; § 106, Obs. 1.) 7. *Rebellio*, a renewal of hostilities,—*defectio*, a revolt, a refusal of obedience.—8. *Ne arbitrarentur*, in order that they might not think; § 140, 1, 2d.—9. *Idem* (facĕre) *sibi licēre*, that to do the same thing would be permitted to them.—10. *Novis rebus studēre*, are fond of changes.—11. *Natūrâ libertāti studēre*, are naturally fond of liberty. 12. *Conditiōnem servitūtis*, a state of slavery.

P. 117.—1. *Auxilio* (sibi) &c., who were said to have been sent for by the Belgæ as aid to themselves.—2. *Qui eam manum*, &c., that he should take care that that body should be kept apart.— 3. *Situs*, the situations.—4. *In extrēmis lingŭlis*, on the extreme points or tongues of land.—5. *Cùm ex alto*, &c., when the tide had flowed in from the deep; *i. e.* when it was full tide, or high water. 6. *Minuente* (sese) *æstu*, the tide ebbing, or when the tide ebbs.— 7. *Naves in vadis*, &c., the ships aground on the shallow places would be dashed with the waves.—8.(In)*utrâque re*, in either case.—9. *Aggĕre ac molĭbus*, by a mound and dams.—10. *Appulso*, being brought up.—11. *Magnis æstĭbus*, &c., on account of the great tides, and there being few or almost no harbors.—12. *Factæ armatæque erant*, were built and equipped.—13. *Aliquanto planiōres*, considerably flatter.

P. 118.—1. *Excipĕre*, withstand, or admit of.—2. *Ad quamvis vim*, for enduring any violence and shock.—3. *Pedalĭbus*, &c.,

of planks a foot in breadth.—4. *Digĭti pollĭcis crassitudĭne*, of the thickness of one's thumb; *i. e.* an inch thick.—5. *Pelles pro velis*, &c., for sails there were to them (*i. e.* they had) raw hides and thin dressed skins;—*lini*, of linen, of canvass. 6. *Regi*, could be managed. 7. *Cum his navĭbus*, &c., the meeting of our fleet with these vessels was of such a nature, that the former had the advantage in swiftness only, and the sweep of the oars.—8. *Relĭqua*, other things.—9. *Neque enim his*, &c. for our ships could not hurt them with the beak.—10. *Copŭlis*, grappling irons.—11. *Sævīre*, to blow hard.—12. *Casus*, the chances or dangers.—13. *Neque his nocēri posse*, and that they could not be hurt.—14. *Paratissĭmæ atque*, &c., in the best order, and equipped in the best manner, with every kind of tackling.

P. 119.—1. *Bruto*, &c., nor was it sufficiently clear to Brutus. 2. *Aut quam ratiōnem*, &c., or what mode of fighting they would adopt.—3. *Ut*, so that.—4. *Graviùs accidĕrent*, fell with greater force. 5. *Falces præacūtæ*, hooks with sharpened edges towards the points. 6. *Muralium*, mural hooks; *i. e.* hooks used to pull down the walls in a siege; or their defenders.—7. *Comprehensi adductīque*, were grappled and pulled towards us.—8. *Latēre posset*, could escape notice; could pass unnoticed, or unobserved.—9. *Cum singŭlas*, &c., when two or three of our ships had surrounded each one of the enemy's.—10. *Transcendĕre in naves hostium*, to climb over into the ships of the enemy; to board the enemy's ships.—11. *Quò ventus ferēbat* (naves), where, to which the wind carried them (*the ships*); *Singŭlas nostri*: &c., our men having pursued, took them one by one.

P. 120.—1. *Graviōris ætātis*, of heavier, *i. e.* of more advanced age.—2. *In quos*, &c., on these Cæsar resolved to inflict severer punishment, on this account that, &c.—3. *Vendĭdit relĭquos sub corōnâ*, he sold the rest under the crown; *i. e.* he sold the rest for slaves:—Prisoners taken in war wore a chaplet (*corōna*) on their heads when exposed to public sale. At sales by auction a spear was set up; hence, *vendĕre sub hastâ*, to sell by auction.—4. *Atque his paucis diēbus*, and within these few days.—5. *Perditōrum homĭnum*, of ruined men; *i. e.* men of desperate fortunes.—6. *Nonnĭhil carparētur*, was in some degree carped at, railed at:—*Nihil* and *nonnĭhil* in such sentences may be considered as accusatives governed by *quod ad*; § 128, Exc.

P. 121.—1. *Eo absente qui tenēbat summam imperii*, he being absent who held the supreme command; in the absence of the commander in chief.—2. *Hâc confirmātâ opiniōne timōris*, (the enemy's)

opinion of his fear being confirmed.—3. *Propŏnit*, he lays before them. tells them of.—4. *Neque longiùs abesse*, &c.; and that it was not farther off, but that on the next night; *i. e.* at no greater distance of time than the next night.—5. *Ad castra iri oportēre*, literally, that it ought to be gone to the camp; See Idioms, 67.—6. *Perfŭgæ confirmatio*, the assertion of the deserter.—7. *Quibus*, with which, *i. e.* that with these.—8. *Quàm minĭmum spatii*, as little space of time as possible —9. *Exanimāti*, out of breath.

P. 122.—1. *Intĕgris virĭbus*, with strength still fresh.—2. *Sabĭnus* (factus est certior) *de*, &c.—3. *Minĭmè resistens*, by no means firm.—4. *Ex tertiâ parte*, as the third part,—an unusual expression, and probably the text is incorrect.—5. *Non mediŏcrem*, &c., that more than ordinary diligence must be used by him.—6. *Quo plurĭmum valēbant*, in which they were very powerful.

P. 123.—1. *Cujus rei*, &c., in which art the Aquitāni are by far the most expert.—2. *Ærariæ sectūræ* copper mines.—3. *Nihil his rebus profĭci posse*, that they could be profited nothing by these things.—4. *Quorum hæc est conditio*, the condition of whom (*i. e.* of whose association) is this.—5. *Sibi mortem consciscant*, or make away with themselves.—6. *Barbări*, the barbarians (referring to the Vocātes and Tarusātes).—7. *Et natūrâ loci et manu*, both by natural situation and by art.

P. 124.—1. *Citeriōris Hispaniæ;* See Index.—2. *Loca capĕre*, to select proper ground.—3. *Facĭlè*, easily; *i. e.* with safety.—4. *In dies*, every day; literally, from day to day.—5. *Hâc re delātâ ad consilium*, this matter or plan being laid before a council (of war).—6. *Sentīre idem*, thought the same thing; were of the same opinion, viz: with himself.—7. *Duplĭci acie*, a double line:—The Romans usually drew up their army in three lines; on the present occasion only two were formed, probably on account of their being inferior in number to the enemy.—8. *Auxiliis*, &c., the auxiliaries being placed in the centre,—their usual place was on the wings.—9. *Cùm suâ cunctatiōne*, &c., when the enemy had by their own delay, and the opinion which was now entertained of their cowardice, made our soldiers the more eager for battle.

P. 125.—1. *Constanter ac non timĭdè*, steadily and boldly 2. *Decumānâ portâ*, at the decuman, or rear gate; See Index, *Castra*.—3. *Intrītæ*, not worn out, not fatigued.—4. *Longiōre itinĕre*, by a longer route than usual.—5. *Posset planè vidēri ab iis*, it could be distinctly seen by them.—6. *Intendĕrunt*, strove.

P. 126.—1. *Multâ nocte*, late at night,—or *multâ nocte actâ*, much of the night being spent.—2. *Superĕrant*, (supply *soli*, evidently implied,—hence the subjunctive following *qui*; § 141, R. V.) alone remained.—3. *Qui longè aliâ ratiōne ac*, &c., and they resolved to prosecute the war in a very different manner from the rest of the Gauls.—4. *Continentesque silvas*, &c., and because they had extensive, uninterrupted forests:—Before *continentes* supply *quòd*. 5. *Longiùs*, too far.—6. *Inermĭbus*, &c., on the soldiers unarmed.—7. *Materiam*, timber.

P. 127.—1. *Conversam*, &c., turned towards, facing, the enemy.—2. *Confecto*, being cleared.—3. *Extrēma &c.* the last of the baggage.—4. *Sub pellĭbus*, literally, under skins; *i. e.* in their tents:—The tents of the Roman soldiers were covered with skins. It does not appear that they ever used canvass for that purpose.—5. *Quæ proxĭmè*, &c., which had made war upon him last.

NOTES ON BOOK IV.

P. 128.—1. *Eâ hiĕme*, &c., the winter which followed; the next or following winter.—2. *Cneio Pompeio*, &c.:—Before Christ, 55, A. U. C. 699.—3. *Quo Rhenus*, &c. where the Rhine flows into it; near the mouth of the Rhine.—4. *Qui domi mansĕrint*, since or because they remain at home.—5. *Nec ratio atque usus belli intermittĭtur*, nor are the art and practice of war disused, discontinued, forgotten.—6. *Maxĭmam partem*, for the most part; See Ref.—7. *Nullo officio*, &c., they are trained by no duty or discipline.

P. 129.—1. *Ut quæ bello cepĕrint*; Arrange: *ut habeant* (eos) *quibus vendant* (ea) *quæ cepĕrint bello*.—2. *Jumentis importātis*, imported cattle.—3. *Quotidiānâ exercitatiōne hæc prava atque deformia* (jumenta) *quæ sunt nata apud eos, ut* (hæc jumenta) *sint summi labōris*:—*Ut*. &c., that they, (these beasts) are capable of the greatest labor, *i. e.* of enduring the greatest labor.—4. *Audent adīre ad quemvis numĕrum*, they dare to go to any number; they have courage to advance against, to attack, any number.—5. *Publĭcè*, to the nation.—6. *Significāri*, that proof is given.—7. *Vacāre*, to be empty, desolate uninhabited.—8. *Ad altĕram partem*, on the other side.—9. *Ut est captus Germanōrum*. as the state of the Germans is; *i. e.*—

considering the condition of the Germans.—10. *Amplitudĭnem gravitatemque civitātis,* the extent and populousness of their state (viz: the Ubii).

P. 130.—1. *In câlem causâ,* in a similar case.—2. (In regiones) *quas regiōnes,* to the regions which.—3. *Clam,* privately, unobserved.—4. *Tridui viam,* a journey of three days.—5. *Relĭquam partem hiĕmis,* the remaining part of the winter; the rest of the winter;—*aluērunt,* maintained, supported.—6. *Infirmitātem,* the fickleness.—7. *Nihil his committendum* (esse), that nothing should be trusted to them.—8. *Est autem hoc,* &c., for this belongs to Gallic custom; this is one of the customs of the Gauls.

P. 131.—1. *De summis rebus,* &c., they enter into designs, concert measures, respecting the most important affairs.—2. *E vestigio,* literally, out of the footstep; *i. e.* speedily, instantly.—3. *Cùm incertis rumorĭbus serviant,* since they are mere slaves to uncertain rumors.—4. *Ne graviōri bello occurrĕret,* that he might not meet with a more formidable war (viz: than he expected).—5. *Facta* (esse), had been done already.—6. *Dissimulanda sibi,* should be concealed by him.—7. *Resistĕre* (iis), to resist them and not to sue for peace.—8. *Suam gratiam,* their (the Germans') favor.—*Sibi,* to them, the Germans.—9. *Eos* (agros) *quos,* those lands which; *i. e.* such lands as; See Ref.—10. *Concedĕre,* yielded, acknowledged themselves inferior to.—11. *In terris,* upon the earth.

P. 132.—1. Arrange: *Cæsar respondit ad hæc, quæ visum est* (ei respondēre).—2. *Exĭtus,* the conclusion.—3. *Verum,* just, reasonable, proper, right:—*Verus* has this sense chiefly when joined to the verb *esse*; as *verum est,* it is proper.—4. *Neque ullos in Galliâ,* &c., nor were there any lands vacant in Gaul.—5. *Et,parte,* &c.:—This is the reading of the Bipont edition. It is adopted by Anthon, and is manifestly better than the common text.—6. *In plures diffluit partes,* divides into several branches.—7. *Multis capitĭbus,* by many heads, or mouths.

P. 133.—1. *Sibi jurejurando,* &c. should give them security by an oath.—2. *Eōdem illo pertinēre,* tended to the same end:—*Eōdem* and *illo,* here used adverbially, are properly old forms of the dative from *idem* and *ille.*—3. *Sustinērent,* should stand their ground.

P. 134.—1. *Amplissĭmo genĕre natus,* descended from a very illustrious family.—2. *Interclūso,* intercepted.—3. *Se obtŭlit,* presented himself; rushed against.—4. *Summæ dementiæ esse judicābat,* he judged it to be the greatest folly; literally, to belong to, or to be

the part of the greatest folly.—5. *Ne quem diem*, &c., not to let a day pass without a battle.—6. *Omnĭbus principĭbus*, &c., all their leading men and elders being brought along ; literally, being taken unto them.—7. *Sui purgandi*, for the sake of clearing, excusing themselves.—8. *Contra atque* otherwise than; contrary to what had been said.—9. *Quos sibi Cæsar*, &c , Cæsar rejoicing that these had been cast in his way.

P. 135.—1. *Perturbantur*, &c., are thrown into confusion, so that they were at a loss whether it would be best, &c.—2. *Significarētur*, was discovered, was evident.—3. *Pristĭni diei*, of the day before;—for *pridie.*—4. *Clamōre*, a shout, or noise, (either of the Roman cavalry attacking those with whom they came up in the rear,—or the wailing of those attacked).—5. *Ad confluentem*, at the confluence.—6. *Relĭquâ fugâ desperātâ*, despairing of making good their flight any farther.—7. *Ex tanti belli timōre*, &c , from the alarm of so great a war, since the number of the enemy had been about four hundred and thirty thousand:—Before *capĭtum*, supply *ad numĕrum.*—8. *Discedendi potestātem*, the liberty of departing.

P. 136.—1. *Suis quoque rebus eos timēre voluit*, wished they should be alarmed for their own possessions.—2. *Et posse et audēre*, had both the power and the courage.—3. *Accessit etiam*, it was added also; *i. e.* another reason was.—4. *Cur sui quicquam*, &c., why should he (Cæsar) demand that any command or authority should belong to him beyond the Rhine?—5. *Occupationĭbus reipublĭcæ*, by the business of the republic.—6. *Neque Suæ neque Popŭli Romāni*, and thought that it became neither his own dignity nor that of the Roman people.—7. *Propōnebātur*, was placed before him, was manifest.

P. 139.—1. *Instituit*, &c., he determined on this plan of a bridge.—2. He joined together at the distance of two feet, *tigna bina*, beams, or piles, two by two, (or in pairs,) sharpened a little at the lower end, and measured, (or proportioned) to the depth of the river.—3. *Hæc cùm machinationĭbus*, &c., when he had fastened these, being let down into the river by machines, and had driven them down with rammers (*fistŭcis*).—4. *Non sublĭcæ*, &c., not perpendicularly after the manner of a stake, but bending forward and sloping (downward, or down the stream).—5. *Iis item contraria*, &c., likewise opposite to these, at the distance of forty feet down the river, (*ab inferiōre parte flumĭnis,*) he placed two others joined in the same manner, but turned (up the stream) against the force and current of the river.—6. *Hæc utraque insŭper*, &c., both these

(viz: the pair above and the pair below,) were kept apart (or from falling towards each other,) by beams let in from above, two feet thick, being as much as the joining of these piles was apart, (*i. e.* as the piles, joined by the braces, were apart,)—each having two braces, one on each side near the end.—7. *Quibus disclusis*, &c., these (pairs) being kept apart, and (at the same time,) bound together in the contrary direction.—8. *Ea rerum natūra*, such the nature of the materials.—9. *Quo major vis*, &c., literally, by how much a greater force of water urged itself on; *i. e.* that the more the force of the current pressed on, the more closely were they held bound together.—10. *Hæc* (tigna, *i. e.* beams of two feet square reaching from one pair of piles to the other below it,) *directa materie*, &c., were fastened together with timbers laid lengthwise (*directa*) *of the bridge;* i. e. from beam to beam.—11. *Longuriis*, &c., and covered over with long poles and hurdles.—12. *Ac nihilo secius*, &c., and besides all this, piles were driven in obliquely at the lower part of the stream.—13. *Pro pariĕte*, for a buttress, or support.—14. *Et aliæ item*, and likewise others.—15. *Dejiciendi opĕris* (causâ), for the sake of throwing down (destroying) the work,—the bridge.—16. (Ex) *Quibus materia*, &c., after the days in which, or, after that the materials had been begun to be brought together:—*Quibus*, i. e. *ex diebus quibus*, is here used instead of the more common expression, *postquam*, or *ex* (tempŏre) *quo*;—See also B. III. Chap. 23d. and Gr. § 131, Obs. 3d.—17. *Ad utramque partem*, at each end.

P. 140.—1. *Iis hortantĭbus*, by the advice of those.—2. *In solitudĭnem ac silvas abdidĕrant*, had gone into the deserts and forests to conceal themselves;—This rendering gives the force of the accucative after *in*, which is evidently a better reading than *in solitudĭne*, &c., which excludes the idea of going to;—So also, *in silvas deponĕret*, below.—3. *Hunc esse delectum*, that this was selected as nearly the middle, or centre.—4. *Ulciscerĕtur*, that he might punish.—5. *Satis et ad laudem et ad utilitātem profectum*, that enough had been done, both for his honor and for utility, (*profectum* is from *proficio*, and means the same as *perfectum*).—6. *Matūræ*, early.—7. *Inde*, thence, *i. e.* from Britain.

P. 141.—1. *Temĕrè*, rashly, without good reason.—2. *Neque iis ipsis quicquam notum est*, nor is any thing known even by them. 3. *Quem usum belli*, &c., what experience they had in war, or what customs they followed.—4. *In eâ sententiâ*, in that mind, resolution. 5. *Hortĕturque*, and that he should urge them.—6. *Fidem sequantur*,

to embrace the alliance; literally, should follow the faith.—7. *Quantum ei facultātis*, &c., as far as opportunity could be given; literally, with so much of opportunity as, &c.; See Idioms, 46, 1.—8. *Qui* since he.

P. 142.—1. *De superiōris*, &c., for their past conduct.—2. *Has tantulārum*, &c., these engagements in such trifling affairs. 3. (Tot) *navĭbus onerariis*, so many ships of burden, &c.,—*quot*, as; See Index, *Naves*.—4. *Tertiâ fere vigiliâ*, near the third watch, or midnight.—5. *Solvit* (naves), looses his ships, sets sail.—6. *Conscendĕre naves*, to go on board; to embark.—7. *Horâ quartâ*, the fourth hour, *i. e.* 10 o'clock, A. M.; See Gr. App. I.—8. *Exposĭtas*, drawn out, displayed.

P. 143.—1. *Adeo angustis*, so steep.—2. *Ad egrediendum*, for disembarking, for landing.—3. *Ad nonam horam*, till the ninth hour, *i. e.* 3 o'clock P. M.—4. *Monuitque*, &c., and warned them that all things should be done at a beck, and in a moment, as the principles, &c.—5. *Et essedariis*, and the essedarii, *i. e.* those who fought from the essĕdum, or two wheeled chariot.—6. *Prohibēbant*, attempted to hinder; See § 44. II. 2.—7. *Militĭbus—desiliendum*, &c., the soldiers had to leap down from the ships.—8. *Omnĭbus membris expediti*, having the free use of all their limbs.—9. *Insuefactos*, accustomed to such exercise.—10. *Quarum et species*, both the appearance of which.

P. 144.—1. *Remis incitāri*, to be pushed on, rowed briskly forward, with the oars.—2. *Tormentis*, engines (for throwing heavy darts or stones. namely, the balista and catapulta).—3. *Quæ res*, this expedient.—4. *Ac paulum modò*, &c. and retreated only a little, a very little.—5. *Qui* (he), who.—6. *Ea res*, that thing (viz: which he was about to do).—7. *Magnâ voce*, with a loud voice.—8. *Ex navi se projēcit*, he threw himself out of the ship, overboard.—9. *Singulāres*, one by one, one after another.—10. *Quod cùm anĭmum advertisset*, i.e. *Cùm vertisset anĭmum ad quod*.—11. *Scaphas longārum navium*, the boats belonging to the vessels of war.—12. *Speculatoria navigia*, spy vessels.

P. 145.—1. *Cursum tenēre*, hold on their course;—*atque insŭlam capĕre*, and reach the island.—2. *Suprà*, viz: Ch. 21.—3. *Modo oratōris*, in the character of an ambassador.—4. *Culpam contulērunt*, laid the blame.—5. *In continentem*, to the continent, *i.e.* to Gaul.—6. *Imprudentiæ*, their indiscretion.—7. *Arccessītam*, having been sent for.—8. *Post diem quartum*, after the fourth day, *i. e.*,

on the fourth day after.—9. Suprà; See Ch. 23.—*sustulĕrant*, had taken on board.—10. *Quæ cùm appropinquārent*, and when they were drawing near.—11. *Quæ est propius solis occāsum*, which is more to the west.—12. *Quæ*, these —13. *Necessariò adversâ nocte in altum provectæ*, from necessity, being carried out to sea in an unfavorable, stormy, night.

P. 146.—1. (Dies) *qui dies*, a day which (viz: the day of the full moon.—2. *Nostris id incognĭtum erat*, to our men this (viz: the great rising of the tide,) was unknown:—The phenomena of the tides were but little known to the Romans, as the tides in the Mediterranean with which they were most familiar, are scarcely observable.—3. *Quæ deligātæ erant ad anchŏras*, which had been tied to the anchors; which had been riding at anchor.—4. *Afflictābat*, dashed violently against; drove from their moorings.—5. *Quòd omnĭbus constābat*. because it was evident to all —6. *His in locis*, in these places (viz: in Britain).—7. *Rem producĕre*, to prolong the war.—8. *Ex eventu navium*. from what happened to, from the disaster of, the ships (the genitive passive).—9. *Et ex eo quòd*, &c., and from this, because they had intermitted; i e. and from their having intermitted.

P. 147.—1. *Ad omnes casus*, for every emergency; against all contingencies.—2. *Relĭquis ut navigāri*, that it could be navigated with the rest.—3- *Dum ea geruntur*, whilst these things are carrying on, doing; during these transactions.—4. *In statiōne*, on guard.—5. *Quàm consuetūdo ferret*, than custom brought; *i. e.* than was usual. 6. *In statiónĭbus*, on guard.—7. *In statiōnem succedĕre*, to succeed on guard.—8. *Et, confertâ legiōne,tela*, &c., and that the legion being crowded together, weapons were hurled upon it from all quarters. 9. *Quòd*, because, inasmuch as —10 *Incertis ordinĭbus*, on account of not knowing their ranks, (They had been scattered about, reaping, and being attacked while thus employed, they could not find their ranks).—11. *Genus hoc est*, &c., the manner of fighting from the chariots was this.—12. *Ipso terrōre equōrum*, by the very terror occasioned to the horses (the genitive passive); and the noise, *rotārum*, of the wheels (the genitive active); § 106, Obs. 1.

P. 148.—1. *Insinuavĕrint*, when they have wrought themselves in.—2. *Aurĭgæ*, the charioteers, or drivers:—Each chariot contained a driver called *aurĭga*, and one who fought, called *essedarius*.—3. *Atque ita curru se collocant*, and place themselves with the chariot in such a situation.—4. *Præstant mobilitātem equĭtum*, &c., they perform, unite the swiftness of cavalry and the steadiness

of infantry.—5. *Ac efficiunt tantum*, and they acquire such dexteri ty.—6. *Incitātos equos sustinēre*, to rein in their horses when at full speed.—7. *Et brevi* (tempŏre), and in a moment.—8. *Continuos plures dies*, many days in succession.—9. *Suis* (civĭbus), to their own countrymen.—10. *Quanta facultas*, &c., how favorable an opportunity was presented of getting booty, and of regaining their independence forever.

P. 149.—1. *Antè dictum est*, viz: Ch. 21, & 27.—2. *Omnĭbus afflictis incensisque longè latèque*, having destroyed and burned every thing far and wide; See Idioms, 104, 1.—3. *Die æquinoctii*, the equinox.—4. *Hiĕmi navigatiōnem subjiciendam*, that his voyage ought to be exposed to a storm (viz: the equinoctial storm).—5. *Eosdem quos relĭquæ portus capĕre*, to make the same harbor which the rest made.—6. *Quibus ex navĭbus*,&c., had been landed from these ships.—7. *Non ita magno*, with not so great. *i. e.* with no very great number.—8. *Si nollent*, if they did not wish.—9. *Orbe facto*, forming themselves into a circle; See above, Note 2.—10. *Vertĕrunt terga*, turned their backs; fled.

P. 150.—1. *In densissĭmas silvas abdidĕrant*, had gone into the thickest parts of the forests to hide themselves; See Note 2, page 140.

NOTES ON BOOK V.

P. 151.—1. *Lucio Domitio*, *i. e.* A. U. C , 700,; B. C. 54.—2. *Quam plurĭmas possent*, &c., that as many new ships as possible should be built, and old ones repaired.—3. *Ad celeritātem onerandi*, &c., for despatch of lading and drawing them on shore, he builds them a little lower than those which, &c.—4. *Nostro mari*, in our sea, viz: the Mediterranean.—5. *Actuarias*, light, easily driven; See Index, *Naves*.—6. *Adjŭvat multùm*, contributes much,—7. *Ad armandas*, for equipping.—8. *Omnĭbus rationĭbus*, in every proper way.

P. 152.—1. *Qui litem æstĭment*, to estimate the damage (Idioms, 83, 2,) and fix the compensation.—2. *Conventĭbus*, the assizes. 3. *Instructas*, got ready finished.—4. *Neque multùm abesse*, &c., nor was much wanting but that they could be launched in a few

days, *i. e.* there was so little to do that they could, &c.—5. *Trans missum*, &c., the passage across into Britain was the most conven ient, being a passage of about thirty miles.—6. *Expedītis*, unincumbered with baggage.—7. *Alter*, the one (viz: Cingetorix).—8. *In silvam*, &c., having gone and concealed themselves in the forest of Arduenna; See Note 2, p. 240.

P. 153.—1. *Civitāti consulĕre*, take measures for the state, for the common good.—2. *Laberētur*, should fall off, revolt.—3.*Permissūrum*(esse) would give up.—4. *Suam gratiam*, that his influence.—5. *Exarsit multo graviùs hoc dolōre*, he was much more exasperated at this affront.—6. *Non potuisse tenēre cursum*, could not keep their course; could not proceed on their voyage.

P. 154.—1. *Antea dictum*; B. I. Ch. 3.—2. *Cupĭdum novārum rerum*, fond of changes, of insurrections, of a revolution in the state.—3. *Id factum*, this fact.—4. *Petĕre contendit*, endeavored to obtain,—*religionĭbus*, religious obligations.—5. *Non sine causâ fieri*, that it was not done without some secret motive; that Gaul was stripped of all her nobility.—6. *Fidem relĭquis interponĕre*, that he pledged his word to the rest.—7. *Quod esse ex usu*, &c., whatever they should understand to be for the interest of Gaul.—8. *Quòd tantum dignitātis*, because he had always shewn so much respect.—9. *Longiùs progrĕdi*, was going too far.—10. *Prospiciendum*, that he ought to take care.

P. 155.—1. *Ne quid sibi*, &c. that he (Dumnorix) should not be able, have it in his power, to do any injury to him and the state. 2. *Corus*, the northwest wind.—3. (Ut) *cognoscĕret*, that he should find out.—4. *Omnium anĭmis impedītis*, the minds of all being engaged.—5. *Hunc pro sano*, that he, as a man in his senses.—6. *Ille enim*, but, or nevertheless he.—7. *Consiliumque pro tempŏre*, &c., and that he might take measures, (form his plans,) according to time and circumstances.—8. *Pari numĕro equĭtum quem*, &c. with a like number of cavalry which; *i. e.* with a number of cavalry equal to that which he left.—9. *Longiùs delātus æstu*, being carried down by the tide farther than usual.—10. *Secūtus*, taking advantage of.

P. 156.—1. *Virtus*, the valor, *i. e.* the efforts, the exertions, 2. *Vectoriisque navigiis*, in transports and heavy laden vessels.—3. *Accessum est* (ab illis) *ad*, they (the Romans) reached, arrived at.—4. *Cum annotĭnis*, with the ships of the previous year.—5. *Verĭtus navĭbus*, fearing for the ships,—instead of *de navĭbus*.—6. *In littŏre molli atque aperto*, on a smooth and open shore.—

7. *Præclusi*, blocked up.—8. *Testudĭne factâ, et aggĕre*, &c., a testudo being erected and a mound thrown up against their fortifications.

P. 157.—1. *Tripartīto*, in three divisions,—*milĭtes*, the foot soldiers, the infantry.—2. *Superiōre nocte*, in the former night.—3. *Afflictas atque*, &c.—had been dashed against each other, and driven on shore.—4. *Subsistĕrent*, could hold out.—5. *Ex eo concursu*, from that rencounter of the ships; from the ships running foul of one another.—6. *Incommŏdum*, injury, damage.—7. *Coram*, openly, with his own eyes.—8. *Res*, a work.—9. *Subdūci*, to be drawn on shore.—10. *Summa imperii*, &c. the chief command and administration of the war.—11. *Superiōre tempŏre*, at a former period.

P. 158.—1. *Quos natos*, &c., "who, they say it was handed down by tradition, were born on the island,"—an opinion prevalent among many ancient nations respecting themselves.—2. *Bello illāto*, the war having been waged, being over.—3. *Creberrĭma*, very thick, close together.—4. *Fere Gallĭcis consimilia*, almost like; *i. e.* closely resembling those of the Gauls.—5. *Taleis ferreis ad certum pondus*, &c., pieces of iron tried by, *i. e.* of a certain weight.—6. *Plumbum album*, tin (literally, white lead).—7. *Copia*, the quantity.—8. *Materia*, wood, timber.—9. *Causâ anĭmi voluptatisque*, for the sake of amusement and pleasure.—10. *Loca*, places, climate.—11. *Remissiorĭbus*, less intense.—12. *Triquetra*, triangular.—13. *Ad Cantium*, in Kent:—from Land's end to the eastern extremity of Kent, is about 344 British miles, or 356 Roman miles in a straight line. It would be much more to follow the irregularities of the coast.—14. *Ad Hispaniam:*—This statement is erroneous, as Spain lies to the south, not to the west of Britain.—15. *Dimidio minor*, less by one half:—Great Britain is computed at 77,370 square miles,—Ireland at 30,370.—16. *Sed pari spatio transmissus*, but the passage across to Britain is the same distance as from Gaul.—17. *Mona*, the Isle of Man.—18. *Dies continuos*, &c., that there is night for thirty successive days at the winter solstice, *i. e* the 22d December:—This is not true in fact, unless the dark, cloudy, and foggy weather, at that season, is here improperly called "night."—19. *Nisi certis ex aquâ*, &c. but we perceived, by accurate water measures, that the nights were shorter than on the continent.—The "water measure" is the *Clepsydra*, or water-clock,—an invention similar to the sand-glass.

P. 159.—1. *Septingentōrum millium*, seven hundred miles:—The true length of the western coast is 590 British or 610 Roman

miles.—2. *Contra septentriōnes*, opposite the north.—This is not correct; the east is much nearer the truth.—3. *Octingenta millia passuum*, eight hundred miles:—This exceeds the true estimate 230 Roman miles.—4. *Humanissĭmi*, most civilized.—5. *Se vitro inficiunt*, stain themselves with woad.—6. *Capillōque sunt promisso*, and are with, *i. e.* they have, long hair.—7. *Deni et duodēni*, parties of ten and twelve,—*habent uxōres commūnes inter se.*—8. *Quo primum virgo*, &c., by whom each female, when a virgin, was first married. 9. (Ita) *tamen ut*, in such a way however that.—10. *Submissis*, being sent to their aid,—*atque his*, and these.—11. *Constitissent*, had taken their ground.

P. 160.—1. *Cùm*, since, or as; § 140, Obs. 3.—2. *Intellectum est* (a nobis) *nostros*, we perceived (Idioms 67,) that our men.—3. *Cedentes*. those giving way —4. *Cedĕrent*, gave way, yielded.—5. *Pedĭbus dispări prœlio*, on foot, in an unequal contest; *i. e.* with great advantage (against us) —6. *Conferti*, close, in a close body; —*rari*, scattered here and there —7. *Alios alii deinceps excipĕrent*, &c , and they continued one to relieve another in succession, and the vigorous and the fresh succeeded (took the place of) those fatigued.—8. *Leniùs*, with less spirit.—9. *Uti non absistĕrent ab*, that they kept not far from, *i. e.* close to, &c.—10. *Neque post id tempus*, &c., nor after that time did the enemy ever engage us with all their forces; nor did the enemy, after that time, ever come to a general engagement with us.

P. 161.—1. *Acūtis sudĭbus prœfixis*, with sharp stakes fixed in front.—2. *Cùm capĭte*, &c , when they (the soldiers) were above the water with the head alone; *i. e.* were up to the neck in the water.—3. *Ut suprà*, &c.; Ch. 17.—4. *Dimissis amplioribus copiis*, the greater part of the forces being dismissed.—5. *Ex viâ excedebat*, withdrew from the road.—6. *Relinquebātur*, &c., it remained that Cæsar did not suffer;—*discēdi* (ab equitĭbus) that the cavalry should go; Idioms, 67.—7. *Hostĭbus nocerētur*, &c., that the enemy were injured by laying waste their lands and setting fire to their property, as far as the legionary soldiers could effect it in the midst of labor and on their march, *i. e.* on a laborious march.

P. 162.—1. *Atque mittat* (eum, *i. e.* Mandubratium,) *qui prœsit*, &c., and send him (Mandubratius) into the state that he might rule over it, and hold the government.—2. *Ad numĕrum*, to the number,—*imperatum*, required,—*frumentăque*, and abundance of corn:—"Abundance" is expressed by the plural term, *frumenta*.—3. *Prohibĭtis*, being protected.—4. *Vocant oppĭdum*, call it a town.

5. *Ad mare*, on the sea shore; Ch. 13.—6. *Adoriantur atque oppugnent*, should attack and storm; take by assault.

P. 163.—1. *Motus*, disturbances, commotions, insurrections. 2. *Refectas*, repaired,—*his* (navĭbus) *deductis* (in mare), these ships being brought down into the sea; *i. e* being launched.—3. *Captivōrum*, of prisoners.—4. *Commeatĭbus*, embarkations.—5. *Navigationĭbus*, voyages, trips.—6. *Desiderarētur*, was missing, lost.—7. *Et priōris commeātus*, both those of the previous convoy,—*et quas*, and of those which.—8. *Perpaucæ locum capĕrent*, very few reached their destination.—9. *Necessariò angustiùs milĭtes collocavit*, from necessity stowed his soldiers more closely (than usual).—10. *Subductis navĭbus* (in aridum), the ships being drawn on shore. 11. *Frumentum provenĕrat angustiùs*, corn, grain had (come forth) been produced more scantily; the crop had been less abundant.—12. *In plures civitātes*, among a greater number of states than usual.

P. 164.—1. *Medēri*, cure, remedy.—2. *Millĭbus passuum*, &c., were contained within the space of a hundred miles:—(Probably an error as to the extent.)—3. *Natus summo loco*, descended from a very noble family; of very noble birth.—4. *Tertium jam annum*, &c. killed him, (Tasgetius) now reigning the third year, many belonging to the state being the instigators.—5. *Quòd ad plures*, &c., because it pertained to more than one; *i. e.* more than one were concerned in it.—6. *In hiberna perventum* (esse), that they had arrived at winter quarters; literally, it had been come by them to winter quarters.

P. 165.—1. *Qui cùm ad fines*, &c., and when they had met Sabinus and Cotta at the borders of their kingdom.—2. *Desperātâ re*, having despaired of success.—3. *De commūni re*, concerning their common interests.—4. *Minui posse*, could be adjusted; literally, diminished.—5. *Missu Cæsăris*, by the sending of Cæsar; *i. e.* being sent by Cæsar.—6. *Ad hunc modum*, to this purpose.—7. *Sese*, that he (Ambiorix):—This speech is given in oblique narration; § 141, R. VI. Exp.—8. *Plurĭmum ei debēre*, that he was under very great obligations to him.—9. *De oppugnatiōne castrōrum*, respecting the attack on the camp.—10. *Suăque esse*, &c., that his authority was of such a nature,—*multitūdo*, the people.—11. *Ex humilitāte suâ*, from his weakness, slender circumstances.—12. *Esse Galliæ commūne consilium*, &c., that it was the purpose of the whole of Gaul, that this day had been appointed by them for attacking (at once) all the winter quarters of Cæsar; so that no legion could bring aid to another.

P. 166.—1. *Quibus quoniam pro pietāte*, &c., since he had done justice to them so far as affection (to his country) required, that he now had regard to the claims of duty for the kindnesses of Cæsar to him.—2. *Pro hospitio*, by the ties of friendship.—3. *Ipsōrum esse consilium*, it belonged to them (Titurius and Cotta,) to consider,—*velintne*, whether they should.—4. *Quod cūm faciat*, since he was doing this, *i. e.* in doing this he consulted, &c.—5. *Existit*, arises.—6. *Sustĭnēri*, could be withstood, resisted.—7. *Rem esse testimonio*, that fact was for proof; *i. e.* that facts proved this.

P. 167.—1. *Levius aut turpius*, weaker or more cowardly.—2. *Auctōre hoste*, an enemy being the author; on the information of an enemy.—3. *Clamitabat*, kept crying out; § 44, II. 2.—4. *Cæsărem arbitrāri profectum in Italiam*, that he supposed that Cæsar had gone into Italy.—5. *Non hostem auctōrem*, &c., that he did not look at the enemy's being the adviser, but at the thing itself.—6. *Ardēre*, burned with resentment.—7. *Sine certâ re*, without certain information.—8. *Si nil sit durius*, if nothing occurred more difficult than ordinary.—9. *Unam salūtem*, their only security.—10. *Præsens*, immediate.—11. *Hāc in utramque*, &c., this dispute being maintained on both sides.—12. *Primisque ordinĭbus*, and the chief centurions. 13. *Vincĭte*, prevail, carry your point:—This is spoken in the direct discourse; § 141, R. VI. Exp.—14. *Et id*, and that, *i. e. et dixit id.* 15. *Hi* (milĭtes), these (referring to the Roman soldiers within hearing,) will understand;—*abs te ratiōnem*, will demand satisfaction from you (Cotta); will call you to account.—16. *Nec rejecti nec relegāti*, &c., and not perish with either the sword or famine, as if forced away and banished far from the rest.

P. 168.—1. *Consurgĭtur*, they arise, break up.—2. *Utrumque*, both; viz: Cotta and Titurius.—3. *Res disputatiōne ad mediam noctem*, the affair is protracted by their dispute; *i. e.* the subject is debated till midnight.—4. *Dat manus*, gives his hands; *i. e.* yields,—a mode of expression borrowed from the form of making a surrender by stretching forth, or holding up the hands.—5. *Pronunciātur*, it is published; orders are given,—*vigiliis*, without sleep.—6. *Quid*, i. e. *spectans*, or *visūrus quid*, to see what.—7. *Omnia excogitantur*, &c., every reason is suggested to show,—*quare*, why.—8. *Vigiliis*, want of sleep.—9. *Ut quibus persuasum esset*, since they were persuaded.—10. *Se demisisset*, had gone down.—11. *Ut qui*, since he, or because he.—12. *Hæc tamen ipsa* (fecit) these very things however (he did),—*atque* (ita) *ut*, and so that; in such a way that.—13. *In ipso negotio*, &c., to deliberate in the very moment of action.

P. 169.—1. *Auctor*, an adviser.—2. *Possent minùs facilè obīre omnia per se*, they could less easily perform every thing themselves; every part of their duty could not be performed by them in person (viz: Cotta and Titurius.)—3. *Jussĕrunt* (duces) *pronunciāre* (milĭtĭbus).—4. *In orbem consistĕrent*, and form (Idioms, 85,) themselves into a circle.—5. *Incommŏdè accĭdit*, it proved unfortunate.—6. *Vulgò*, every where:—7. (Ut) *quæ quisque*, &c. that whatever things any one of them considered the most valuable, these he hastened, &c.—8. *Consilium non defuit barbaris*, prudence was not wanting to the barbarians; the barbarians were not deficient in prudence, skill.—9. *Illōrum esse prædam*, &c., that the booty belonged to them, (the Gauls) and that whatever the Romans should leave would be reserved for them; (Idioms, 94, 3.)—10. *Erant et virtūte*, &c , both in valor and number, our men were a match for them in fighting.—11. *Cedant*, they should give way before them.—12. *Nihil iis noceri posse*, that they could not be hurt:- For *nihil* see § 116, Obs. 3.

P. 170.—1. *Locum tenēre*, to keep their place (in the circle).—2. *Ad horam octāvam*, till the eighth hour (2 o'clock, P. M.)—3. *Utrumque femur tragŭlâ transjicĭtur Tito Balventio*, each thigh is pierced through with a dart, to T. Balventius, a brave, &c.; a dart transfixes both the thighs of T. Balventius.—4. *Subvĕnit*, is bringing aid; is endeavoring to rescue.—5. *In adversum os*, full in the mouth.—6. *Ipsi vero nihil nocĭtum iri*, but that he should not be hurt; that no harm should be done to himself;—*se interponĕre*, that he pledged.—7. *Atque in eo constĭtit*, and persisted in it.—8. *In præsentia* (tempŏra), at present.

P. 171.—1. *Victoriam conclāmant*, shout victory.—2. *Illi*, they, viz. those who had retreated to the camp.—3. *Ad unum*, to a man.—4. *Sublātus*, being elated.—5. *Nihil esse negotii*, that it was an easy matter.—6. *Se profitetur*, he offers himself.—7. *Huic quoque accĭdit*, to him, to this officer (Cicero) it happened.

P. 172.—1. *Ægrè is dies sustentātur* (a nostris), that day is maintained by our men with difficulty; *i. e.* our men hold out that day with difficulty.—2. *Proposĭtis*, being offered.—3. *Turres admŏdum*, &c., one hundred and twenty towers in all, altogether.—4. *Præustæ sudes*, stakes burned at the end.—5. *Turres contabulantur*, towers of several stories are raised;—*pinnæ loricæque*, &c., battlements and parapets are constructed of interwoven hurdles.—6. *Cum esset tenuissĭmâ valetudĭne*, though he was in a very feeble state of health.—7. *Sibi parcĕre*, to spare himself.—8. *Alĭquem*

aditum sermōnis, any intimacy.—9. *Factâ potestāte*, leave being given.

P. 173.—1. *Ambiorĭgem ostentant*, &c., for the sake of gaining credit, they ostentatiously point to Ambiorix; *i. e.* they tell of his arrival.—2. *Eos*, that they; viz: Cæsar and his army.—3. *Hoc anĭmo*, of such a disposition; are so favorably disposed.—4. *Licēre illis*, that it would be permitted to them (the Romans),—*per se*, by them (the Nervii).—5. *Adjutōre*, as an intercessor.—6. *Pro ejus justitiâ*, through his regard for justice.—7. *Sed nullâ ferramentōrum copiâ*, but there being no quantity (or abundance) of iron tools.—8. *Sagŭlis* (dim. of *sagum*), short cloaks.—9. *Terram exhaurīre*, to remove the earth.—10. *Millium* (passuum).—11. *Falces testudinesque*, mural hooks and sheds; See Index, *Vineæ* and *Testūdo*.—12. *Ferventes glandes ex fusĭli argillâ*, red hot balls of cast clay.—13. *Fervefacta jacŭla*, fiery javelins.—14. *Distulērunt*, spread the flames.—15. *Agĕre*, advance.

P. 174.—1. *Demigrandi*, of retiring from the fight, yielding.—2. *Acerrĭmè fortissimèque*, with the greatest ardor and bravery. 3. *Recessumque primis*, &c., and the last (the farthest off) did not give a retreat, (an opportunity of retreating,) to the foremost.—4. *Turri*, a tower, (of the enemy,)—*vallum*, (our) rampart.—5. *Quorum*, of whom; viz: the enemy;—*progrĕdi*, to come forth; viz: from the tower.—6. *Deturbāti*, &c., they were dislodged and the tower set on fire.—7. *Qui jam primis ordinĭbus*, &c., who were advancing (rising) to the first ranks.—8. *Spectas*, do you look for. 9. *Quàque*, and where.—10. *Procurrentem*, running forward (to engage him).—11. *Hunc*, him (the wounded enemy).

P. 175.—1. *In illum*, at him (Pulfio).—2. *Succurrit inimĭcus*, &c. Varenus, though his rival, runs up and assists him in danger.—3. *Hunc*, him, (Varenus).—4. *Illum*, that he (Pulfio).—5. *In locum dejectus*, &c., stumbling, he fell; or, he stumbled and fell into a hollow place.—6. *In contentiōne et certamĭne*, in this honorable rivalship and contest;—*utrumque versāvit*, &c., employed, directed, both, that the one, though the rival, alternately brought aid and security to the other.—7. *Quanto gravior*, &c , the more severe and difficult,—*tanto crebriōres*, the more frequently; § 98, Obs. 10.—8. *Unus Nervius*, a certain Nervian.—9. *Honesto loco*, of an honorable family.—10. *Servo* (suo) a slave of his.—11. *Pericŭlis*, the great danger (literally, the dangers).—12. *Undecĭmâ horâ*, the eleventh hour, 5 o'clock, P. M.; see Gr. App. I.

P. 176.—1. *Quà sibi iter faciendum sciēbat*, where he knew he would have to pass.—2. *Si reipublĭcæ commŏdo* &c., if he could do it with advantage to the state.—3. *Litĕras publĭcas*, the public documents.—4. *Tolerandæ hiĕmis causâ*, for the sake of enduring the winter; for a winter supply.—5. *Rem gestam*, the things done, the course pursued.—6. *Opiniōne dejectus*, disappointed in his xpectation; literally, cast down from his expectation.

P. 177.—1. *Si adīre non possit*, if he could not gain access (to the camp).—2. *Ad amentum deligātâ*, tied to the thong, or strap: The *amentum* was a strap fastened to the middle of a spear or javelin, by means of which it was thrown with greater force.—3. *Casu*, by chance.—4. *Perlectam*, being read over; after he had read it over himself.—5. *Expŭlit*, dispelled, put an end to.—6. *Tamen angustiis viārum*, nevertheless, by the narrowness of the ways (or passages) between the tents.

P. 178.—1. *Galli* (hoc faciunt) *Cæsar* (hoc facit).—2. *In suum locum*, to his own ground; *i. e.* ground favorable to him.—3. *Portasque obstrui*, &c., the gates to be blocked up, and in doing this, that they should run to and fro as much as possible:—This was designed to lead the enemy to believe that there was great trepidation and fear in the camp.—4. *Etiam de vallo deductis*, &c., and being drawn back, even from the rampart, they (the enemy,) approach nearer.—5. *Ad se*, to them, viz: from the Roman camp.—6. *Ac sic nostros contemsĕrunt*, and to such a degree did they show their contempt of us.—7. *Eâ* (vià), in that way.—8. *Longiùs*, too far.—9. *Illōrum*, of them, viz: the enemy.

P. 179.—1. *Legiōne productâ*, &c., having led forth the legion; having reviewed the legion, he finds; (Idioms, 104.).—2. *Pro ejus merĭto*, according to his merit; as he deserved;—*appellat*, he addresses by name.—3. *Rem gestam propōnit*, he lays before them (viz: Cotta and Sabinus) the matter as it took place —4. *Culpâ*, by the misconduct.—5. *Hoc*, on this account.—6. *Quòd*, seeing, since. 7. *Incommŏdo expiāto*, &c., the loss being retrieved; the disaster having been remedied by the kindness, &c.—8. *Post horam nonam*, after 3 o'clock, P. M.; See Gr. App. I.—9. *Trinis hibernis*, in three several winter quarters; *i. e.* in three different places.—10. *Consultābant*, were consulting, deliberating; § 44, II. 2.—11. *Quid consilii relĭqui capĕrent*, &c., what measures the rest were adopting, and where a beginning of the war would be made.—12. *Concilia*, assemblies, meetings.

P. 180.—1. *Quin alĭquem*, &c., but he heard, (that he did not hear,) some intelligence.—2. *Armorĭcæ*, states lying along the north of Gaul, now Bretagne.—3. *Dicto audientes*, obedient:—In this phrase *audientes* governs *dicto*, by § 112, R. V.; again, the words *audientes dicto*, together, are equivalent to *obedientes*, and often govern another dative by the same Rule; as, *Nobis dicto obediens*, obedient to us.—4. *Tantum valuit*, prevailed so much; had so much influence.—5. *Attŭlit*, produced, caused.—6. *Præcipuo semper honōre habuit*, treated always with special honor.—7. *Altĕros,—altĕros*, the former,—the latter.—8. *Nulla fere civĭtas*, &c., almost every state was suspected by us.—9. *Idque adeo*, &c., and I do not know whether this is to be wondered at.—10. *Quòd, qui*, &c., because they grieved most bitterly that they who were accustomed to be ranked before all nations in valor, had lost so much of that reputation that they should endure the commands of the Roman people.—*Qui* has for its antecedent *se* in the next clause.

P. 181.—1. *Lapsus hâc spe*, having fallen from this hope; *i. e.* being disappointed in this hope.—2. *Ultro ad se venīri* (ab homiňibus, 67, 7,) that men were coming to him of their own accord.—3. *Omnĭbus cruciatĭbus*, by every species of torture.—4. *Alterius factiōnis*, of the opposite faction.—5. *Secūtum fidem Cæsăris*, having put himself under the protection of Cæsar.—6. *Huc*, to them.

P. 182.—1. *Sub castris*, close up to the camp.—2. *Quibuscumque potĕrat rebus*, by whatever means he could.—3. *Intromissis*, being let in (to the Roman camp).—4. *Quos arcessendos*, &c., who he had taken care should be sent for.—5. *Nullâ ratiōne*, in no way.—6. *Cum magnâ contumeliâ*, with great insult of words; with most abusive language.—7. *Dispersi ac dissipāti* in a dispersed and scattered manner.—8. *Præcĭpit atque interdĭcit*, commands and forbids,—*præcĭpit* has for its object, *unum omnes petant Indutiomārum;* and *interdĭcit*, the next clause, *neu quis*, &c.—9. *Morâ reliquōrum*, by the delay (of pursuing) the rest.—10. *Comprŏbat*, favors.

NOTES ON BOOK VI.

P. 183.—1. *Dilectum habēre*, to hold a levy; to raise forces.—2. *Quoniam ipse ad urbem*, &c., since he (Pompey) remained near the city with military command, on account of the republic (The

laws did not allow a person invested with military powers to enter the city,) that he would order those troops which he had raised in Cisalpine Gaul (and had bound) by the oath of fidelity to the consul.—3. *Sarcīri*, &c., be repaired, but even be more than compensated by greater forces.—4. *Quod cùm Pompeius*, &c., Pompey having granted this.—5. *Ut docuĭmus*, as we have shewn.—6. *Obsidibusque de pecuniâ cavent*, secure the payment of the money by means of hostages.

P. 184.—1. *Ad imperātum*, to the thing commanded; *i. e.* to do the thing commanded.—2. *Nondum hiĕme confectâ*, the winter being not yet ended, *i. e.* before the end of winter.—3. *Utì instituĕrat*, as he had been accustomed.—4. *Omnia* every thing else.—5. *Sed ab hoc consilio abfuisse existimabantur*, but were supposed to be absent from, (not concerned in) this scheme (plot).—6. *Hâc re*, &c., this thing (the adjournment) being published from the tribunal; (an elevated place formed of turf or other material heaped up together, *suggestus*).—7. *Conantĭbus*, &c., to them attempting to do this.—8. *Sententiâ*, from this design.—9. *Deprecandi*, of excusing their conduct.—10. *Quòd æstivum*, &c., because the summer was the time for prosecuting the war, not for legal investigations.

P. 185.—1. *Totus et mente et anĭmo*, wholly with his mind and soul; *i. e.* with his whole heart and soul.—2. *Ne quis aut ex hujus iracundiâ*, &c., that no commotion might arise, either from this man's violent temper, or from that hatred on the part of the state which he had incurred (in consequence of having been made king over it by Cæsar).—3 *Pro explorāto*, for certain.—4. *Circumspiciēbat ejus* (Ambiorĭgis) *relĭqua consilia anĭmo*, watched his other plans in his mind (*i. e.* with attention).—5. *Perpetuis paludĭbus*, continued, uninterrupted marshes.—6. *Illi*, from him (*Ambiorix*),—*ipsum*, (*Ambiorix*) himself.—7. *Congrĕdi cum Transrhenānis*, to unite with those beyond the Rhine.—8. *Manu*, an army.—9. *Præsidio loci*, to the protection of the place, the strength of their position.—10. *Effectis*, erected, built.—11. *Adit tripartīto*, marches against them in three divisions.

P. 186.—1. *Augebātur* (hostĭbus) was increased to the enemy.—2. *Loquĭtur*, he (Labienus) speaks.—3. *In dubium non devocatūrum*, would not endanger, involve in doubt.—4. *Gallĭcis rebus*, the interest, the affairs of the Gauls.—5. *Primis ordinĭbus*, the chief centurions.—6. *Longum esse*, that it would be long, too long, too late.

P. 187.—1. *Usus eâdem simulatiōne itinĕris,* practising the same deception respecting his march.—2. *Facultātem,* opportunity. 3. *Præstāte, display.*—4. *Præsidio ad impedimenta dimissis,* being detached to the baggage for a guard; *i. e.* to guard the baggage.—5. *Præter spem,* contrary to expectation.—6. *Infestis signis,* with hostile standards.—7. *Cingetorĭgi—tradĭtum est,* was conferred on Cingetorix; See B. V. Ch. 3. and 56.—8. *Ne Ambiŏrix ad eos receptum habēret,* that Ambiorix might not have a retreat to them; a place of refuge among them.

P. 188.—1. *Causâ purgandi sui,* on purpose to clear, to justify themselves.—2. *Neque ab se fidem læsam,* nor had their promise been violated by them.—3. *Ne commūni odio,* &c., lest in his common hatred of the Germans.—4. *Causâ cognĭtâ,* on enquiry.—5. *Imperĭtos* ignorant.—6. *Refĕrunt,* report.—7. *Infinĭtâ &c.* of vast extent.—8. *Ab Suevis,* on the side of the Suevi.

P. 189.—1. *Aliēnum,* improper, foreign to the purpose.—2. *Proponĕre,* to treat of, lay before, to give some account of.—3. *In omnĭbus pagis partibusque,* in all the cantons and parts of cantons.—4. *Princĭpes eārum factiōnum,* &c., the heads of these factions are (persons) who in their opinion are considered to have the greatest interest, on whose will and decision all their most important affairs and resolutions hinge, depend.—5. *Idque ejus rei causâ,* &c., and this custom seems to have been instituted from early times, for this reason.—6. *Quisque non patĭtur,—neque habent,* each leader (patron),—neither do they have:—The pupil may here notice the transition from the singular, *patĭtur,* with *quisque,* to the plural, *habent;* § 102, Obs. 5.—7. *Hæc eādem ratio est,* &c., this same principle exists, prevails, in the government of all Gaul.—8. *Princĭpes,* chief, at the head of.—9. *Jactūris,* expenses, gifts:—This is a pure use of the word, which denotes a present loss in expectation of future benefit.—10. *Tantum potentiâ antecessĕrant,* they (the Sequani) so far excelled (the Ædui) in power.—11. *Re infectâ,* the business, his object, being unaccomplished.—12. *Eōrum amicitiam* their (the Ædui's) friendship.

P. 190.—1. *Relĭquis rebus,* &c., here the participle, *amplificātâ,* agrees with the nearest noun; See § 98, Obs. 4.—2. *Dimisĕrant,* (for *amisĕrant,*) had lost.—3. *Quos quòd adæquāre,* &c., and because it was understood that they (the Remi) equalled the Ædui in Cæsar's favor; *i. e.* had an equal share of Cæsar's favor with the Ædui; stood as high in &c.—4. *Vetĕres inimicitias,* ancient feuds.—5. *Dicābant se Remis in clientĕlam,* gave up themselves to the Re-

mi for protection; put themselves under the protection of the Remi, 6. *Alĭquo numĕro*, of any note;—*genĕra*, classes.—7. *Aere aliēno*, by debt, literally, the money of another.—8. *In hos eădem*, &c., over these the nobles have all the same rights as masters have over their slaves.—9. *Altĕrum est Druĭdum*, one is that of the Druids (See Index)—the other, that of the knights.—10. *Illi*, the former;—*ad hos*, to the latter.—11. *Procūrant*, have charge of.—12. *Ii* (Druĭdes) *sunt apud eos* (adolescentes) they (the Druids) are in great honor among them, viz: their pupils.—13. *Non stetit decrēto*, &c., has not stood by, has violated their decree,—they exclude them from the public rites, excommunicate them.—14. *Ii quibus ita interdictum est*, those who are thus excommunicated (Idioms, 66,).—15. *Defugiunt adĭtum eōrum*, &c., shun their company and conversation.

P. 191.—1. *Habet summam auctoritātem*, possesses the supreme authority; whose authority is absolute.—2. Arrange: *Quæ regio habētur media* (regio) *totius Galliæ*, which is esteemed the middle, or central region of all Gaul.—3. *Parent*, obey, abide by, acquiesce in.—4. *Disciplīna*, &c. this institution is thought to have originated in Britain.—5. *Diligentiùs*, more accurately.—6. *Militiæ vacatiōnem*, exemption from military service.—7. *Immunitātem omnium rerum*, immunity, privilege, free use, enjoyment, of all things; all immunities.—8. *Præmiis*, rewards, advantages, privileges.—9. *Ediscĕre*, to learn by heart; to commit to memory.—10. *Ea litĕris mandāre*, to commit these things to writing.—11. *Instituisse id*, to have instituted this custom.—12. *Disciplīnam efferri*, that their doctrine should be spread abroad.—13. *In primis hoc volunt*, &c., they (the Druids) in particular wish to inculcate this idea; it is a favorite maxim of the Druids.—14. *Anĭmas nōn interīre*, &c., that souls do not die, but pass from one body to another.—15. *Dispŭtant*, &c., they reason and impart their reflections to the young.

P. 192.—1. *Cùm est usus*, when there is need.—2. *Versantur*, are engaged.—3. *Ambactos*, retainers.—4. *Dedĭta religionĭbus*, given, addicted to religious rites, to superstitions.—5. *Contexta viminĭbus*, interwoven with twigs.—6. *Ejus genĕris*(nocentium), of this class of offenders.—7. *Deum maxĭmè Mercurium colunt*, they (the Gauls) worship chiefly the god Mercury; *i. e.* Mercury is the chief or favorite deity of the Gauls:—Not however the Mercury of the Grecian mythology, but a Gallic deity.—8. (Colunt) *Apollĭnem*, &c.—9. *Initia*, the beginnings, the first knowledge.

P. 193.—1. *Quæ superavĕrint*, &c. they sacrifice the captured animals which remain.—2. *Posĭta*, deposited (in sacred places).—3. *Spatia omnis tempŏris*, all their periods or divisions of time.—4. *Ut noctem dies subsequātur*, that the day follows the night; *i. e.* their day is from sunset to sunset as among the Jews.—5. *Palam*, openly; *i. e.* publicly, in public.—6. *Conjunctim ratio habētur*, a joint account is kept.—7. *Fructusque servātur*, and the interest is laid up.—8. *Vitâ superârit*, shall survive the other.—9. *Habent questiōnem de uxorĭbus in servĭlem modum*, they examine their wives by torture, after the manner of slaves; like slaves.—10. *Si compertum est*, if any discovery is made.—11. *Pro cultu*, considering their mode of life.—12. *Vivis cordi fuisse*, to have been pleasing to them living.—*ac paulo*, and not long before our time.

P. 194.—1. *Commodiùs*, to greater advantage than others; more judiciously.—2. *Quæ visa sunt*, what seemed proper to them; *i. e.* what they thought proper.—3. *Per consilium*, through, or during; *i. e* in the time of the council.—4. *Neque student*, nor do they pay attention to.—5. *Opĭbus quorum*, &c., by whose power they are manifestly benefited.—6. *Vulcānum*, fire.—7 *Consistit*, is spent. 8. *Impubĕres*, chaste.—9. *Rhenōnum*, of deer's hides.—10. *Quantum et quo loco*, &c., as much land as, and where they think proper. 11. *Afferunt multas causas ejus rei*, they produce many reasons for this practice.

P. 195.—1. *Accuratiùs*, with greater care.—2. *Anĭmi æquitāte*, in evenness of mind, contentment.—3. *Proprium virtūtis*, peculiar to, or a proof of, their valor.—4. *Dicunt jus, controversiasque minuunt*, administer justice and decide controversies.—5. *Qui velint sequi profiteantur*, let those who wish to follow signify it, give their names. 6. *Ac tempus fuit antea*, but there was a time formerly.—7. *Ultro bella inferrent*, they (the Gauls) without provocation brought war; —*Germānis*, upon the Germans.

P. 196.—1. *Summam opiniōnem*, a very high character, reputation for justice, and military glory.—2. *Gallis autem*, &c., the nearness of the (Roman) province to the Gauls, and their acquaintance with foreign commodities —3. *Largĭtur multa ad copiam atque usus*, supplies many articles of luxury and convenience.—4. *Expedito*, to a traveller without baggage; to an expeditious traveller.—5. *Finiri*, be measured.—6. *Sinistrorsus*, to the left hand (viz: of the Danube,) stretches northward from the Danube.—7. *Memoriæ prodenda videantur*, seem worthy to be handed down to remembrance.—8. *Bos*, See Index, *Bison*.—9. *Sicut palmæ*, like palms.

P. 197.—1. *Alces,* elk; See *Alce.*—2. *Variĕtas pellium,* the spots, varied color, of their skins.—3. *Si afflictæ quo casu concidĕrint,* if, being thrown down by any accident, they have fallen.—4. *Applĭcant se ad eas,* they lean themselves against these.—5. *Infirmas,* being weakened —6. *Uri;* See *Urus.*—7. *Quæ sunt testimonio,* to serve as a proof.—8. *Ne parvŭli quidem excepti,* not even those caught young. 9. *Amplissĭmis,* their most splendid.—10. *Cæsar:*—Cæsar having finished his digression, respecting the manners of the Gauls and Germans, (Ch. 11—28,) here resumes his narrative.

P. 198.—1. *Si quid celeritāte,* &c., to see if he may be able to gain any thing by rapidity of march and favorable opportunity.—2. *Ut imperātum est,* as was ordered.—3. *Fortūna potest* (facĕre) *multum,* &c. fortune can do much; *i. e.* has great influence, not only, &c.—4. *Magnæ fuit fortūnæ,* it was a piece of great good fortune.

P. 199.—1. *Multum fortūna valuit,* fortune did much, had great power or influence.—2. *Judicio,* from choice, designedly.—3. *Exclūsus tempŏre,* prevented by want of time.—4. *Sed certè,* but it is certain.—5. *Alienissĭmis* to total strangers.—6. *Omnĭbus precĭbus,* with every sort of execration.—7. *Taxo,* with yew; *i. e.* with a decoction of the leaves or berry, both of which were regarded as poisonous.—8. *Causam omnium Germanōrum esse unam,* that the cause of all the Germans was one and the same.—9. *Questiōne captivōrum,* from an examination of the captives.

P. 200.—1. *Post diem septĭmum* (inchoātum), after the seventh day was begun; *i. e.* on the seventh day;—2. *Ut suprà,* Ch. 31.—3. *Nulla certa manus,* no regular force.—4. *Vicinitatĭbus,* to the neighborhoods; *i e.* to the people in the neighborhood:—a very common mode of speech in our own language.—5. *Ex parte,* partly, in a measure.

P. 201.—1. *Confertos,* in large parties.—2. *Si vellet,* if he (Cæsar) wished.—3. *Institūta ratio,* established discipline.—4. *Ut potiùs in nocendo,* &c., that some opportunity of injuring the enemy should be omitted, rather than that this injury should be inflicted with any danger to his soldiers.—5. *Legionarius miles,* the legionary soldiery; the soldiers of the legion; *i. e.* the regular troops.—6. *Appetēbat,* was drawing near —7. *Quantos casus affĕrat,* how great accidents she brings; *i. e.* how great changes she brings about.—8. *Manus erat nulla,* there was no collected body.—9. *Suprà docuĭmus,* we have shewn above; B. IV. Ch. 16.

P. 202.—1. *Non palus non silvæ morantur hos,* &c., no marsh, no woods hinder these men, &c.—2. *Tantum præsidii ut ne,* &c., so little of garrison that not even the walls could be surrounded with men; *i. e.* could be manned.—3. *Duce,* guide,—*indicio,* information. 4. *Qui illius patientiam pæne obsessiōnem,* &c., who called his forbearance almost a siege, since they were not permitted to go out of the camp.—5. *Qui convaluĕrant,* &c., those who had recovered during this interval.—6. *Subsedĕrat,* had remained.—7. *Casu,* by chance, by accident.

P. 203.—1. *Mercatōres qui sub vallo tendĕrent,* the suttlers who pitched their tents close to the ramparts.—2. *Relĭquos adĭtus,* and other places of entrance.—3. *Plerīque novas sibi,* &c., most of them form to themselves strange superstitious notions from the place; and they place before their eyes the disaster of Cotta and Titurius, since they were overthrown in that fort.—4. *Qui primum pilum,* &c.. who had led the first rank with Cæsar; *i. e.* who had been his chief centurion.—5. *Superiorĭbus prœliis;* See B. II. Ch. 25, and B. III. Ch. 5.—6. *Relinquit anĭmus Sextium,* Sextius faints.

P. 204.—1. *Imperīti usus militāris,* not acquainted with the usages of war.—2. *Cuneo facto,* a wedge being made; being drawn up in the form of a wedge.—3. *Si,* if, even if:—*at,* still, yet.—4. *Nullo usu militāris rei percepto,* &c., no experience in military affairs being yet acquired.

P. 205.—1. *Non facĕret fidem,* he did not gain credit, was not believed.—2. *Pæne alienātâ mente,* with a mind almost alienated; devoid of reason.—3. *Questus unum,* having complained of only one thing.—4. *Locum debuisse relinqui, ne minĭmo quidem casu,* that a place, or occasion, ought not to have been left, for even the smallest accident; See § 16, Exc. 2.—5. *Quarum omnium rerum maxĭmè,* &c., of all these things it seemed the most astonishing.—6. *Obtulĕrint optatissĭmum beneficium Ambiorĭgi,* rendered the most acceptable service to Ambiorix.—7. *Ad vexandos hostes,* to annoy the enemy.

P. 206.—1. *Pæne natūram studio vincĕrent,* they almost overcame nature by exertion.—2. *Ad summam felicitātem,* to complete success.—3. *Ille eripĕret,* &c., he continued to snatch himself from them; to escape from them by the aid of lurking places and forests: 4. *Sumsit supplicium more majōrum,* he inflicted punishment according to the practice of their ancestors.—5. *Cùm interdixisset quibus aquâ atque igni,* when he had interdicted them from water and fire;

i e. had banished them:—This was the Roman judicial mode of inflicting the sentence of banishment, "To forbid the use of water and fire."—6. *Frumento proviso exercitui,* having provided corn for the army.

[END OF NOTES.]

INDEX,

HISTORICAL, GEOGRAPHICAL AND ARCHÆOLOGICAL,

FOR THE FIRST SIX BOOKS OF

CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES ON THE GALLIC WAR.

Æquinoctium, i, n. (from *Æquus*, equal, and *Nox*, night,) the Equinox, or time when the days and nights are equal, all over the globe. This happens twice a year, on 22d March, and 22d September. The former is called the Vernal, the latter the Autumnal Equinox. The circle, which passes through the place of the sun at these two periods of the year, has, from the phenomenon above mentioned, received the name of the Equinoctial, or Equinoctial Line, and is directly over the Equator.

Agendĭcum, i, n. (now *Sens*,) the chief city of the Senŏnes, a brave and powerful people of Gaul, who inhabited the left bank of the Sequăna, (*Seine*). It stood below the confluence of the Vanne and Icauna, vel, Itumna, (*Yonne*,) a southern branch of the Seine.

Agger, is, the name of a mound raised by the Romans in besieging cities. It was composed of earth, wood, hurdles, stone, &c. The agger commenced at a distance from the walls, gradually advanced towards the town, always increasing in height, till it equalled or overtopped the walls. This mound was secured by towers of different stories, (See *Turris*,) from which showers of missiles were discharged on the defenders by means of engines, and from which, when advanced near enough, a temporary platform or bridge was sometimes thrown to the top of the wall, on which the soldiers marched into the city.

Ala, æ, the wing of an army, properly the cavalry, so called from being placed on the right and left of the infantry. In the plural this term is often used to designate the troops of the allies, which (both infantry and cavalry,) were stationed on the right and left of the Roman army.

Alarii, ōrum, those belonging to the *Alæ*, or wings.

Allobrŏges, um, (sing. Allobrox, ŏgis,) a people of Gaul, whose country lay between the Isăra, (*Isere*,) and the river Rhodănus, (*Rhone*.) They bravely, and for a long time, resisted the power of the Roman legions, but were at last defeated by Pomtīnus. Cicero extols them for their fidelity to his countrymen, of which they gave a remarkable proof in Catiline's conspiracy (See Sallust, B. C.) Horace censures them for their love of novelty, which seems characteristic of the inhabitants of that country, both in ancient and modern times. Cæsar De Bel. Gal. IV. 5. The chief town of the Allobrŏges was Vienna, (*Vienne*,) on the left bank of the Rhone, 13 miles below Lugdūnum, (*Lyon*.)

Alpes, ium, a chain of mountains separating Italy from Gaul and Germany. They are in the form of a crescent, and extend from the Sinus Flanatĭcus, (the gulf of *Quarnero*,) at the top of the

gulf of Venice, to Vada Sabatia, (*Savona*,) on the gulf of Genoa, a distance of 600 miles. They have been divided into different portions, the principal of which are the following: 1. *Alpes Maritĭmæ*, (or Maritime Alps,) extending from the vicinity of Nice to Monte Viso. 2. *Alpes Cottæ*, (or Cottian Alps,) from Monte Viso to Mont Cenis. 3. *Alpes Graiæ*, (or Graian Alps,) between Mont Iseran and Little St. Bernard. 4. *Alpes Pennīnæ*, (or Pennine Alps,) from Great St. Bernard to the sources of the Rhone and Rhine. To this range belongs Mt. Blanc, 14,676 feet high. 5. *Alpes Rhætĭcæ*, (or Rhætian Alps,) from St. Gothard to Mount Brenner in the Tyrol. 6. *Alpes Norĭcæ*, (or Noric Alps,) from Mount Brenner to the head of the river Plavis. 7. *Alpes Carnĭcæ*, sive *Juliæ*, (the Carnic or Julian Alps,) from the head of the river Plavis to the confines of Illyricum. Over these mountains there are several passes, of which the principal are, that over the Great St. Bernard, that over Mont Simplon, and that over Mont St. Gothard.

Ambarri, ōrum, a people of Gaul, related to the Ædui, supposed to have lived on the Arar, (*Saone*,) a little to the N. of its Junction with the Rhodănus, (*Rhone*.)

Ambiānum, i, n. anciently Samarobrīva, now *Amiens*, a town of the Belgæ.

Ambiāni, ōrum, the inhabitants of Ambiānum. They entered into a conspiracy against Cæsar, (B. G. II. 4,) and appear to have held a considerable rank among the Belgic tribes.

Ambiliāti, ōrum, m. a nation of Gallia Celtĭca whose geographical position is not precisely ascertained. They are mentioned (B. G. III. 9,) along with the Osismii, Lexovii, Nannētes, &c., and therefore their country must have been included in the province of Bretagne or Normandy. Some editions have Ambiāni.

Ambiŏrix, ĭgis, king of the Eburōnes, was a great enemy to the Romans. After many narrow escapes, he at last evaded the pursuit of Cæsar's men who followed him too closely, when only four of his attendants remained.

Ambivarĭti, ōrum, a nation of Gaul, between the Mosa, (*Mæse*,) and the Rhēnus, (*Rhine*,) who were subject to the Ædui. (B. IV. Ch. 9.)

Anartes, ium, et Anarti, v. Anartii, ōrum, a people of Dacia, who inhabited the east bank of the river Tibiscus, (*Teissk*, or *Teyss*,) one of the northern branches of the Danube. Their country now forms part of Hungary.

Ancalĭtes, ium, a people of South Britain, who were neighbors to

the Trinobantes. Some have thought the Atrebātes of Ptolemy and Antonine's Itinerary, the same with the Ancalites of Cæsar. See Horsley's Britannia Romana, p. 17, and Gale's Anton. Itiner. p. 105, 106.

Andes, ium, ĭbus, a nation of the Celtæ in Gaul. Their territory lay on the north bank, and near the mouth, of the river Ligĕris, (*Loire.*)

Annus, i, m. a year. See Gr. App. I.

Antebrogius, i, m. a man of great influence amongst the Rhemi, who was sent ambassador to Cæsar in the second year of the Gallic war.

Antesignāni, ōrum, (*Ante* and *signum*,) a name given to the soldiers who fought *before* the standards, or in the first line, as those who were stationed behind the standards were called *Postsignāni*, or *Subsignāni*.

Antistius, i, (Caius A. Reginus), one of Cæsar's lieutenants in Gaul. Cæsar, in consequence of his expecting greater commotions in that country, gave orders in the sixth year of the war, to Marcus Silānus, C. Antistius Rhegīnus, and T. Sextius, to levy troops. We find him, at other times, appointing this lieutenant to honorable commissions.

Antistius, (See Turpio.)

Apollo, ĭnis, the son of Jupĭter and Latōna, the god of music, medicine, augury, painting, poetry, and all the fine arts. He was born at the same birth with his sister Diāna, near the foot of Cynthus, a mountain in Delos, an island in Mare Ægeum, (*Archipelago.*) Hence he was called Cynthius and Delius; and Diana, Cynthia and Delia. Among beasts, the wolf; among insects, the grass-hopper; among birds, the cock, the crow, the swan, and the hawk; and among trees, the palm, the olive, and the laurel, were sacred to Apollo. He was represented as a tall beardless young man, of handsome shape, holding in his hand a bow, hence called *Deus Arcitĕnens*, or a lyre, and his head surrounded with rays of light.

Aquĭla, æ, m. an eagle, also the standard of a Roman Legion. From the second consulship of Marius, and under the Emperors, the standards were most commonly of silver, seldom of gold, in the form of an eagle, from which the name is derived. The preference was given to the former metal, according to Pliny, because it is seen at a greater distance than the latter. But though the figure of the Roman ensigns was always that of an eagle, they were not always precisely alike. Sometimes they resembled an

eagle in a standing posture, at others, with outstretched wings, which was the most common form, and not unfrequently with a turret on their backs. The Roman standard, at first, was a bundle of hay fixed to a pole, *Manipŭlus*,—a term afterward used to denote the third part of a cohort, then of wood, sometimes of silver, and more rarely of gold, in different forms. Marius, during his second consulship, introduced into the Roman army the eagle, which continued to be ensign till the destruction of the empire. The merit of originality does not belong to the Romans, for we have the authority of Xenophon to maintain, that it was first used as a military standard by the Persians.

Aquilĭfer, fĕri, m. standard-bearer, whose office seems, in some degree, to correspond to that of ensign with us. His place was in the first line. To allow the standard to fall into the hands of the enemy was reckoned highly disgraceful to the whole legion, which is still the case in modern times, but particularly to the person who carried it. In one instance recorded by Livy, the standard-bearer was, for this crime, put to death. But the centurions suffered the same punishment at that time, and the army was decimated for cowardice and treachery.—It does not appear from Roman history, that recourse was had to such severity, unless in instances of wilful dereliction of duty, proceeding either from unmanly timidity or treacherous intention.

Aquilēia, æ, f. a famous seaport belonging to the Venĕti on Mare Hadriaticum, (*Gulf of Venice.*) Strabo says it was built by the Romans, to repel the inroads of the barbarians, when their territory on that coast did not extend farther north. The name has been thought to be derived from an eagle, *Aquĭla*, flying over the site at the time the foundation was laid; but more probably from the Roman standard, in consequence of two legions having been long stationed in that place. From its splendor and magnificence, it was sometimes called *Roma Secunda*. Altilla, king of the Huns, after a long and obstinate siege, plundered it, A. D. 452, and so completely was the city destroyed, that the next generation could scarcely discover its ruins. Since that time, a few fishermen's huts point out the place near which it stood. Aquilēia, according to Pliny, was at the distance of 1500 paces from the coast.

Aquitania, æ, f. one of the three principal divisions of Gallia, (*France*,) bounded on the east by Provincia, (*Languedoc, Provence*, and *Dauphiné*;) on the north by the river Garumna, (*Garonne*,) which separates it from Gallia Celtĭca, on the west by Oceănus Cantabrĭcus, (*Bay of Biscay*,) and on the south by Py-

renæi Montes, (*Pyrenees*, or *Pyrenean Mountains*,) which divide Gallia from Hispania, (*Spain*.) As Aquitania was much less than either of the other two divisions, Augustus extended its northern boundary to the river Ligĕris, (*Loire*.)

Aquitāni, ōrum, (sing. Aquitānus, i,) the inhabitants of Aquitania.

Arar, ăris, m. (*Saone*,) a smooth flowing river of Gaul, which takes its rise near Mount Vosĕgus, (*Vosge*,) runs southward, and after receiving several streams, falls into the river Rhodănus, (*Rhone*,) at Lugdūnum, (*Lyon*, or *Lyons*.) B. I. Ch. 12.

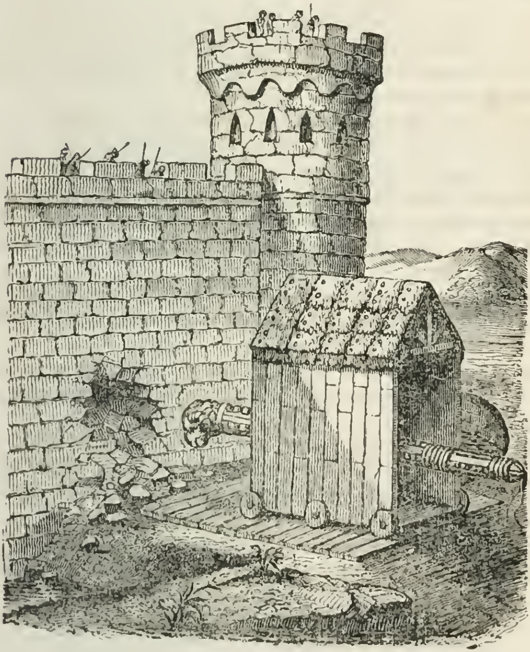
Arduenna, æ, f. *Ardennes*, a forest of Gaul, the largest in that country, reaching, according to Cæsar, from the Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) to the territory of the Remi, upwards of fifty miles in length. Others make the extent of this forest much larger. If it reached from the territory of the Trevĭri to that of the Remi, it would greatly exceed fifty miles. The ground is now in many places cleared, and cities built upon it. Strabo says, the trees of this forest were not of a great height, and its length did not exceed forty miles.

Arecomĭci, ōrum, a people of Gaul, who lived on the Gallĭcus Sinus, (*Gulf of Lyons*,) to the west of the river Rhodănus, (*Rhone*.) See Volcæ.

Aries, ĕtis, m. a ram:—also a military engine for battering down walls. It is said to have been first used by the Carthaginians at the siege of Gades, (*Cadiz*.) This instrument was originally very simple. To the end of a beam, varying in length and thickness according to circumstances, was affixed a piece of iron in the form of a ram's head, to which it owes its name. This powerful engine of war rested on the arms of the soldiers who worked it. The first improvement made on the battering ram, was to suspend it by a chain or a rope from the top of two logs of wood, having the lower ends fixed firmly in the ground at a considerable distance from each other, and terminating in a point at the upper, by which contrivance the men who wrought it were wholly relieved of its weight. To protect them from the destructive weapons thrown by the besieged, a shed or mantlet, with a strong roof, was formed around it The whole stood on wheels, so that the besiegers easily moved the engine at pleasure. It does not appear from ancient history, that the battering ram received any important improvement after the one just stated. The discovery of gunpowder and introduction of artillery have quite superseded the use of this military engine, which the Romans long held in great esteem

The number of men employed at once in working the ram, and the length of time they continued, would vary according to the number of the troops, the magnitude of the beam, the thickness of the wall, &c. It is certain that in some instances, upwards of fifty men plied on each side, and from the severity of the labor, they must, in ordinary cases, have been frequently relieved. The following wood cut represents the battering ram protected by the *Testūdo*, or *vineæ,* under which the men employed in working it were protected from the missiles of the enemy.

ARIES.



Ariovistus, i, king of the Germans, who invaded Gallia, (*France,*) conquered a considerable part of that country, and subjected the inhabitants to the most cruel and oppressive treatment. Cæsar marched up to his very camp, compelled him to fight, and gained such a complete victory, that a very few only, among whom was

Ariovistus himself, escaped. These continued their flight, until they reached the banks of the Rhine, which they crossed, some by swimming, others by boats. Ariovistus, in a little vessel, got safely to the other side. From this period nothing of his history is known.

Armorĭcæ civitātes, Armorĭc States, namely, those of the Rhedŏnes Namnĕtes, Venĕti, Curiosolĭtes, Osismii, Corisopīti, Unelli, Ambrincatui, Bajocasses, Viducasses, and Lexovii, who inhabited the western part of the countries, between the Ligĕris, (*Loire,*) and the Sequăna, (*Seine.*) They had this name from their situation on the sea coast; *Armor* signifying, in the language of the ancient Gauls, *on the sea.*

Armorĭci, ōrum, the inhabitants of Armorĭcæ.

Arpinius, i, (Caius,) a Roman knight whom Cæsar sent along with Quintus Junius to Ambiŏrix, after he himself had declined an interview with that prince.

Arverni, ōrum, a people of Gallia Celtĭca, whose territories lay between the sources of the Eleāver, (*Allier,*) and Duranius, (*Dordogne,*) branches of the Ligĕris and Garumna. From the numerous wars which they had carried on against the Romans, Strabo infers their power and resources must, in former ages, have been very great. Like the Romans, they boasted of being descended from the Trojans.

Atrebātes, ium, a people of Gallia Belgĭca, the neighbors of the Morĭni whose country lay along the English Channel, opposite to Dover.

Atrius, i, (Quintus,) an officer to whom Cæsar gave the command of the shipping, which had carried him and his army to the coast of Britain.

Atuatŭci, v. Aduatŭci, ōrum, a people of Belgic Gaul, whose territories lay between the rivers Mosa, (*Mæse,*) and the Scaldis (*Scheld,*) adjoining to those of the Nervii and Toxanuri. Their capital was Atuatŭca, æ, f. *Tongres,* in Brabant.

Aulerci, ōrum; of this name Cæsar mentions four nations of Gaul· *Aulerci Brannovĭces*, whose territories, (*Morienne,*) were adjoining to those of the Ædui, Segusiāni, and Ambivarīti; *Aulerci Cenomanni*, whose country, (*Mans,*) lay between the rivers Sarta. (*Sarte,*) and Lædus, two of the northern branches of the Loire, Suindīnum, vel, Subdinium, afterwards Cenomanni, on the Sarte was their chief city; *Aulerci Eburovīces* inhabited the left bank of the Sequăna, (*Seine,*) below Lutetia, (*Paris.*) Their chief town was Mediolānum, afterwards Eburovīces, (*Evreux.*)

The *Aulerci Diablintes*, *Diablītæ*, et *Diaulītæ*, lived between the two last mentioned nations. Neodūnum, afterwards Diablintes, (*Jublens*,) was their largest town. These three, probably, formed but one people, and might, with more propriety, have been denominated tribes, than separate or distinct nations.

Aurunculeius, i, (Lucius A. Cotta) one of Cæsar's lieutenants in the Gallic War. He opposed the rash measure of his colleague, in wishing to leave their winter quarters, at the deceitful suggestion of Ambiŏrix, but at last yielded to the timidity of Titurius, which cost him his life. He is frequently called L. Cotta, and sometimes Cotta.

Ausci, ōrum, a people of Aquitania in Gaul. Their capital was Climberris, v. Climberrum, Augusta, and at a latter period, Auci, (*Auch*,) which stood on the west branch of the Ger, one of the southern branches of the river Garumna, (*Garonne.*)

Auxilia, ōrum, troops sent by foreign kings and states. They usually received pay and clothing from the republic, although sometimes they were supported by those who sent them.

Axŏna, æ, m. (*Aine*, or *Aisne*,) a river of Gaul, which Ausonius calls *Præceps*, from its rapidity. Its source was in the territories of the Rhemi, which form the department of the Meuse. It runs in a southwest direction, joins the Isăra, (*Iscre*,) a little below Campaigne, and both fall into the Sequăna, (*Seine*,) about five miles south of Pointoise.

B.

Bacenis, is, f. a forest of Germany, forming part of the Hercynia Silva, or *Black Forest*. Cæsar says it was of prodigious extent, (*infinītæ magnitudĭnis*,) and like a natural wall, prevented the mutual incursions of the Suēvi and Cherusci.

Bacŭlus; See Sextius.

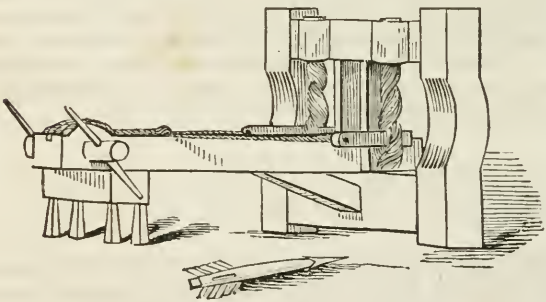
Baleăres, ium, a name anciently given to the islands of *Majorca* and *Minorca* off the coast of Spain, the inhabitants of which were celebrated for their skill in the use of the sling.

Baleăris, e, adj. of or belonging to the Balearic isles.

Balista, æ, (from the Greek βάλλω to throw,) a species of military engine used by the Romans for throwing darts, arrows, and stones. These were of different sizes, and were used with great effect both in battles and sieges. Stones of great weight were often

thrown by these engines to a great distance, by which battlements were thrown down and whole files of men swept from the deepest phalanx. Their effect is said to have been little inferior in sieges to that of artillery. The balista used for throwing darts or javelins, represented in the following wood cut, taken from Folard's commentary on Polybius, resembled in its operation an immense crossbow, the two ends of which consisted of two levers so twisted in coils of ropes as to acquire a powerful spring. The extreme ends were united by a strong rope which was drawn back by means of a windlass after the manner of a bowstring, bringing the ends of the lever back and closer together, thereby twisting the coils of ropes to their greatest tension. When thus drawn back, the javelin or dart was placed in the shaft, directed to the object aimed at, and, at the pleasure of the operator, letting go the rope, was hurled with prodigious force from the engine by the recoil of the levers.

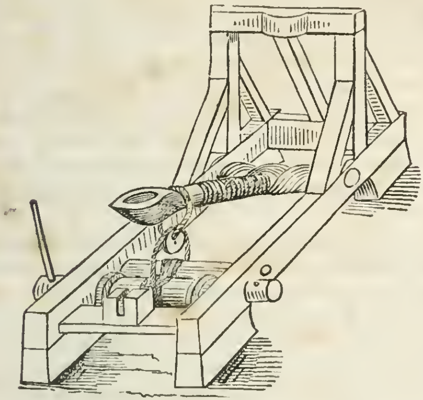
BALISTA FOR THROWING DARTS AND JAVELINS



The balista for throwing stones, (represented in the following wood cut,) consisted of a strong lever, one end of which was made fast in a twist of ropes, and the other scooped out in the form of a spoon, for containing the stone &c. to be thrown. When unbent the lever stood perpendicular. In working it, the end of the lever was brought down, by means of a windlass, to a horizontal position, by which the ropes were twisted to their greatest tension; the stone or missile was laid on in its proper place and thrown by the recoil of the lever to a great distance, often with tremendous effect. Engines of both kinds, of a larger size, were

more commonly called *Balistæ,* those of a smaller size, *Catapultæ,* which see.

BALISTA FOR THROWING STONES OR OTHER HEAVY BODIES.



Balventius, i, (Titus, i,) a man of distinguished courage, who had both his thighs pierced with a dart, in the attack which Ambiŏrix made upon the legions which he had deceitfully persuaded to leave their camp.

Basĭlus; See Minucius.

Batavia, æ, f. v. Insŭla Batavōrum, (*United Provinces,*) often called *Holland,* from its being the largest of them; a country at the mouth of the Rhine. It was denominated an island, from being bounded on two sides, by the southern and northern branches of the Rhine, and on the third by the sea. B. IV. Ch. 10.

Batăvi, ōrum, the people of Batavia, originally a branch of the Catti, a German nation.

Belgæ, ārum, a people originally of German extraction, who inhabited the third division of Gaul, which was bounded on the south by the Matrŏna, (*Marne,*) and the Sequăna, (*Seine;*) on the east and north by the Rhēnus, (*Rhine,*) and on the west by Fretum Brittannĭcum, (*English Channel.*) Strictly speaking, Fretum Brittannĭcum, v. Gallĭcum, was confined to the *Straits of Dover,* but seems generally to have had a more extended signification, and to have nearly corresponded to the modern appellation, the English Channel. Cæsar calls it Oceănus, *i. e.* Atlantĭcus, of which the

English Channel and the German Sea form only a very small part. In the division of Gaul made by Augustus, whose object was to render the different provinces more equal in point of extent, the countries of the Helvetii and Sequăni, which till that time were included in Gallia Celtĭca, were added to Gallia Belgĭca. According to Cæsar, the Belgæ were, of all the Gauls, the most warlike; and he attributes their superiority in arms to their being strangers to luxury and refinement. B. I. Ch. 1.

Belgium, i, n. is, in general, used by Cæsar to denote a part of Gallia Belgĭca, not the whole country. See Belgæ.

Bellovăci, ōrum, a numerous and powerful tribe of the Belgæ, adjoining the Bellocassi. Calēti, Ambiāni, Veromandui, and Silvanectes.

Bibracte, is, n. afterwards Augustodūnum, i, n. (*Autun*,) a town of the Ædui, upon the Arroux, one of the northern branches of the Ligĕris, (*Loire*,) towards the source of that river. At this town in the 7th year of the Gallic war a general assembly of the whole country was held, to choose a commander in chief, on whom the uncontrolled direction of all their military operations should be conferred. The Ædui, who claimed that honor, had to submit to the unanimous election of Vercingetŏrix, q. v.

Bibrax, ācis, f. (*Bievre*,) a town of the Remi on the Axŏna, (*Aisne.*)

Bibrŏci, ōrum, a British nation, inhabiting what now forms the N. W. part of Berkshire. Their chief town was Bibracte, (*Bray.*) At the time Cæsar invaded Britain, they, with the Cenomāgni, Ancalītes, and Cassii, seem to have been subject to Cassivellaunus.

Bigerriōnes, v. Bigerrōnes, ium, a people of Aquitania, who, with several other adjoining tribes, surrendered to Crassus, one of Cæsar's lieutenants. Their territory was bounded on the south by the Pyrenees, and was nearly at equal distances from the Mediterranean and the Bay of Biscay.

Bison, ontis, v. ōnis, m. a buffalo, a kind of wild ox, of which Cæsar has given the best description to be found in the writings of the ancients, (B. G. VI. 25.) The natural history of this animal is unknown.

Biturĭges, um, a nation of Gallia Celtĭca, on the west side of the river Ligĕris, (*Loire.*) Their chief city, Avarĭcum, was afterwards called by the name of its inhabitants, (now *Bourges.*)

Boduognātus, i, the commander of the Nervii, at the time they attacked the Roman army under Cæsar.

Boii, ōrum, a people of Gallia Celtĭca, who came originally from beyond the Rhine and settled in the country south and west of the Ædui on the banks of the Liger and Elăver,—a territory originally belonging to the Ædui, but which they gave up to the Boii with the consent of Cæsar; B. I. Ch. 28. There were several tribes of the Boii, who lived in different parts of Gaul and Germany. In the latter country their name is still recognized in the districts, *Bavaria*, and *Bohemia*, in the German language, *Boierheim, i. e.* the residence of the Boii.

Bratuspantium, i, n. a town of the Bellovăci. It is supposed to have stood between Cæsaromagnus, afterwards Belvăcus, or Belvăcum, (*Beauvais*,) and Samarobrīva, (*Amiens*.) This town is not mentioned by any writer after the commencement of the Christian Æra.

Britannia, æ, f. *Britain*, or *Great Britain*, (anciently called Albion,) is the largest island in Mare Atlantĭcum, (*Atlantic Ocean*,) belonging to Eurōpa, (*Europe*.) That part of the Atlantic which separates Britain from France, was called Fretum Britannĭcum, (strictly speaking, *Strait of Dover*,) but its signification seems often to have been more extensive, and to have corresponded nearly with the modern appellation, English Channel. Oceănus Verginius, (*St. George's Channel*,) lies between Britain and Hibernia, (*Ireland*.) On the west, Oceănus Calydonĭcus, (*Scottish Sea*,) washed the west and northwest parts of Scotland, Oceănus Hyperboreus, (*Northern Sea*,) the northern coast, and Oceănus Germanĭcus, (the *German Ocean*,—which is more properly called a sea,)—formed its boundary on the east. Cæsar's account, both of the form and extent of this island, is not very far from the truth. But of the characters, manners and customs, of the Britons, a very general description only is to be found in the writings of the ancients. Little was known, to the Romans, of this island until the invasion of Cæsar. This commander endeavored, although ineffectually, to reduce it. After a long interval, Ostorius, in the reign of Claudius, subjugated the southern part; and Agricŏla, subsequently, in the reign of Domitian, extended the Roman dominion to the Frith of Forth and Clyde. The whole force of the empire, although exerted to the utmost under Severus, could not, however, reduce to subjection the hardy natives of the highlands. Britain continued a Roman province, until A. D. 426, when the troops were in a great measure withdrawn, to assist Valentinian III. against the Huns, and never returned. The Britons had become so enervated under the Roman yoke, as to be unable to repel

the incursions of the inhabitants of the north. They invoked, therefore, the aid of the Saxons, by whom they were themselves subjugated, and compelled at last to take refuge among the mountains of Wales.

Britanni, ōrum, (sing. Britannus, i,) et Britŏnes, v. Brittŏnes, um, (sing. Britto, ŏnis, v. ōnis,) the people of Britannia.

Britannus, et, Britannĭcus, a um, adj. of, or belonging to Britain.

Brutus, i, (Decĭmus, i,) one of Cæsar's officers, to whom he gave the command of his fleet in the Gallic war, with which he defeated the Venetians, (B. G. III. 15,) and afterwards the people of Marseilles, in two engagements during the civil war.

C.

CÆRÆSI, ōrum, a nation of Gallia Belgĭca, who, with the Condrūsi, Eburōnes, and Pæmāni, went under the general appellation of Germans, and were supposed to send 40,000 men to the Belgic army, which was raised against the Roman dominion in Gaul, (B. G. II. 4.) Their country was situated between that of the Trevĭri and the river Mosa, (*Meuse.*)

Cæsar, ăris, (Caius Julius,) the first distinguished character of the Cæsars, was the son of Caius Cæsar and Aurelia the daughter of Cotta. He was born in the sixth consulship of Marius, 99 years B. C. He lost his father in the 16th year of his age, and the following year obtained the office of Flamen Diālis, (*High Priest of Jupiter.*) He procured many friends by his eloquence, and after passing through the different offices of Quæstor, Edile, High Priest, (*Pontĭfex Maxĭmus,*) &c., he was sent as governor into Spain, and upon his return, being elected Consul, he entered into an agreement with Pompey and Crassus, that nothing should be done in the state without their joint concurrence. This was called the First Triumvirate, and was in fact a conspiracy against the liberties of Rome.

Previous to the expiration of his consulship, he obtained from the people the province of Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum, with three legions for five years; and the Senate, at the desire of Cæsar, added Transalpine Gaul and another legion. These legions were gradually increased to thirteen.

Cæsar set out for Transalpine Gaul in the end of March, B. C. 57, in the 42d year of his age. With wonderful conduct and

bravery he subdued this country in about ten years, and carried the terror of his arms into Germany and Britain, till then un known to the Romans. The account of these wars is given by Cæsar himself, in his Commentaries on the Gallic war, in seven books. These Commentaries, or Journals, were composed on the spot where his battles were fought. The purity and neatness of his style, notwithstanding the rapidity with which they must have been written, have not been surpassed by any Roman writer. His narrative is perspicuous, simple, and natural. It is at once chaste and animated. His lucid and picturesque description places the whole scene distinctly before the reader, who accompanies him in all his marches, and is a witness of every engagement. No passage occurs in all his writings, which the most illiterate do not understand, and the most polished do not approve. To compose a simple narrative of his campaigns, for the amusement of himself and his friends, seems rather to have been his object, than to give a specimen of his talents as a profound historian, or deep politician. Hence, it were absurd to expect in the Commentaries, a finished history. They are mere outlines, which he perhaps entertained the hope of seeing filled up, either by himself, or by some other hand.

These Commentaries in seven books, and three books concerning the civil war, are the only genuine writings of Cæsar which now remain. Of the character of Cæsar as a general and historian, Dunlop, in his History of Roman Literature, Vol. II. p. 171, &c., speaks thus:

"Though the Commentaries on the Gallic War comprehend but a small extent of time, and are not the general history of a nation, they embrace events of the highest importance, and detail, perhaps, the greatest military operations to be found in ancient story. We see in them all that is great and consummate in the art of war. The ablest commander of the most warlike people on earth records the history of his own campaigns. Placed at the head of the finest army ever formed in the world, and one devoted to his fortunes, but opposed by prowess only second to their own, he and the soldiers he commanded, may be praised almost in the words in which Nestor praised the heroes who had gone before him; for the Gauls and Germans were among the bravest and most warlike nations then on earth. In his clear and scientific details of military operations, Cæsar is reckoned superior to every one, except, perhaps, Polybius. In general, too, when he speaks of himself, it is without affectation or arrogance. He talks

of Cæsar as of an indifferent person, and always maintains the character which he has thus assumed; indeed, it can hardly be conceived that he had so small a share in the great actions he describes, as would appear from his own representations. With the exception of the false colors with which he disguises his ambitious projects against the liberties of his country, every thing seems to be told with fidelity and candor."

Respecting the future history of this illustrious man the following notices may here suffice. After the conquest of Gaul, Pompey, having become jealous of Cæsar's power, induced the Senate to order him to lay down his command; upon which Cæsar crossed the Rubicon, the boundary of his province, and led his army to Rome, Pompey and all the friends of liberty fleeing before him. Having subdued Italy in sixty days, Cæsar entered Rome, and seized upon the money in the public treasury. He then went to Spain, where he conquered the partizans of Pompey, and at his return was created Dictator, and soon after Consul. Leaving Rome and going in search of Pompey, the two hostile generals engaged on the plains of Pharsalia. The army of Cæsar amounted to 22,000 men, while that of Pompey amounted to 45,000; but the superior generalship of Cæsar prevailed, and he was victorious. Making a generous use of his victory, Cæsar followed Pompey into Egypt, where he heard of his murder, and making the country tributary to his power, he hastened to suppress the remainder of Pompey's party in Africa and Spain. Thus triumphing over all his enemies, he was created perpetual Dictator, received the names of *Imperātor* and *Pater Patriæ*, and governed the people with justice. The consequence, however, of his engrossing all the powers of the state and ruling with absolute authority, engendered a spirit of opposition and general disgust; a conspiracy was formed against him by more than sixty senators, the chief of whom were Brutus and Cassius. Accordingly, on the 15th of March, 44 years B. C., and in the 56th year of his age, on his entrance into the Senate house, he was stabbed, and fell, pierced with twenty-three wounds, at the foot of Pompey's statue.

Of Cæsar's intrepidity as a soldier, and abilities as a commander, the armies which he defeated and the countries which he conquered are sufficient proofs. To the talents of a consummate general he added those of an elegant historian and a persuasive orator. He spoke with the same spirit with which he fought.

and had he devoted himself to the bar, he would have been the only man capable of rivalling Cicero.

Calētes, ium, v. Calēti, ōrum, a people of Gaul, whose country lay a little to the north of the mouth of the Sequăna, (*Seine.*)

Cantăbri, ōrum, (sing. Cantăber, ri,) a very brave and warlike people, who inhabited the northern part of Spain. They seem to have extended from the mouths of Ibērus, (*Ebro,*) to the shores of the Bay of Biscay, which was, from them, called *Oceănus Cantabrĭcus.* The term is often used to denote the Spaniards in general.

Cantium, i, n. (*Kent,*) a district of England which, in modern times, is bounded by the Strait of Dover, (Fretum Gallĭcum, vel, Britannĭcum) on the east, by Sussex on the south, on the west by Surry, and on the north by the Thames, (*Tamesis,*) which separates it from Essex. But the ancient boundaries of Kent are not precisely ascertained.

Carcăso, ōnis, f. *Carcasonne*, a town of that part of Provincia, now called Languedoc, on the river Atax, (*Aude.*) Here are preserved some records of the place, written upon the bark of trees.

Carfulēnus, i, an officer of Cæsar, who was dispatched to attack the highest part of the camp of the Alexandrians, which he carried. He was afterwards killed in an engagement at Mutĭna, fighting against Anthony.

Carnūtes, um, v. ti, ōrum, a powerful nation of Gaul, between the rivers Sequăna, (*Seine,*) and Ligĕris, (*Loire,*) south of Lutetia, (*Paris.*)

Carvilius, i, one of the four kings of Cantium, (*Kent,*) who, at the command of Cassivelaunus, made an attack on Cæsar's naval camp, in which they were repulsed, and lost a great number of men.

Cassi, ōrum, *the hundred of Caishow*, a British nation, supposed to be subject to Cassivelaunus at the time Cæsar invaded Britain, who submitted to that conqueror.

Cassius, i, (Lucius, i,) a Roman consul, who was killed by the Helvetii, who defeated his army and obliged it to pass under the yoke.

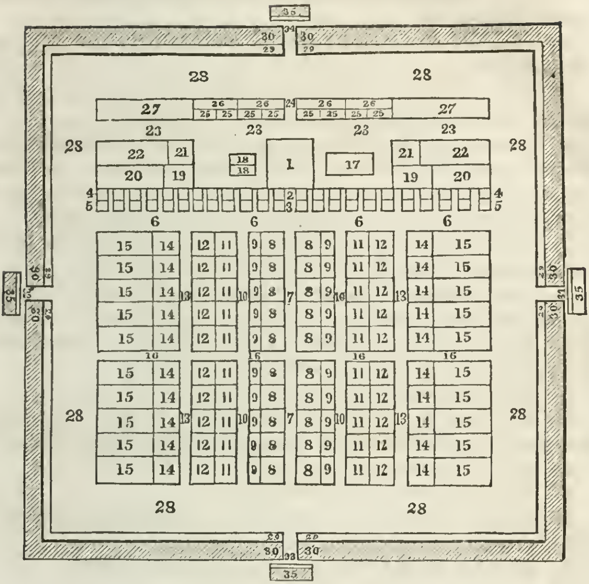
Cassivellaunus, i, one of the British kings, whose territories lay on the north bank of the Tamĕsis, (*Thames,*) towards the mouth of that river. On the arrival of the Roman forces in Britain under Cæsar, he was, by common consent, appointed Commander-in-chief. After making some attempts to check the progress of the

enemy, he was obliged to submit, and accept of such terms as Cæsar chose to offer.

Castĭcus, i, one of the Sequăni, the son of Catamantalēdis, whom Orgetŏrix persuaded to seize on the sovereignty of the state, which his father had formerly held.

Castra, ōrum, a camp. The discipline of the Romans was chiefly conspicuous in their marches and encampments. They never passed a night, even in the longest marches, without pitching a camp, and fortifying it with a rampart and ditch. The form of the Roman camp, till later ages, was square, and was always of the same figure. It was surrounded by a ditch, usually nine feet deep, and twelve feet broad, and by a rampart or *vallum*, composed of the earth dug from the ditch, and having sharp stakes stuck into it. The camp had four gates, one on each side. They were called *porta* PRÆTORIA, next the enemy; DECUMANA, opposite to the former; *porta* PRINCIPALIS DEXTRA, on the right side of the camp, at one end of the main street called PRINCIPIA; and PRINCIPALIS SINISTRA, on the left side, at the other end. The camp was divided into two parts, called the upper and lower, by the main street just mentioned. In the lower part the troops were disposed in the following order. The cavalry were in the middle; on both sides of them were the *triarii*, *princĭpes*, and *hastāti*, or the third, second, and first Roman ranks; and next to these, on both sides, were the cavalry and foot of the allies, who were always posted in separate places, lest they should form any plots by being united. The *velĭtes* commonly occupied the empty space between the ramparts and tents, which was 200 feet broad. The tents were covered with leather or skins, extended by means of ropes. In each tent were usually ten soldiers, with their *decanus* or petty officer who commanded them. The different divisions of the troops were separated by intervals called VIÆ. Of these there were five longwise, *i. e.* running from the *decuman* towards the *prætorian* side; and three across, one in the lower part of the camp, called *quintāna*, and two in the upper, namely, the *principia*, and another between the *prætorium* and the prætorian gate. The following wood cut and illustration will give a good idea of its shape and arrangements.

GROUND PLAN OF THE ROMAN CAMP.



1. The *Prætorium*, or general's tent, with a sufficient space around for the tents of his suite.

2. Ground behind the tents of the *Tribunes*, for their horses, baggage, &c.

3. The tents of the *Tribunes*.

4. Ground behind the tents of the *Præfects of the Allies*, for their horses, baggage, &c.

5. The tents of the *Præfects of the Allies*.

6. A cross street, one hundred feet wide, called *Principia* (*Vid.* PRINCIPIA.)

7. A cross street, fifty feet wide, on both sides of which were the tents of the *Roman horse*.

8. The *Horse* of two Roman legions, in ten turmæ or troops each.

9. The *Triarii* of two Roman legions (*Vid.* TRIARII), in ten maniples each, facing on two different streets.

10. Two streets, each fifty feet wide, between the *Triarii* and *Princĭpes* of two legions.

11. The *Princĭpes* of two Roman legions (*Vid.* PRINCIPES), in ten maniples each.

12. The *Hastāti* of two Roman legions (*Vid.* HASTATI), in ten maniples each.

13. Two streets, each fifty feet wide, between the *Hastāti* of the two Roman legions and the Horse of the Allies.

14. The *Horse of the Allies*, wanting the *Extraordinarii* (*Vid.* No. 25), and placed in two different parts of the camp. The forces of the allies, both cavalry and infantry, were always separated in this manner, to prevent plotting, as remarked above.

15. The *Infantry of the Allies*, wanting the Extraordinarii, and, like the horse, placed in two different parts of the camp.

16. The *Quintāna* (scil. *via*), a street fifty feet wide, running across the camp, between the fifth and sixth maniples of each line. Hence, as it comes after the fifth maniple, reckoned from the *Principia*, it received the name of *Quintāna*.

17. The *Quæstorium*, or Quæstor's tent.

18. The tents of the *Legāti*. The space in front of these and the *Quæstorium* was called the *Forum*, where things were sold, &c.

19. *Evocāti Equĭtes*, or Veteran Horse. (*Vid.* EVOCATI.)

20. *Evocāti Pedĭtes*, or Veteran Foot.

21. *Ablecti Equĭtes* (*Vid.* No. 25), or Horse of the Consular life-guards.

22. *Ablecti Pedĭtes*, or foot of the Consular life-guards.

23. A cross street one hundred feet wide.

24. A street fifty feet wide.

25. *Extraordinarii Equĭtes*. A third part of the allied horse, and a fifth part of the allied foot, were selected, and posted near the consul, under the name of *Extraordinarii*, and one troop of horse, and maniple of foot, called ABLECTI, or *Selecti*, to serve as his life-guard.

26. *Extraordinarii Pedĭtes*.

27. Quarters for strangers coming to the camp.

28. A space two hundred feet broad, between the outermost tents and the rampart.

29. Rampart, or *Vallum*.

30. Ditch, usually nine feet deep and twelve feet broad.

31. *Porta Principālis Dextra*.

32. *Porta Principālis Sinistra*.

33. *Porta Decumāna* (i. e. *Decimāna*, from *decem*, ten,) so called because all the *tens* of the maniples end here.

34. *Porta Prætoria.*

35. A traverse breastwork, with a ditch, opposite to, and protecting, each of the gates. (*Anthon's Cæsar.*)

Catapulta, a military engine for discharging stones, arrows, and other missiles. (*Vid.* BALISTA.)

Catamantalēdes, is, a nobleman of the nation of the Sequăni, who, for many years, enjoyed the supreme authority over that people.

Catįvolcus, i, a nobleman of the nation of the Eburōnes. He and Ambiŏrix, at the instigation of Indutiomārus, excited the people to take up arms against the Romans. Having made an unsuccessful attack upon the Roman camp under the lieutenants, Titurius Sabīnus, and L. Aurunculēius Cotta, they demanded a conference. in which Ambiŏrix stated, that from gratitude to Cæsar, he considered himself bound to inform his lieutenant, that all the states of Gaul had agreed to attack the Roman camp in one day, that a great body of Germans had passed the Rhine. and that no time was to be lost in joining Cicĕro or Labiēnus, neither of whom were fifty miles distant. At the same time, he gave his solemn promise, that they should have a secure retreat through his territories. This artifice, through the folly or cowardice of Sabīnus, succeeded. They left their camp, were attacked by a powerful army under Ambiŏrix and Cativolcus, and were almost to a man cut in pieces. Cæsar afterwards completely routed them; and Cativolcus, from his great age, being unable to bear the fatigues of war, poisoned himself by drinking the juice of the yew-tree.

Caturĭges, gum, a people of Gaul, who lived near the Alpes Maritĭmæ, at the S. E. extremity of Dauphiné.

Cavarīnus, i, a nobleman whom Cæsar, in prejudice of his brother Moritasgus, the reigning sovereign, appointed king over his countrymen, the Senŏnes, an honor which his ancestors had long enjoyed. The Senŏnes formed the design of publicly assassinating him, but having received intelligence of the plot, he saved his life by fleeing to the camp of Cæsar.

Celtæ, ārum, the most powerful and numerous of all the nations of Gaul, who occupied nearly one-half of the country, and from whom that division was called *Celtĭca*. Their territories were bounded by the river Garumna, (*Garonne*,) on the south; the Sequăna, (*Seine*,) and the Matrŏna, (*Marne*,) on the north; by Mount Jura on the east; and Mare Atlantĭcum, (*Atlantic Ocean*,) on the west.

Cenimagni, ōrum, an ancient people of Britain, who, with the Segontiăci, Ancalītes, Bibrŏci, and Cassi, followed the example of the Trinobantes, and submitted to Cæsar. These nations are supposed to have inhabited the counties of *Essex, Middlesex, Norfolk, Hertford, Buckingham, Oxford.* and *Berkshire.*

Censor, is, a Censor, a Roman magistrate whose number from first to last was uniformly two. They were appointed (A. U. 312,) to take an account of the number of the people, and the value of their fortunes, and superintend the public morals. They were chosen from the most reputable persons of consular rank, at first only from the patricians but afterwards likewise from the plebians. They were chosen every five years, but continued in office only a year and a half. For any dishonorable action they had the power to erase the name of a Senator from the list, deprive an eques of his horse and ring, and any other citizen they could degrade and deprive of all the privileges of a Roman citizen, except liberty.

The title of Censor was even more honorable than that of Consul, though attended with less power. No one could be elected a second time, and those who filled it were remarkable for leading an irreproachable life; so that to be descended from a censorian family was considered a distinguished ornament of nobility.

Census, ūs, m. was a general review of the people, estimating their estates, and proportioning their share of the public taxes. Every man was obliged to give in to the Censors his own name, residence and occupation, his wife's name, and the names of his children with their ages, the number of his slaves, and a minute and accurate account of his property. The goods of the person, who made a false return, were confiscated, and he himself, after being scourged, was sold for a slave. By that act he had, in the opinion of the state, deemed himself unworthy of the privileges and honors of a Roman citizen. Servius Tullius, the 6th king of Rome, appointed the Census, in order to ascertain the number of men able to bear arms, and the amount of the whole wealth possessed by the citizens, and consequently what sums could be levied from them. It was held in the Campus Martius, where the Censors, seated in curule chairs, attended by their clerks and public officers, commanded the citizens to be called before them, each in his own tribe. If nothing immoral or improper could be charged against a senator or knight, they passed without remark; but if otherwise, the senators were expelled the senate, and the public horse taken from the knight. The other citizens were raised to a higher tribe, if their wealth had increased. or sunk to a lower

tribe, if diminished; improper conduct deprived them of their right of voting, or subjected them to be taxed like strangers. A minute register of the whole was kept, and must have been of great advantage to the whole community, as determining with precision not only their number, but also their wealth. It ought to have been held at the end of every five years; but it is manifest from Roman history, that this period was not pointedly observed. At the end of this survey of the people they were ordered to attend a lustration, called, from sacrificing a sow, a sheep, and a bull, Suŏvetaurilia. The precedency at this sacrifice was decided by lot, and he on whom the lot fell was at the conclusion said "lustrum condere."

Centurio, ōnis, f, (from *centum*, a hundred,) a centurion or commander of a *hundred* men. The constitution of the Roman legion admitted of a gradation from the lowest centurion of the Hastāti, up to the first of the Triarii, who was called Primipīlus, q. v. To the first captaincy, the meanest common soldier might aspire. Promotion in the Roman army could be obtained only by merit; appointments by purchase were unknown. This wise regulation produced the happiest effects. Besides each cohort having six centurions, and consequently each legion sixty, opened a wide field for promotion, and suggested numerous excitements to valor and heroism.

Centrōnes, um (B. G. I. 5,) a nation of Gaul in the Alpes Graiæ, who, along with the Garocĕli and Caturĭges, were defeated by Cæsar in several engagements. There was another tribe, or horde, of this name, who were subject to the Nervii, a nation of Gallia Belgĭca, (B. G. Ch. V. 38.)

Cherusci, ōrum, m. a nation of Germany, between the rivers Albis, (*Elbe*,) and the Visurgis, (*Weser*.)

Cicĕro, ōnis, (Quintus Tullius,) the brother of Marcus Tullius Cicĕro, the celebrated orator, was, after the expiration of his prætorship, proconsul of Asia for three years. He gained considerable reputation as one of Cæsar's lieutenants in Gaul. At the commencement of the civil war, he, in opposition to the advice of his brother, attached himself to Pompey. After Cæsar had defeated the republicans at Pharsalia, both Quintus and his son solicited the favor of the conqueror, by unjustly imputing their misconduct to the orator. So far was Cicero from resenting this injustice, that he used his utmost efforts for their safety and interest. Both perished in the proscription of the second triumvirate.

Cimberius, i, the brother of Nasua, who headed the 100 cantons of the Suēvi, who had left their native country, and encamped on the banks of the river Rhenus, (*Rhine.*) with the view of crossing that river, and settling in Gaul.

Cimbri, ōrum, (sing. Cimber, ri,) a German nation, supposed to be descended from the Asiatic Cimmerians, whose country was, from them, called the Chersonēsus Cimbrĭca, (*Jutland,*) which now forms part of the kingdom of Denmark. About 113, B, C. the Cimbri, leaving their territories, which were both narrow and barren, and being joined by the Teutŏnes, a neighboring people, defeated several German nations, and a Roman consul with his army, who had been sent against them. They invaded, and seem to have overrun, a great part of Gaul; and being strengthened by the accession of many of the tribes who inhabited that country, marched against Rome. After slaughtering the whole army of Cæpio and Mallius, except ten men and two generals, C. Marius marched against them, slew 120,000 and took 60,000 prisoners. Though only an inconsiderable people in the days of Tacĭtus, it is manifest, that the sagacity of that profound historian was apprehensive of the final destruction of the Roman state by the hordes of Germany, which actually happened about 300 years after his death.

Cingetŏrix, ĭgis, a nobleman who headed that party in the state of the Trevĭri, which was formerly attached to Cæsar. In consequence of his fidelity to the Romans, he was, by means of his father-in-law, Indutiomārus, declared a public enemy, and his estate confiscated.

Cingetŏrix, ĭgis, one of the four kings of Cantium, (*Kent,*) who, by order of Cassivellaunus, made an attack on Cæsar's naval camp.

Clepsydra, æ, f. an instrument contrived to measure time by water. The merit of this invention belongs to the Egyptians, as well as the discovery of the sun-dial.

There were different kinds of Clepsydræ among the ancients; which, however, were all constructed on this principle, that the water ran through a narrow passage from one vessel to another, and that on the surface of the water in the lower vessel, to the side of which a scale of hours was affixed, floated a piece of cork, which shewed the hour. It is manifest the water would be discharged with a rapidity proportioned to the quantity, and that, of course, it ran fastest when the vessel was full, and gradually became slower as the less water remained. Hence if the upper vessel discharged its water in twelve hours, and the under one

was an exact cylinder having its height divided into 144 equal parts, the water in the first hour would rise twenty-three of these parts, in the second hour, twenty-one, in the third, nineteen, &c., and the last or twelfth hour only one part. The state of the atmosphere would have considerable influence on the clepsydra, a defect which the ingenuity of a modern French philosopher, William Amontons has completely remedied. By means of several important inventions he also freed it from other less inconveniences to which it was subject; and rendered it a very accurate divisor of time.

Cocosātes, um, a people of Aquitania in Gaul, whose country lay along the coast of Oceănus Cantabrĭcus, (*Bay of Biscay.*) to the north of the territories of the Tarbelli. Their chief town was Cocŏsa.

Clypeus, i. a round shield of a smaller size than the *Scutum*, which see.

Cohors, tis, a division of the Roman legion. See *Legio.*

Commius, i, one of the nation of the Atrebātes, hence called Commius Atrĕbas. whom Cæsar appointed king over that people in return for his important services. He afterwards fell under the suspicion of Labiēnus, who employed C. Volusēnus Quadrātus to kill him in an interview. This perfidious design did not succeed. But in the scuffle, Commius was wounded in the head. He was, from that period, a violent enemy to the Romans. Being at last defeated, he was obliged to submit to Antony, which he did, on condition that he should not appear before any Roman. On these terms, Antony granted him peace.

Condrūsi, ōrum, a people of Belgic Gaul, who lived on the river Mosa, (*Mæse.* or *Meuse,*) north of Silva Arduenna.

Considius Longus, (Caius, i,) a partisan of Pompey, who was at one time the governor of Adrumētum. He committed several acts of enormous cruelty. Considius afterwards commanded at Tisdra a garrison of Gætulians, and, on hearing of the defeat of his party, fled from that town with his treasures. Escaping from these barbarians and taking the road for Numidia, he was pursued by them, and to obtain possession of his money, they put him to death.

Consul, ŭlis, a consul; the official title of the two chief magistrates of the Roman state. They were first created after the expulsion of the kings, A. U. 244. They had the same badges as the kings, except the crown, and nearly the same power. In time of war they had supreme command; one accompanied the army as com-

mander-in-chief, and the other remained at Rome; or, if necessary, commanded another army, leaving the government in charge of the Prætor. They levied soldiers, appointed the greater part of the officers, and provided what was necessary for their support.

When any dangerous conjuncture arose, the consuls were armed with absolute power by the Senate, which solemnly decreed that they should take care that the republic received no harm. If any serious tumult or sedition occurred, they called the citizens to arms by proclaiming "Let those who wish to save the republic follow me;" and this was usually sufficient to check it.

The authority of the consuls was first impaired by the creation of Tribunes of the people, and afterwards by the Emperors. The office however was retained, and the consuls, after their power was gone, were still employed in consulting the Senate, administering justice, managing the public games and the like; and the year was usually characterized by their names.

At first the consuls were chosen from the Patricians only, but afterwards from the Plebians also. They were elected annually, and to be a candidate it was necessary to be forty-three years of age,—to have gone through the inferior offices of *Quæstor*, *Ædile*, and *Prætor*,—and to be present in a private station.

Proconsul, ŭlis, a proconsul, a person invested with consular authority for the government of a conquered country. The consuls, at the expiration of their offices, were generally appointed proconsuls, and soon after quitted the city to take charge of their province. Their powers, though subject to the will of the senate and authority of the people, were very extensive. They had the appointment of the taxes and of the contributions imposed on the country, and it cannot be denied, that avarice and rapacity too often trampled on the principles of justice and humanity. To the honor of the Senate it must be mentioned, that they frequently punished acts both of extortion and cruelty. These crimes, however, were generally very flagrant before they became the subject of prosecution.

Proconsulāris, is, e, of or belonging to a proconsul, or the proconsulship, proconsular.

Consulāris, e, adj. of or belonging to a consul; consular; one who had been a consul; a man of consular rank.

Cotta, æ, (Lucius Aurunculēius,) a lieutenant in Cæsar's army, who suspected the stratagem of Ambiŏrix, and therefore endeavored to convince his colleague Sabīnus of the impropriety of following the treacherous advice of that crafty Gaul, but without

effect. Unwilling that any enmity, from difference of opinion, should exist between them, he at last yielded, and his compliance cost him his life. Ambiŏrix, at the distance of two miles from the camp, lay in ambuscade, and when crossing a large valley, made a furious attack on the Roman forces, in which Cotta, after displaying singular bravery, was killed, and almost the whole of the two legions.

Crassus, i, (Marcus Licinius,) surnamed *Dives*, on account of his prodigious wealtb, was, in early life, very poor, but by trafficking in slaves, and by other dishonorable practices, soon acquired great riches. To escape the cruelties of Cinna, he fled to Spain, where he had formerly passed some years with his father, when governor of that country; and remained eight months concealed in a cave. On hearing of Cinna's death, he raised 2.500 men, for whom he procured shipping, sailed to Africa, and attached himself to Metellus Pius. The friendship of Crassus with Metellus was not of long continuance. He then formed an alliance with Sulla, and was of great service to him in the civil war. The military talents of Crassus were greatly inferior to those of Pompey, who, on that account, necessarily stood higher in the favor of Sulla. Hence the enmity of these two powerful citizens, which all the address and eloquence of Cæsar could scarcely subdue. The great object of Crassus seems to have been the accumulation of wealth. Besides buying the estates of the proscribed, he had recourse to other base and scandalous means in order to increase his overgrown fortune.

Crassus was not however, destitute of bravery or generosity. He was honored with an ovation for putting an end to the war with Spartăcus by a decisive engagement, in which 12,000 of the slaves were killed. He used frequently to lend money to his friends without interest. After entertaining the populace at 10,000 tables, giving to every citizen corn to support him for three months, and consecrating the tenth part of his property to Hercŭles, he was worth 7,100 talents. He used to say that no man, who could not maintain an army ought to be called rich. His slaves whom he had ingenuity enough to employ so profitably that they not only defrayed their own expenses, but added greatly to the wealth of their master, were, in number, equal to an army.

A reconciliation between Crassus and Pompey was, at last, effected by Cæsar. The iniquitous combination of these three men to destroy the liberties of their fellow-citizens, was called the first triumvirate. Less solicitous for honor than riches, Crassus,

in this division of the empire, chose Syria for his province, in expectation of making large additions to his fortune. Without the authority of the senate, he crossed the Euphrates and advanced against that country. But he was deceived by Agbārus, an Arabian, defeated by the Parthians, and his army nearly annihilated. He then fled with a small number of his soldiers to Carræ, a town of Mesopotamia, and was prevailed on to meet Surēna, on pretence of negotiating a peace, where he was treacherously put to death. The Parthians cut off his head, and, in contempt of his avarice, poured melted gold into his mouth. The bond of union between Pompey and Cæsar, which had been greatly weakened by the death of Julia, was finally dissolved by that of Crassus. They had now recourse to arms, and their struggles for the superiority terminated in the final extinction of Roman liberty.

Cretenses, ium, the inhabitants of Creta, æ, vel, Crete, es, f. a large island in the Mediterranean Sea, opposite to Mare Ægeum, (*Archipelago.*) From its principal city, it is now called *Candia.* Cres, Cretis, m. et Cressa, æ, f. a native of Crete or Candia. Cretis, ĭdis, of Crete or Candia, with relation to a female, or to a noun feminine.

Curiosolītæ, ārum, and Curiosolītes, um, a people of Gallia Celtĭca, among Armorĭcas Civitātes, whose country was afterwards called *Bretagne.*

D.

Daci, ōrum, the inhabitants of Dacia a country corresponding to the modern Wallachia, Transylvania, Moldavia, and that part of Hungary which lies to the east of the Tibiscus or *Teiss;* B. VI. Ch. 25.

Danubius, i, the *Danube,* the largest river in Europe, rises in the black forest in Germany, (according to Strabo and Pliny, in the mountain Abnŏba,) runs in an easterly direction, through Austria, Germany, Hungary, part of Turkey in Europe, and discharges itself into Pontus Euxīnus, (the *Black Sea.*) The ancients gave the name of Ister to the eastern part of this river, after its junction with the Savus, (*Save.*) Though of great breadth and depth in many places, it is not generally navigable on account of the cataracts. Strabo, Diodōrus Sicŭlus, Tacĭtus, and Pliny, have given descriptions of this river in many respects different, and all

exceedingly inaccurate. With the whole course of the Danube the Greeks and Romans were very imperfectly acquainted. Their knowledge of the countries to the north of this large river, was almost wholly obtained by vague report from unlettered barbarians, and, of course, very incorrect.

In the decline of the Roman empire, it became better known to that people, in consequence of almost all the barbarous nations, who assailed that state, commencing hostilities by ravaging the country on the banks of the Danube. But learning had sunk with the state, and no minute or accurate account of this river is found in classic authors.

Decumāna (*porta*), the rear gate of the Roman camp, (See *Castra*) so called because the tens of the maniples were stationed there.

Decurio, ōnis, m. (from *decem*, ten,) an officer of the cavalry among the Romans, who commanded ten men. Each *Turma*, or troop of horse, had three Decuriōnes, and each Decurio chose a subaltern, who was, on that account, called *Optio*.

Delectus, ûs, (from *delĭgo*, to choose,) a military term to denote the levying or enrolment of soldiers. The consuls, after they entered on their office, appointed a day, on which all who were of the military age (from 17 to 46,) should be present in the capitol. On the day appointed, the consuls seated in their curule chairs, assisted by the military or legionary tribunes, held a levy, unless hindered by the tribunes of the commons. It was determined by lot in what order the tribes should be called. The consuls ordered such as they pleased to be cited out of each tribe; and every one was obliged to answer to his name under a severe penalty. They were careful to choose those first who had what were thought lucky names; as, *Valerius*, *Sabīnus*, *Statorius*, &c. Their names were written down on tables, hence, *Scribĕre milĭtes*, to enlist, to levy, or to raise soldiers.

Diablintes, ium, et Diablītæ, et Dianlītæ, ārum, a people of Gallia Celtĭca, on the river Meduāna, (*Māine.*) Their chief town was Neodūnum, afterwards Diablintes, now *Jublens.*

Dictātor, ōris, m. a Dictator, an extraordinary Magistrate at Rome, who possessed absolute authority over not only the lives and fortunes of his fellow citizens, but even over the laws themselves. A free government could admit of such an officer being appointed only on important and alarming conjunctures. We find from Roman history that the first Dictator was chosen during the wars with the Latins, (499 B. C.) and that his appointment was a consequence of the plebeians refusing to enlist, and of the consuls

being unable to protect the state. Unless when threatened with imminent danger, either from domestic sedition or foreign wars, the consuls held the highest office, and the laws set bounds to their powers; but the Dictator knew no restriction. Twenty-four Lictors preceded him, and, whilst he remained in office, the functions of the other magistrates, with the exception of that of Tribunes of the people, were suspended. He proclaimed war, levied forces, and marched against the enemy; or made peace or disbanded them whenever he pleased. Execution followed his decision, and from his judgment lay no appeal. At the expiration of his office, which could not exceed six months, he might be called to an account for his conduct; but few instances of it occur in the annals of Rome. Bravery does not extirpate credulity, nor does greatness of mind obliterate the fictions of ignorance. Though a nation of intrepid warriors, the Romans were credulous and superstitious. Hence to avert a plague, to remove some dreadful calamity, or to stop the progress of an invading enemy, they sometimes named a Dictator to drive a nail into the temple of Jupiter, which trivial and absurd ceremony they thought possessed these virtues. They sometimes too appointed a Dictator to hold the comitia, or to celebrate public festivals, and once to choose Senators. But for these purposes, except on particular occasions, the state had seldom recourse to the election of that magistrate.

Dies, ei, m. & f. a day, or that space of time which elapses from the first appearance of light in the morning, till the return of darkness at night. It is more generally used to denote the time the sun is visible, or above the horizon, which strictly speaking constitutes a solar day. The term has frequently a more extended signification, and includes the night. This forms the Astronomical day, and has also been called the Natural or Civil day. It exceeds the Siderial day, or a complete revolution of the earth on its axis, by three minutes and fifty-six seconds. Different nations begin the day at different times. Among the Romans the natural day began when the sun first appeared above the horizon, which was called the first hour, and ended with that luminary disappearing, which was the twelfth hour. This mode of dividing that space of time during which the sun is visible into twelve parts, though still followed in Turkey, must have been attended with great inconvenience. The hours thus varied with the length of the day and those of the night were subject to the same alteration. Besides, the hours of these two portions of time could be equal only twice a year, viz: at the Equinoxes, (See Hora.) The civil day

began at midnight, when the third watch commenced. With us, and most of the nations of Europe, the day is reckoned from midnight to midnight. The Jews began their day at sun-setting, and like the Romans divided it into twelve hours; and the night with them also consisted of twelve hours. It may not be improper to observe that astronomers generally compute from noon to noon, reckoning in a numeral succession from one to twenty-four hours, and not by two twelves agreeably to common usage.

Dis, ītis, the god of riches, Pluto.

Divĭco, ōnis, a nobleman of great influence among the Helvetii, who commanded the army in the war against Cassius, and was at the head of the embassy sent by that state to Cæsar, after three-fourths of their forces had crossed the Arar, (*Saone*,) and he had attacked and killed a great part of the other fourth.

Divitiăcus, i, a nobleman of the Ædui, who had great influence with Cæsar, in consequence of his steady attachment to the Romans.

Druĭdes, um, v. Druĭdæ, ārum, (a term of doubtful etymology), Druids, the priests of the ancient Britons, Gauls, and Germans. Besides supreme authority in all matters of religion, their power extended to all public and private differences, and what is of much greater consequence, to making, explaining, and executing the laws. This exorbitant jurisdiction was necessarily attended with every mark of power. They were exempted from taxes and military service, and their persons were held sacred and inviolable. Among the Gauls there were only two classes of any note, the Druids and Equĭtes, of which that of the Druids was the more illustrious. Their authority in many instances, surpassing that of the nobles, it is not surprising that they were, in general, sons of the first families. The worship and sacrifices of these priests were performed in deep groves, chiefly under an oak, which was their favorite tree. It was reckoned unlawful to commit any of their doctrines to writing; hence, many of their peculiar tenets are now unknown. It is generally supposed they believed in the immortality of the soul, and also the metempsychosis. Of natural philosophy, astronomy, arithmetic, and botany, it cannot be doubted their knowledge was very considerable. To the study of rhetoric they paid great attention, and to the charms of their eloquence, much of the admiration and power which they enjoyed, may be justly ascribed. Britain was, according to Cæsar, the great school of the Druids, whose chief settlement was Anglesy, called *Mona* by Tacitus. The natives of Gaul and Germany, who wished to be thoroughly versant in the mysteries of

Druidism, resorted to this island to complete their studies. At what time the Druids were wholly suppressed in Britain, is uncertain. But from the introduction of Christianity, their power and influence began to decline. It is worthy of remark, that some of their superstitious doctrines, and modes of predicting future events, are not, at this day, entirely forgotten in many parts of the island.

Dubis, is, m. the *Doux*, a river of Gallia, (*France*,) which originates in a small lake near mount Jura, and after a southwest course of sixty leagues, falls into the Arar, (*Saone*,) near to Cabillōnum, (*Chalons*.)

Dumnŏrix, ĭgis, one of the Ædui, and brother of Divitiăcus. He persuaded the noblemen of Gallia, (*France*,) not to go with Cæsar into Britain, withdrew privately from the Roman camp, and was killed by the soldiers who were sent in pursuit of him, in consequence of his obstinacy in refusing to return. His character will be found in B. G. I. 18.

Durocortŏrum, i, n. the capital of the Remi, now called *Rheims*, on the *Vesle*, one of the branches of the river Axŏna, (*Aisne*.)

E.

Eburōnes, um, (Eburŏnes, in Greek), a people of Gallia Belgĭca, whose territories lay on both sides of the river Mosa, (*Mæse*, or *Meuse*,) at its junction with the Sabis, (*Sambre*.) On their being dispossessed, they were succeeded by the Tungri. They were under the vassalage of the Trevĭri. Cæsar attempted to extirpate this nation; but this barbarous design, even from his own account, he was unable to carry into full effect.

Eburovīces, um, a people of Gallia, (*France*,) on the left bank of the Sequăna, (*Seine*.) The Lexovii were between them and the sea. Their chief city was at first called Mediolānum, and afterwards Eburovīces, now *Evreux*.

Elusātes, ium, a people of Aquitania, who lived on the river Atur, (*Adour*,) whose principal city was Elūsa, æ, f. (*Euse*.)

Equĭtes, (from *equus* and *eo*,) cavalry. Of these the number belonging to each legion was 300, called *justus equitātus*, or *ala*. They were divided into ten *turmæ*, or troops of thirty each; and each *turma* into three *decuriæ*, or bodies of ten men. The office of the Equĭtes at first was to serve in the army. They were se-

lected both from the patricians and plebeians; they were required, when chosen, to be 18 years of age, and to possess a fortune of 400 sestertia, ($15,472.) See Gr. App. V.

Eratosthĕnes, is, a native of Cyrēne, (Cyrenæus,) the scholar of Callimăchus, and of Aristo of Chios, and the second who was intrusted with the Alexandrian library, devoted his time to criticism and philosophy. He was eminent as a poet and mathematician, but more distinguished as an astronomer and geographer. He died in the year 194 B. C. in the 82d year of his age. B. VI. Ch. 24.

Essui, ōrum, supposed to be also called Saii, ōrum, a people of Gallia, whose territories lay on the Olēna, (*Orne*,) adjoining to the Diablintes and Aulerci Eburōnes.

Esubii, ōrum. This word occurs only in B. G. III. 7, where the readings are very different. Some copies have Esubios, or Eusubios, and others Lexuvios. The Greek has Unellos, to which Dr. Clarke, in a note, seems to give the preference, although he has retained Eusubios in the text.

Evocăti, (from *evŏco*, to call out,) veteran soldiers, who had served out their time and received their discharge, but who were sometimes again *called out* into public service. This class were highly respected, and were exempted from the drudgery of military service to which the other soldiers were subjected.

Excubiæ, ārum, watches either by day or night. Vigiliæ, watches by night only. These were relieved at the end of every three hours; hence the night, from sunset till sunrise, was divided into four watches, called the *first*, *second*, *third*, and *fourth*. See Gr. App. I.

Exercĭtus, ûs, (from *exerceo*, to exercise,) an army, a body of men trained to, or *exercised* in military service. (*Agmen*, from *ago*, an army on the march, or in marching order. *Acies*, an army drawn up in a *line*, or in battle array.) A consular army consisted of two Roman legions, (See *Legio*,) with the proper number of cavalry, and two legions of the allies with their cavalry, making in all about 20,000 men, or in the time of Polybius. 18,600

F.

Fabius, i, (Caius.) one of Cæsar's lieutenants.

Fabius, i, (Quintus Fabius Maxĭmus) a Roman consul who defeated the Averni and Rutēni.

Funditōres, um, (from *funda*, a sling.) Slingers, a class of warriors usually joined with the *Velĭtes*, but not properly a part of them. They were armed with slings and stones, or bullets of lead, which from practice they threw with great precision and with so much force that neither buckler nor head-piece could resist their impetuosity. They were generally obtained from the Balearic Isles, Achaia, Crete, Arabia, &c., the Balearians being considered the best. See *Velĭtes.*

G.

GALBA, æ, the name of a branch of the Sulpicii, v. Sulpitii, or, according to others, the surname of the founder of that tribe.

Galba, æ. the king of the Suessiōnes at the time Cæsar invaded Gaul. On account of his knowledge and love of justice, he was appointed commander-in-chief of the forces raised by the Belgian states, against the power of Rome, in the second year of the Gallic war.

Galba, æ, (Sergius) was the son of C. Galba, and grandson of Servius, or Sergius Galba, a celebrated orator and the first distinguished character of that family. He held the rank of lieutenant in Cæsar's army during the Gallic war, and afterwards joined the conspiracy, which the Republican party formed against the life of that ambitious and unprincipled general.

Galea, a helmet, a defensive piece of armor, made of brass or iron, which came down to the shoulders but left the face uncovered.

Gallia,* æ, now *France*, (See the map,) was an extensive and populous country of Europe, bounded on the north by the British Channel, on the east by the Rhine, Mount Jura and the Alps; on the south by the Mediterranean and Spain; and on the west by the Atlantic Ocean. In the time of Cæsar it was divided into three parts; Gallia Belgĭca, or the country of the BELGÆ (now *Belgium*) occupying the northern part; Gallia Celtĭca, or the country of the CELTÆ, or Celts, by far the largest, and occupying the middle portion; and AQUITANIA, lying between the Garumna (*Garonne,*) and the Pyrenees,—much smaller than either of the others. Adjoining Gaul on the east, and separated from it by Mount Jura,

* Cæsar does not use this term always in precisely the same sense. In B. I. Ch. 1, it means the whole of Gaul not then subject to the Romans; and in the same chapter it is used to denote the central division, or that possessed by the Celts. It is used in the same restricted sense, B. III. Ch. 2.

lay HELVETIA, (now part of *Switzerland*,) extending from Mount Jura to the Rhine, on the east; and from Lake Lemannus (*Geneva*) and the Rhone on the south. to the Rhine on the north. On the south and eastern border of Gallia lay what was called PROVINCIA, the Roman Province. (See *Provincia*.) Each of these great divisions contained within them numerous nations or tribes, all living under their respective kings or chiefs, all of which were finally brought under subjection to the Romans. The whole of this extensive country was called by the Romans *Gallia Transalpīna,* Gaul beyond the Alps, to distinguish it from the northern part of Italy, which they called *Gallia Cisalpīna*.

In the 27th year before the Christian æra, and twenty years after the conquest of Gaul was completed by C. Julius Cæsar, Augustus Cæsar made a new division of the whole, including Provincia Romana and Helvetia, into four grand divisions, in which more attention was paid to equality in the extent of the provinces than to the nations that inhabited them. Aquitania was extended northward and eastward to the Liger, (*Loire*,) Gallia Belgĭca on its eastern border was extended southward, taking in part of Gallia Celtĭca, and the whole country of the Helvetii. These four divisions were Gallia Belgĭca, Gallia Celtĭca, Aquitania, and Gallia Narbonensis (formerly Provincia, or Provincia Romāna). These four divisions were again subdivided into seventeen provinces in all. And it is this division which is exhibited in the maps of ancient geography commonly in use. In the map accompanying this work, the division of the country in the time of Cæsar, and the names by which these divisions were then known, have been preferred as more suitable for such a work as this.

The whole country of Gaul from the time of its conquest by Cæsar, 47 years B. C., remained subject to the Romans, and a part of their vast empire for five hundred and fifty years. On the final dismemberment of that empire, Gaul being conquered by the Franks, (or Freemen,) a confederacy of warlike nations bordering on the Rhine, was from them called France about the beginning of the sixth century.

Galli, ōrum, the Gauls, or the inhabitants of Gaul. Gallus, i, a Gaul; one of the inhabitants of Gaul.

Gallus, i, (Marcus Trebius.) a prefect or Tribune of the soldiers, sent by P. Crassus, to forage among the Curiosolītæ.

Garıtes, um, a people of Aquitania, to the north of the Ausci.

Garumna, æ, m. the *Garonne*, a river of France, which rises in the valley of Arran, to the south of St. Bernard, runs with rapidity N. N. E. to Tolōsa, (*Toulouse*.) afterwards N. N. W. to Guienne, and falls into Oceănus Cantabrĭcus, vel, Mare Aquitanĭcum, (the *Bay of Biscay*.) The general course of this river, which extends to about 250 miles, is northwest. After its junction with the Duranius, (*Dordogne*,) below Burdegalia, (*Bourdeaux*,) it assumes the name of *Gironde*. According to Julius Cæsar's division of Gaul, the Garonne was the boundary of Aquitania, and separated that district from Gallia Celtĭca, It is navigable to Toulouse, and communicates with the Mediterranean by means of the Royal Canal, about 180 miles long, made through Languedoc by Louis XIV.

Genēva, æ, f. *Geneva*, a town at the western extremity of Lacus Lemānnus, (the *Lake of Geneva*,) on the south bank of the Rhodănus, (*Rhone*.) From Geneva towards Mount Jura, Cæsar raised a mole or rampart of earth, nineteen miles in length.

In modern times, Geneva is a considerable city, nearly two miles in circumference, and contains thirty thousand inhabitants Besides being neatly built, it is strongly fortified, and remarkable for its beautiful situation, fine walks, and delightful prospects. Calvin spent the latter part of his life at Geneva, and his followers have, ever since, held the government of the city.

Germania, æ, f. *Germany*, a large country of Europe, bounded on the south by the Danubius, (*Danube;*) on the east by the Vistŭla, (*Vistula;*) on the north by Codānus Sinus, vel, Mare Suevĭcum, (the *Baltic Sea*;) and on the west by the Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) and Oceănus Germanĭcus, (the *German Sea*.)

Germānus, i, pl. i, ōrum, the people of Germany; Germans.

Getūli, ōrum, (sing. Getūlus, i,) the inhabitants of Getulia, or Gætulia, æ, f. *Biledulgerid*, a large country of Africa, to the south of Mauritania and Numidia. It formed part of the kingdom of Massinissa. Sallust, from books written in the Punic language which belonged to Hiempsal, gives the following character of the Getūli and Libyes:—"Africa was at first possessed by the Getulians and Libyans, a savage and untutored people, who lived on the flesh of wild beasts, or grass of the field, like cattle; subject to no established customs, laws or government, a race of wanderers, who had no settled habitation, and who lay down to rest wherever night overtook them."—Sal. Bel. Jug. 18.

Gladius, i, a sword. The Roman sword was short, straight, and heavy, both for cutting and thrusting. It was worn on the right

side, so as in drawing not to interfere with the shield. The long sword of the cavalry was curved, and was worn on the left side.

Gorduni, ōrum, a people of the northern part of Gallia Belgĭca, subject to the Nervii, whose territories lay along the sea-coast, to the north of the Morĭni.

Graiocēli, ōrum, an ancient nation of Gaul, whose territories seem to have been adjacent to those of the Centrōnes and Caturĭges, a people who lived among the Alps.

Grudii, ōrum, a neighboring nation to the Gordūni. Their country was bounded on the north by the mouths of the Scaldis, (*Scheldt.*)

H.

Harūdes, um, a people of Germania, (*Germany*,) on the north bank of the Danubius, (*Danube*,) towards the source of that river.

Hastāti, ōrum, the name given to the first rank of the Roman legion (See *Legio.*)

Helvetia, æ, f. *Switzerland*, a country of a triangular form, bounded on the north by the river Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) and Lacus Brigantīnus, (*Lake of Constance*,) which separate it from Vindelicia and Germania,(*Germany;*)on the south by the Rhodănus, (*Rhone*,) and Lacus Lemānus, (the *Lake of Geneva*,) which divides it from Provincia Romāna; and on the west by Mount Jura which protected them from the Gauls. Hence it is manifest that Helvetia was of less extent than Switzerland. Cæsar (B. G. I. 1,) seems to consider the Helvetii as Gauls. In Lib. I. cap 24, he says, *Helvetii—phalange factâ*, by which is to be understood simply, that they fought in close order, not that they drew up their troops precisely in the form of the Macedonian Phalanx, so celebrated in ancient history.

Helvetii, ōrum, the people of Helvetia; the Helvetians.

Hercynia, æ, f. a very extensive forest of Germany, the breadth of which, according to Cæsar, was nine days journey, and its length exceeded sixty. It extended from the territories of the Helvetii, Namnĕtes, and Raurăci, along the Danubius, (*Danube*,) to the country of the Daci and Anartes; then turning to the north, it spread over many large tracts of land, and is said to have contained many different animals, unknown in other countries, of which Cæsar describes two or three kinds. Since the other forests of Germany were only branches of the Hercynian, some writers have considered it as covering nearly the whole of that

extensive territory. As the country became more inhabited, the grounds were gradually cleared, and few vestiges of the ancient forest remain in modern times.

Hiberna, ōrum, winter quarters The wars of the Romans were prosecuted chiefly in the summer. When the weather and the state of the country became unfavorable to military operations the troops were withdrawn from the field, and led into winter quarters, (*hiberna.*) These were strongly fortified and furnished with every accommodation, like a city, containing storehouses, (*armaria*,) workshops, (*fabrĭcæ*,) an infirmary, (*valetudinarium*,) &c. Hence, from them many towns in Europe, and particularly in England, are supposed to have had their origin. This appears to be indicated by the terminations *cester*, or *chester*, from *castra*.

Hibernia, æ, f. *Ireland*, a considerable island in Mare Atlantĭcum, (the *Atlantic Ocean*). It is washed on the east by Oceănus Verginius, (*St. George's Channel*,) which separates it from England; on the north by Mare Hibernĭcum, (*Irish Sea*,) which divides it from Scotland; and on all other parts by Mare Atlanticum, (the *Atlantic Ocean*,) of which St. George's Channel, and the Irish Sea, form but very small parts.

Hiberni, ōrum, the inhabitants of Hibernia.

Hispania, æ, f. *Spain*, a large country of Europe, bounded on the south by Fretum Gaditānum, or Herculeum, (the *Strait of Gibraltar;*) on the east by the Mediterranean, which was known among the Romans by the appellation of *Nostrum Mare*, and among the Greeks, of *Mare Internum*; on the north by the Pyrenæi Montes, (*Pyrenees*,) which separate it from Gallia, (*France*,) and Oceănus Cantabrĭcus, (the *Bay of Biscay;*) on the west by Lusitania, (*Portugal*, included in Hispania Ulterior,) and Mare Atlantĭcum, (the *Atlantic Ocean*,) which the Greeks called *Măre Externum*. Its greatest length, from east to west, is 600 miles, and its greatest breadth 550. The superficial contents of this country are about 148,000 square miles. Spain, including Portugal, was, by the Romans, divided into two parts, Hispania Citerior, (*Hither Spain*,) and Hispania Ulterior, (*Farther Spain;*) hence, *duæ Hispaniæ*, the two Spains, or *Hispaniæ*, Spains. The former, or northern, comprehending an extent of country equal to three-fourths of modern Spain, the latter, or southern, the rest of the country. These two divisions were sometimes governed by proconsuls, but more commonly by prætors.

In the reign of Augustus, Hispania Citerior was, from Tarrăco, its principal city, called *Tarraconensis*, and Hispania Ulterior

was divided into *Lusitania* and *Bætĭca.* The former appellation was derived from the Lusitāni, the most powerful of the nations who inhabited that country, and the latter, from Bætis, the *Guadalquivir*, a very large river, which watered that province.

Hispani, ōrum, the people of Hispania.

Hora, æ, f. an hour. Among the Romans it was the twelfth part of the day. The first hour commenced with the rising of the sun, and the twelfth ended with his setting. It is manifest that the portion of time denominated an hour by them, was constantly changing, and was of equal length to our hour only at the equinoxes. At these two periods of the year, and at them only, their first hour corresponded to our 7 o'clock in the morning; the second to eight, third to 9, fourth to 10, and fifth to 11; but their sixth hour or noon (meridies) coincided exactly with our 12 o'clock noon, or mid-day throughout the whole year. Their 7th then answered to our 1 in the afternoon, 8th to 2, 9th to 3, 10th to 4, 11th to 5, and 12th to 6. At the summer solstice, or longest day, the sun rises at Rome a few minutes past 4 o'clock, and sets the same number of minutes before 8, consequently their hour is, at that time, nearly $\frac{1}{4}$ longer than ours, and at the winter solstice it will be as much shorter.

I.

Iccius, i, m. one of the ambassadors whom the Rhemi sent to Cæsar in the second year of the Gallic war.

Iccius, i, (*sc.* portus,) a harbor in the country of the Morĭni, in Gallia Belgĭca, which, according to some, was *Boulogne*, and, according to others, *Vissant*, or *Calais*. Ptolemy mentions it as a promontory, although it cannot be doubted that there was likewise a cognominal harbor. From his description, this seems to be the place which he had in view. It could not be *Calais*. Cæsar set out from Iccius Portus, when he sailed the second time for Britain.

Idus, uum, f. the Ides, one of the divisions of the Roman month. In March, July, and October, the Ides were on the 15th, and in the other months, on the 13th. Like the Kalends, and Nones, the Ides were reckoned backwards. (See Gr. App. I.)

Illyrĭcum, (*Croatia*, *Bosnia*, and *Slavonia*,) a country opposite to Italy, bordering on the Adriatic. It was bounded on the south by Macedonia; on the east by Mœsia and Pannonia; on the north by

Norĭcum; and on the west by Histia and Mare Adriatĭcum, vel Supĕrum, (the *Gulf of Venice.*)

Imanuentius, i, m. a Briton, the father of Mandubratius, and king of the Trinobantes. He was killed by Cassivellaunus.

Impedimenta, ōrum, baggage; (from *impedio*, to hinder.) The heavier baggage of the Romans, such as tents, mills, &c. was carried on beasts of burden; sometimes, though more seldom, on baggage wagons, (*carri.*) Every thing else was carried by the soldiers themselves, each of whom usually carried provisions for fifteen days, usually corn, sometimes dressed food, a saw, a basket, a mattock or axe, a reaper's hook and leathern thong, a chain, a pot, usually three or four stakes, sometimes more, for the *vallum*, amounting in all, exclusive of armor, to 60 pounds; and under this load they commonly marched 20 miles a day, sometimes more.

Indutiomārus, i, a chief man among the Trevĭri, father-in-law to Cingetŏrix, who attacked Labiēnus, but was repulsed, and slain.

Italia, æ, f. *Italy*, a large and celebrated country of Europe, bounded on the south by Fretum Sicŭlum, (the *Strait of Messina*,) which separates it from Sicily; on the northeast by Mare Adriatĭcum, or Supĕrum, (the *Gulf of Venice*,) which divides it from Græcia, (*Greece*,) now part of *Turkey in Europe*. The Alpes, (*Alps*,) form the boundary between Italy and Germany on the north; and on the southwest it is washed by that part of the Mediterranean, formerly called Mare Tyrrhēnum, Tuscum, or Infĕrum, now the *Tuscan Sea*. The Appenīnus, (*Appenines*,) forms a ridge of mountains which extends from the Alps to Rhegium, (*Reggio*,) the whole length of the country. The sources of all the rivers in Italy are found in these mountains. Roma, (*Rome*,) for many years the seat of universal empire, was the capital of Italy. From it, the inhabitants of Italy were frequently called Romāni, a name originally given only to the natives of that city and its territory, which was long very small.

Ităli, ōrum, the people of Italia; Italians.

Itius Portus, a harbor in the country of the Morĭni, from which Cæsar sailed on his second expedition against Britain. See Iccius.

J.

Jugum, i, a yoke. This consisted of two spears or pieces of wood set upright in the ground, a little space apart, over which a third was laid across the top, the whole resembling the Greek Π.

Under this frame the soldiers of conquered armies were often obliged to pass naked, (*nudi,*) *i. e.* without their armor, which was previously laid down.

Jumenta, ōrum, beasts of burden, (horses, mules, asses, &c.) used by the Romans for carrying their heavier baggage. (See *Impedimenta.*)

Junius, i, (Quintus, i,) a Spaniard who was frequently sent by Cæsar to converse with Ambiŏrix.

Jura, æ, m. a chain of mountains which, extending from the Rhodănus, (*Rhone,*) to the Rhenus, (*Rhine,*) separated Helvetia, (*Switzerland,*) from that part of Gallia Celtĭca which the Sequăni possessed, now called *Franche Compte.* Vosĕgus, (*Vauge,*) is a branch, or an extension of Mount Jūra.

Justus equitātus, the complement of cavalry attached to a Legion; three hundred in number, exclusive of the horsemen of the allies.

K.

Kalendæ, or Calendæ, ārum, f. the Kalends, the name given by the Romans to the first day of every month. A priest was appointed to give notice to the people of the change of the moon, or when the new moon was first visible. This term appears to be derived from the Greek verb *καλέω*, *I call.* (See Gr. App. I.)

L.

Laberius. (Quintus, L. Durus,) a tribune of the soldiers in Cæsar's army. He was killed in Britain, B. G. V. 15.

Labiēnus, i, (Titus, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants in the Gallic war. In the beginning of the Civil war he deserted to Pompey, escaped from the battle of Pharsalia, and was killed in that of Munda.

Latobrĭgi, ōrum, a people who appear to have been neighbors of the Helvetii Raurāci and Tulingi, but of whom little is known with certainty.

Legatus, i, m. a lieutenant-general, who was both appointed by, and acted immediately under, the consul, or Commander-in-chief. The number of these officers varied in proportion to the greatness or importance of the war. Each legion had at least one, often two. When separated from the main army, sent into win-

ter quarters, &c. the lieutenant-general, being the deputy of the commander, had the honor to be the highest officer.

At their first institution, the Legati were counsellors to the governors of provinces, and decided all causes of minor importance; but held no military rank. Hence the word primarily denoted an Ambassador. Their admission into the army naturally resulted from that place of intimacy and confidence. Under the emperors the term became a common appellation for all invested with the highest military command in foreign countries.

Legio, ōnis, f. a legion, or body of soldiers consisting of different numbers at different times. In the early part of the reign of Romulus, the legion contained 3,000 foot, and 300 horse, which he, on the increase of the citizens by the admission of the Sabines, raised to 4,000. To that number 1,000 was added during the war which Hannibal carried on in Italia, (*Italy*,) about 216 years B. C. but a reduction of 500 had taken place before the time Polybius wrote his history. Livy states that the legion consisted of 5,000 foot, and Vegetius, of 6,000 foot. It cannot be doubted that these historians recorded the exact number, which constituted a complete legion in their respective times. The legion consisted of ten cohorts, each cohort of three maniples, and each maniple of two centuries; and in the order of battle the troops were drawn up in three lines, first the *Hastāti;* second, the *Princĭpes;* and third, the *Triarii.* Those who formed the first line were called *Hastāti*, from their fighting with *Hasta*, a long spear, which was afterwards laid aside on account of its being inconvenient. They were the flower of the Roman youth. The second line consisted of the same number of maniples, but of men more advanced in life, and of greater military experience, who were called *Princĭpes*, probably from their being at one time the *first* line. Their arms were heavy. The *Triarii* made up the third line, and seem to have been a body of reserve. They were frequently, from *Pilum*, a javelin, called *Pilāni*, and the Hastāti and Princĭpes, *Antepilāni*, from being stationed before them. The *Velĭtes* generally skirmished before the lines, sometimes between them, and appear to have been what the moderns call Irregulars. They had light armor, hence called *expedīti*, *levis armatūræ*, &c. The archers and slingers were attached to this body. According to that historian, twenty *Velĭtes* seem to have belonged to each maniple. They were, in battle, not formed into cohorts, or maniples, but fought in such parties and in such places as the commander judged most advantageous.

In the early ages of the Roman state, their army in battle order was drawn up, like the Macedonian phalanx, in a continued line. This fact rests on the authority of Livy. The disposition into three lines, and arranging in maniples at some distance from each other seems an improvement of later times. When the *Hastāti* yielded to the superior force or bravery of the enemy, they fell back to the *Princĭpes*, who filled up the spaces between the maniples, and with them they renewed the charge. If both were forced to give way, the *Triarii* came up, and a third attack was made on the enemy. Hence, *ad triarios ventum est*, it is come to the last push; matters are in the utmost danger. The cavalry fought on the wings, but their exact form or position is not certainly known. It probably did not differ very much from the practice of the moderns. If after the whole force was brought into action the enemy still prevailed, they of necessity submitted to a defeat.

All the cohorts of the legion were manifestly on an equal footing in the army of Cæsar, and no preference seems to have been either acknowledged or claimed. The only vestige of the ancient division was the officers retaining their former appellations, as *Primus hastātus*, *Primus pilus*, &c. Cæsar frequently kept the third line as a body of reserve.

Lemānus (Lacus), the *Lake of Geneva*, is a most beautiful expanse of water, in the form of a crescent, the convex side of which is upwards of fifty-four miles long. Its hollow side is towards Switzerland, and its greatest breadth measures about twelve miles. The Rhodănus, (*Rhone*,) descending from the Alps, traverses the whole length of the lake, and renders the water at its entrance turbid, on account of the quantity of earth and mud brought down from these steep mountains. Like the other waters and lakes of Switzerland, for nearly an hour in the evening, after the sun is hid behind Mount Jura, it shines with a splendor resembling burnished gold, by the reflection of the solar rays from the Glaciers.

Leponti, ōrum, a people of the Alps, near the source of the Rhodănus, (*Rhone*,) on the south of that river.

Levăci, ōrum, a people in the northern part of Gallia Belgĭca, on the Scaldis, (*Scheldt*,) between the Nervii and Grudii. The Centrōnes, Grudii, Levăci, Pleumosii, and Gordūni. were vassals of the Nervii. B. G. V. 39.

Leuci, ōrum, a Belgic nation who lived between the Mosa, (*Meuse*,) and the Mosella, (*Moselle*,) near the source of that river.

Lexovii, ŏrum, a people of Gallia Celtĭca, whose country was bounded on the north by the Sequăna, (*Seine*,) and on the west by Fretum Gallĭcum, or, Britannĭcum, (the *English Channel*.)

Liger, ĕris, or Ligĕris, is, m. the *Loire*, a large river of Gaul, which takes its rise in the country of the Helvii, runs N. N. W. and after a course of 200 miles, falls into Oceănus Cantabrĭcus, (*Bay of Biscay*.) According to the division of Gaul made by Augustus, the Loire was the northern boundary of Aquitania.

Lingŏnes, um, a people of Gaul whose territories included Mount Vosegus, (*Vauge*,) consequently the sources of the rivers Mosa, (*Meuse*,) and Matrŏna, (*Marne*.) Their chief town was Andomadūnum, or Andomatūnum, afterwards Lingŏnes, now *Langres*.

Liscus, i, one of the Supreme magistrates of the Ædui, who along with Divitiăcus and other chiefs of that nation, was in Cæsar's camp in the Gallic war, and informed him of the conduct and plans of Dumnŏrix.

Lituus, i, a clarion, bent a little at the end like an augur's staff. It was used for the cavalry. The *tuba* was straight and employed by the infantry. The *cornu* was bent almost round. The *buccĭna* was commonly used for changing the watches.

Lorĭca, æ, a coat of mail, generally made of leather, covered with plates of iron in the form of scales, or iron rings twisted within one another like chains. It is also used to denote a battlement, or defence of towers and walls, constructed of stone or of hurdles.

Lucinius, i, (Quintus, i,) a centurion of the first rank, who was killed in attempting to rescue his son when surrounded by some of the troops of Ambiŏrix, after that king had treacherously persuaded Aurunculeius Cotta and Q. Titurius Sabīnus, lieutenants, with the army which they commanded, consisting of one legion and five cohorts, to leave their winter-quarters among the Eburōnes.

Lugotŏrix, ĭgis, one of the four kings of Cantium, (*Kent;*) some copies read Cingetŏrix (B. G. V. 22).

Lutetia, æ, f. Lutetia the capital of the Parisii, (*Paris*, now the capital of France,) was originally a fortress on a small island in the Sequăna, (*Seine*.) There are two other islands in the Seine at Paris covered with buildings, and connected with each other and the town, by means of bridges. Paris, situated in a plain on both sides of the Seine, is of a circular form, and upwards of eleven miles in circumference. It contains many stately edifices, and the finest collections of medals, statues, and paintings, in the

world. Every thing excellent in Rome, and in the other cities of Italy, has been conveyed to Paris to enrich these collections and to adorn the city.

M.

Magetobria, æ, f. a city of Gallia, (*France*,) at which Ariovistus defeated the combined forces of the Gauls. This victory put the country under his dominion.

Mandubratius, i, one of the nation of Trinobantes, who, on his father's being killed by Cassivellaunus, fled from Britain to Cæsar then in Gaul, who took him and the state under his protection.

Manilius, (Lucius, i,) a proconsul, who was obliged to fly from Aquitania, with the loss of all his baggage.

Manilius, i, (Tuscŭlus,) one of the conspirators against Cassius Longīnus, Propraetor of Farther Spain.

Manipŭlus, i, (See *Legio.*)

Marcomāni, or Marcomanni, ōrum, a people of Germania, (*Germany.*) whose territories were bounded on the west by the Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) and on the south by the Danubius, (*Danube*,) corresponding to part of the modern *Circle of Swabia.* They afterwards expelled the Boii, and took possession of their country, now called *Bohemia.*

Mare Nostrum, the *Mediterranean Sea*, to which the Romans gave this name, from its bounding their native country, Italia, (*Italy*,) on three sides. By the Greeks it was called Mare Internum; and the *Atlantic Ocean*, Mare Externum. In Scripture, this collection of water is denominated the *Great Sea*, which, though of small extent, when compared with the Pacific Ocean, &c. is the largest inland sea in the world. The modern appellation is manifestly derived from its situation, being wholly surrounded by land, except the narrow strait of Gibraltar, which connects it with the Atlantic Ocean.

The length of the Mediterranean is about 2,300 miles, and its breadth varies from 900 to 300 miles. Tides are scarcely known in this sea, except in the *Gulf of Venice*, and on the coast of *Tripoli.* There is a constant influx into the Mediterranean, both from the Atlantic and Pontus Euxīnus, (the *Black Sea.*) That part of it which is east of the Archipelago, or of the island Candia, is called the Levant.

The principal islands in the Mediterranean, are the Baleāres,

(*Majorca* and *Minorca*,) Sardinia, (*Sardinia*,) Corsĭca, (*Corsica*,) Sicilia, (*Sicily*,) separated from Italia, (*Italy*,) by Fretum Sicŭlum, (the *Strait of Messina*.) Melĭta, (*Malta*,) and Creta, (*Candia*.) In the Levant, besides some other islands of less extent, are Rhodos, (*Rhodes*,) and Cyprus, (*Cyprus*.)

Matrŏna, æ, f. the *Marne*, a river of Gallia, (*France*,) which formed part of the ancient boundary between Gallia Belgĭca and Gallia Celtĭca. It takes its rise at Sangres, runs northwest to Chalons, then westward, passes by Meaux, becomes navigable at Vitry, and at Charenton, a little above Paris, falls into the Sequăna, (*Seine*,) after a course of about ninety-two leagues.

Mediomatrĭces, um, vel. i, ŏrum, a people of Gallia Belgĭca, between the Mosella, (*Moselle*,) and the Rhenus, (*Rhine*.) The Trevĭri were their neighbors on the north. Their chief town was Divodŭrum, afterwards Mediomatrĭci, now *Metz*. At one period they were a powerful nation, and possessed a very extensive country. But the conquest of Gallia, (*France*,) by the Romans, destroyed their power, and confined them to a narrow territory.

Meldi, ŏrum, a people whose country was included between the rivers Matrŏna, (*Marne*,) and Sequăna, (*Seine*.) The modern town, *Meaux*, is of some note, and contains 6,000 inhabitants. The Meldi mentioned B. V. 5, were a Belgic tribe living on the Scaldis (*Scheldt*.)

Menapii, ŏrum, a people of Gallia Belgĭca, whose territory was separated from Insŭla Batavŏrum, (*Holland*,) by the Mosa, (*Meuse*.) The Toxandri were their neighbors on the south.

Mensis, is, m. a month; a term originally employed to denote that portion of time which elapses between two successive changes of the moon. (See Gr. App. I.)

Messăla, æ, (Marcus,) a noble Roman who was consul with Marcus Puppius Piso, in the 60th year B. C.

Mettius, i, (Marcus, i,) a man allied to Ariovistus by the rights of hospitality, whom Cæsar joined in commission with C. Valerius Procillus, on an embassy to that king. As soon as they entered his camp, without suffering them to speak, Ariovistus commanded both to be put in irons. He thrice drew lots to determine whether they should be burned alive upon the spot, or reserved for another time. The lots being always favorable, their lives were preserved. After the defeat of Ariovistus, Cæsar himself in the pursuit fell in with Procillus, and Mettius was likewise recovered and brought back to the Roman camp.

Minucius, i, (Lucius M. Basĭlus,) one of Cæsar's officers. To C Fabius, and L. Minucius Basĭlus, he gave the joint command of two legions, which were stationed among the Rhemi.

Mona, æ, f. the *Isle of Man*, an island in the Irish Sea, nearly equidistant from England, Scotland, and Ireland. It is thirty miles long, and eight broad. The soil is fertile, the air salubrious, and the inhabitants live in general to a great age. The sovereignty of this island formerly belonged to the Dukes of Athol; but it was sold in 1765 to the crown. Tacitus and others call Anglesy, Mona, but Cæsar is more correct.

Morĭni, ōrum, a people of Gallia Belgĭca, whose country lay along the coast opposite to Cantium, (*Kent.*)

Moritasgus, i, the king of the Senŏnes, at Cæsar's arrival in Gallia, (*France.*)

Mosa, æ, f. the *Mæse*, or *Meuse*, a river of Gallia, (*France*,) rising a little to the west of Mount Vosegus, (*Vauge*,) runs north, passes a number of celebrated towns, receives, at Namur, the Sabis, (*Sambre*,) joins the Vahălis, (*Wahal*, or, *Waal*,) below the island of Bommel, and falls into the German Sea. The course of this river, which extends to 160 leagues, is north.

Munatius, i, (Lucius M. Plancus), one of Cæsar's lieutenants, who, with Caius Trebonius, had the command of three legions which were settled in Belgium, during the winter.

Muscŭlus, a species of moveable shed or pent-house on wheels, shaped like an arched wagon, usually sent before the large towers to prepare the way for their advance, by cutting down trees, filling up ditches, removing obstructions, and making a smooth and solid road even up to the enemy's walls.

N.

Nameius, i, a nobleman of the Helvetii, who, with Verudoctius, was at the head of the embassy which that nation sent to Cæsar, to request permission to march through the Roman province.

Namnĕtes, or, Nannĕtes, um, a people of Gallia Celtĭca, who lived on the north bank of the Ligĕris, (*Loire*,) where it falls into the sea.

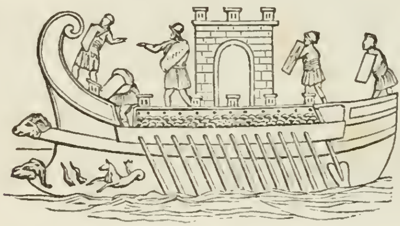
Nantuātes, um, a people, whose country lay on the south of Lacus Lemānus, (the *Lake of Geneva.*)

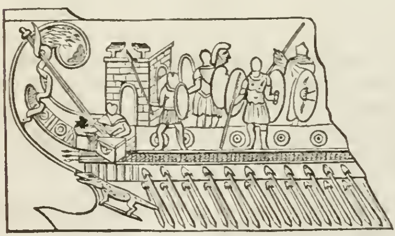
Narbo, ōnis. f. *Narbonne*, a town of Provincia, to the south of the river Atax, (the *Aude*,) near the sea-coast, which afterwards gave name to that division of Gallia, (*France*,) called Narbonensis.

Nasua, æ, the brother of Cimberius, who commanded the 100 Cantons of the Suevi, who had encamped on the bank of the Rhenus (*Rhine*,) with the design of crossing that river.

Naves, ium, (sing. navis,) ships. The kind of ships used by the Romans were chiefly two, viz: *Naves Longæ*, ships of war, and *Naves Onerariæ*, ships of burden. The Naves longæ were so called because they were of a longer shape than the others. They were commonly impelled by oars, and were distinguished by a helmet at the mast head. They were also ranked as *birēmes, trirēmes, quadrēmes,* and *quinquirēmes,* according as they had two, three, four, or five rows or tiers of oars. According to the generally received opinion, these rows or tiers ran from the prow to the stern, as exhibited in the following wood cuts, taken from antiques, the first of which has one row and the second two. Over these were erected decks on which sometimes towers were constructed, from which the enemy might be more conveniently and successfully assailed.

NAVES LONGÆ.





The *Naves Onerariæ*, or ships of burden, were broader and rounder than the vessels of war. They were impelled by sails

and distinguished by a basket, (*corbis*,) suspended from the mast head; whence they were sometimes called *corbītæ*.

Naves Actuariæ were ships contrived for lightness and expedition. They had but one bank of oars, or at most two, on each side. They were of different kinds, distinguished by different names; as, *Celōces*, *Lembi*, *Phasĕli*, &c., but the most remarkable were the *Naves Liburnæ*, a kind of light gallies used by the Liburni.

Nemĕtes, um, a people of Gallia Belgĭca, probably a tribe of the Germans, on the west bank of the river Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) between the Tribŏci and Vangiōnes. Their principal city was Noviomāgus, (*Spire.*)

Nervii, ōrum, a powerful and warlike nation of Gallia Belgĭca, whose country lay on both sides of the Scaldis, (*Scheldt*,)near the source of that river, afterwards *Hainault*, and *Nord*. They revolted and attacked the Roman troops under Cæsar; but were totally routed. Their mode of defence against the attacks of cavalry was simple and effectual. The different readings B. G. Lib. II. 17, are numerous, yet the idea conveyed by all is not very materially different. In the place where the Nervii wished to raise a barrier, they, probably at a considerable distance from each other, half cut two rows of young trees, so that they continued to grow, bent them longitudinally, and gave their branches a lateral direction. The middle space between these rows was planted or filled up with briers and thorns, which intermixing with the trees that formed the outside of the fence, rendered the whole so close and impervious, that it not only stopped the progress, but even the view of the invaders.

After *ramis* the common text has *enatis*, which Oudendorp and others reject as a mere gloss, unnecessary to the sense. It is also wanting in the best MSS.

Nonæ, ārum, f. the Nones, the second division of the Roman month; so called, it is supposed, because from that day to the Ides nine days intervened. In the months of March, May, July, and October, the Nones fell on the seventh, and in the other months on the fifth. (See Gr. App. I.)

Noreïa, æ, f. a city of Norĭcum, the capital of the Taurisci. B. I. 5.

Norĭcum, i, n. or Norĭcus ager, a large country of Germany, between Italia, (*Italy*,) and the Danubius, (*Danube*). It comprehended the greater part of Austria, all Saltzburg, Stiria, and Carinthia. Their chief city was Noreia, which was besieged by the

Boii, in the inroad which they had made upon Noricum, before they entered into alliance with the Helvetii.

Norĭci, ōrum, the people of Norĭcum.

Noviodūnum, i, n. (B. G. II. 15.) a town of the Suessiōnes, (*Soisons*, or *Noyons.*) Another of the Ædui, (B. G. VII. 55,) now *Nevers*, on the banks of the Ligĕris, (*Loire*). And a third belonged to the Biturĭges, (B. G. VII. 14,) now *Neuvy* or, *Neufry*, about twenty miles west from *Nevers*.

Numidia, æ, f. *Algiers*, a country of Africa, bounded on the north by the Mediterranean; on the west by Mauritania, (*Morocco* and *Fez;*) on the south by Gætūlia; and on the east by Afrĭca Propria, (*Tunis.*)

Numĭdæ, ārum, and, Nomădes, um, the inhabitants of Numidia, described by Sallust, in the Jugurthan war, as faithless, unsteady, and fond of revolutions in the state.

O.

Ocelum, i, n. *Oux*, or *Exilles*, a town on the frontiers of Gallia Cisalpīna, Citerior, or Togāta, in Alpes Graiæ.

Octodūrus, i, (Octodŏrus, in Greek,) *Martigny*, a town, or village, of the Verăgri, (*Vicus Veragrōrum*, Cæsar, B. G. III. 1,) on the *Drance*, near its junction with the Rhodănus, (*Rhone*,) at a considerable distance above the entrance of the latter into Lacus Lemānus, (the *Lake of Geneva.*)

Orcynia, æ, f. a name given by Eratosthenes, and some ŏther Greeks, to Hercynia Silva; which see.

Orgetŏrix, ĭgis, was, according to Cæsar, the richest and most noble of the Helvetii. Prompted by a love of power, he formed a conspiracy among the nobles, and persuaded the people to quit their country. When his ambitious views were discovered by the state, he was obliged to answer to the charges preferred against him. Orgetŏrix, by means of his vassals and debtors, rescued himself, from the hands of his judges, and escaped. But whilst the state was endeavoring to support its authority by force, he died, as was suspected, by his own hands.

Osismii, ōrum, a people of Gallia Celtĭca, one of the nations which went under the general name of *Civitātes Armoricæ*. Their country afterwards formed part of the province of *Bretagne*. It is now called *Finisterre*.

P.

Padus, i, m. the *Po,* the largest river of Italy. anciently called Eridănus. The northern branches of the Po, descending from the Alps, render it largest in the warmest months of summer, by the melting of the snow towards the summit of these lofty mountains. It disembogues into Mare Adriatĭcum, or Hadriatĭcum, (the *Gulf of Venice,*) by seven mouths, of which two were formed by nature, the other five by art.

Pæmāni, ōrum, a people of Gallia Belgĭca, on the east bank of the Mosa, (*Meuse.*) They had the Cæræsi on the south, the Trevĭri on the east, and Silva Arduenna on the north.

Paludamentum, i, the military robe or cloak of the Roman commander; sometimes also worn by the chief officers. It was of a scarlet color, bordered with purple. The elevation of this upon a spear above the Prætorium, or general's tent, was often the signal given for commencing battle.

Parisii, ōrum, the inhabitants of Lutētia, from whom it was afterwards called Parisii, now *Paris,* the capital of France. (See *Lutetia.*)

Passus, ûs, a pace, (two steps,) was reckoned nearly equal to five feet. (See Gr. App. VI. 5,) Of these 125 made a stadium, and 1000 made a mile; hence, *mille passuum,* a mile.

Pedius, i, (Quintus) a grandson of one of Julius Cæsar's sisters, was one of his lieutenant-generals in the Gallic war, and appointed in his will co-heir with Octavius, who had Pedius for his colleague in his first consulship. He passed a law, from him called *Lex Pedia,* declaring the death of Julius Cæsar to have been murder, and subjecting the assassin to capital punishment.

Peligni, ōrum, a people of Italy, whose country lay between the sources of the rivers Sagrus, (*Sangro,*) and Aternus, (*Pescara.*) both of which fall into the Gulf of Venice.

Petrosidius, i, (Lucius, i,) a standard bearer of the army which, under the command of Q. Titurius Sabīnus and Lucius Aurunculeïus Cotta, wintered among the Eburōnes. These troops were, in consequence of a stratagem of Ambiŏrix, attacked by him on disadvantageous ground two miles from the camp, and almost wholly cut off. Petrosidius having, with a few of his men, returned to the camp, threw his standard within the rampart, and was killed fighting with great bravery before the fortifications.

Pictŏnes, um, a people of Gallia Celtĭca, on the south bank of the Ligĕris. (*Loire,*) where it falls into the sea.

Pilāni. (See *Legio.*)

Pirustæ, ārum, a people of Illyrĭcum, on the east coast of Mare Hadriatĭcum, (*the Gulf of Venice.*)

Piso, ōnis, (Lucius Calpurnius, i,) Cæsar's father-in-law, who was consul with A. Gabinius Paulus, in the year of the city 696. In their consulship, Cicero was banished from Rome, and Clodius was supported by Piso, in procuring that disgraceful sentence, (B. G. I. 6.)

Piso, ōnis, (Lucius, i,) the grandfather of Piso above mentioned, was a lieutenant of Cassius, both of whom fell in an engagement with the Helvetii, (B. G. I. 12.)

Piso, ōnis, surnamed from his country, Aquitanus, a nobleman of Aquitania, whose father had been supreme magistrate in that country, and called *Friend* by the Romans, (B. G. IV. 12.)

Plancus, i, (L. Munatius, i,) a lieutenant in Cæsar's army, to whom he gave the joint command with C. Trebonius, of three legions cantoned in Gallia Belgĭca. After the death of Julius Cæsar, L. Munatius Plancus joined Antony and Lepĭdus. With the latter he was consul. He is said to have founded Lugdūnum, (*Lyons.*)

Pleumosii, ōrum, a people of Gallia Belgĭca, supposed to have lived on the Scaldis, (*Scheldt,*) near the place where the city *Tournay* now stands.

Pluteus, i, a kind of moveable gallery on wheels, in form resembling the Muscŭlus, (which see,) but used chiefly to protect the archers stationed in it, in order to clear the walls with their arrows, and so facilitate the approach of storming parties and the erection of scaling ladders.

Pompeius, i, (Cneius,) a Roman who was well skilled in the language of the Gauls, and acted as interpreter to Quintus Titurius. After the credulity of that lieutenant had placed himself and his men at the mercy of Ambiŏrix, he sent Cneius Pompeius to the king of the Eburōnes, begging him to spare their lives. (See *Titurius.*)

Præconīnus, i, a lieutenant who was himself killed, and his army defeated at Apollōnia.

Præfectus, i, an officer who commanded the allies, and who in the extent of his command resembled the legionary tribune. The commander of the cavalry of a legion was called *præfectus alæ.*

Prætor, ōris, m. a Prætor; (from *Præ* and *eo,*) literally, one who goes before. In the early ages of the Roman State, this term is

supposed by some to have been a general appellation of all the Roman Magistrates, afterwards of the general of the army; even the Emperors were ambitious to include it among their other titles. But the word commonly denoted a Roman judge who administered justice both among his fellow-citizens, and also among the foreigners who resided in Rome. In dignity the Prætor ranked next to the Consul. He had power to alter laws, repeal them, and enact new at pleasure.

Prætoria cohors, Prætorian cohort, a select band of troops forming the general's body guard.

Preciāni, ōrum, a people of Aquitania, who are supposed to have lived at the foot of the Pyrenæi Montes, (*Pyrenees*,) near Mare Cantabrĭcum, (the *Bay of Biscay*.)

Primopīlus, i, (sometimes primus pilus,) the chief centurion of the legion. This name belonged to the first centurion of the first maniple of the Triarii. He was entrusted with the eagle or main standard of the legion; in pay he ranked among the equĭtes, and had a place in the council of war with the consul and tribunes.

Provincia Romāna, the Roman Province; that part of Transalpine Gaul in the possession of the Romans previous to the conquests of Cæsar. It extended along the shore of the Mediterranean, from the Pyrenees to the Alps, and was bounded on its northwest side by the Mount Cebenna, (or *Cevennes*,) and on the north, eastward, by the Ambāni, Sequăni, and Helvetii. In the new division of Gaul afterwards made by Augustus, its boundaries remained as before, but as all Gaul was now become a Roman Province it ceased to be distinguished by that name, and was called Narbonensis, from Narbo its principal city. (See *Narbo*.)

Pulfio, ōnis, (Titus, i,) a Roman centurion of distinguished valor, who, to decide a dispute with L. Varēnus respecting superiority of courage, rushed forth from the camp, when attacked by the Nervii, and displayed great bravery without the fortifications. Nor was his rival for military fame, inferior to him either in bravery or generosity; B. V. Ch. 44. (See *Varenus*.)

R.

Rauraci, ōrum, a people of Gallia Celtĭca. on the northern extremity of Mount Jura. The Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) was their boundary on the east.

Remi, ōrum, a people of Gallia Belgĭca, whose country lay to the north of the Matrŏna, (*Marne*). Their chief town was Durocortŏrum, now *Rheims*

Rhedŏnes, um, a people of Gallia Celtĭca. The Rhedŏnes were one of those nations reckoned among the *Civitātes Armorĭcæ.* Their country is now called *Bretagne.*

Rhenus, i, m. the *Rhine*, a celebrated river of Europe, which takes its rise in Mount Adŭla, (*St. Gothard*) in the country of the Grissons, passes Lacus Brigantīnus, (*Lake of Constance*,) and continues to run nearly west about 75 miles, when it reaches Basti. On leaving this city, it takes a northerly direction and becomes the boundary between France, or the Netherlands, and Germany, till it divides into two branches, which, with the German Sea, formed, what was anciently called, Insŭla Batavōrum, (*Holland*, or the *United Provinces.*) After a course of 600 miles, and receiving several rivers on both banks, the Rhine discharges itself into that part of Mare Atlantĭcum, (the *Atlantic Ocean*,) called Oceănus Germanĭcus, (the *German Sea.*)

Rhodănus, i. m. the *Rhone*, a large and rapid river of Europe, which has its source in Mount la Fourche, near St. Gothard, in the canton of Uri, not more than two leagues south from that of the Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) passes Lacus Lemănus, (the *Lake of Geneva*,) five leagues below which it disappears between two rocks for a considerable way, rises again, flows with great rapidity in a southern direction, and discharges itself by three mouths into that part of the Mediterranean formerly called Gallĭcus Sinus, (the *Gulf of Lyons.*) The course of the Rhone is about 400 miles, during which it falls 5,400 feet. In Strabo's time it was navigable a good way up; but its mouths are now so full of rocks brought down from the mountain by its impetuous current, that no ship can enter them. The Rhone is largest in summer, and is at its greatest height soon after the longest day. This is most probably occasioned by the heat of the sun melting part of the snow on the Alps during the summer months.

Roma, æ, f. *Rome*, one of the most celebrated cities of antiquity, stood on the banks of the Tiber, about fifteen miles from the sea. Romŭlus, from whom the name is derived, laid the foundation of this city on Mons Palatīnus, 15th April, 753 B. C. From a very small beginning it gradually increased, until its circumference, according to Pliny, was not less than twenty miles. After the lapse of many years, Rome became the capital of Italia. (*Italy*,) and, at the commencement of the Christian Era, the known world was in subjection to that gigantic power. It was divided into twenty-four regions or wards, had seven great, and thirteen smaller aqueducts, thirty-seven gates, and six hundred and forty-four tow-

ers on the walls. To ascertain its population when in the height of power, is perhaps impossible; but it could not fall much below four millions.

Roscius, i, (Lucius, i.) a lieutenant, to whom Cæsar gave the command of the third legion, which he was to march into the territories of the Essui.

Rufus, i, (P. Sulpicius, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants, to whom he gave the charge of the port in Gallia, (*France*,) from which he sailed for Britannia, (*Britain*,) and a garrison sufficient to protect it during his absence.

Ruteni, ōrum, a people of Aquitania, on the river Tarnis, (*Tarne.*)

Rutīlus, i, (M. Sempronius, i,) an officer of Cæsar, who had, with T. Labiēnus, the joint command of the two legions which that general ordered to march into the territories of the Sequăni.

S.

Sabinus, i, (Caius Calvisius,) an officer in Cæsar's army, whom he sent into Ætolia, in Græcia, (*Greece*,) with five cohorts and a few men.

Sabīnus, i, (Q. Titurius, i,) a lieutenant in Cæsar's army. He, and L. Auruneuleius Cotta, had the command of the troops which were stationed among the Menapii, and in other parts of Gallia Belgĭca. When in their quarters on the frontiers of the Eburōnes, the artful stratagem of Ambiŏrix, king of that tribe, to cut off these lieutenants and their two legions succeeded, through the credulity and obstinacy of Sabinus. A few of the private soldiers escaped the sword of the Gauls. (See *Cotta*.) This officer is sometimes called simply Titurius, or, Sabīnus.

Sabis, is, m. the *Sambre*, a river of Gallia Belgĭca, which has its rise in what is now called *Picardy*, runs northeast and falls into the Mosa, (*Meuse*,) near *Namur*.

Sagittarii, ōrum, archers; men who fought with bows and arrows, attached to the *velĭtes*. (See *Legio*.) The best archers were the Cretans. The Romans did not use the bow in the early times of the republic, and when introduced they had scarcely any archers except those of the auxiliary troops.

Samarobrīva, æ, f. (*i. e.* the bridge of the Samăra.) *Amiens*, a town of Gallia Belgĭca, on the south bank of the river Samăra, (*Somme.*) It was afterwards called Ambiănum, from its inhabĭtants; hence the present name.

Santŏnes, um, a people of Gallia Celtĭca, to the north of the river Carantŏnus, (*Charente.*) Their chief town was Mediolānum, afterwards Santones, now *Saintes.*

Scaldis, is, the *Scheld*, or the *Scheldt*, a river of Gallia Belgĭca, which takes its rise about fifteen miles south of Camarăcum, (*Cambray*,) in the province of Picardy, runs north, and dividing into two branches, falls into the German Sea. Cæsar erroneously makes it a branch of the Mosa, (*Meuse*,) (B. G. VI. 33.)

Scorpiōnes, a species of military engine foi throwing darts and javelins, similar to the Balista, or probably only another name for the same. (See *Balista.*)

Scutum, i. m. a shield; a part of the defensive armor of the Roman infantry, which they wore on their left arms to protect their bodies against the arrows, darts, and other missile weapons thrown by the enemy. It consisted of thin pieces of wood joined by plates of iron, and covered with thick skin or hide. The most common form was oval, extending to four feet in length and two and a half in breadth. When a soldier had not his shield he was said to fight *nudo corpŏre.*

Sedūni, ōrum, a nation of Helvetia, (*Switzerland*,) on the north bank of the Rhodănus, (*Rhone*,) above Lacus Lemānus, (the *Lake of Geneva.*)

Sedusii, ōrum. a nation of Germany, on the northeast bank of the Rhenus, (*Rhine.*) Their country was watered by the Mœnus, (*Maine.*)

Segŏnax, ăcis, one of the four kings who reigned in Cantium, (*Kent*,) at the time Cæsar invaded Britain.

Segontiăci, ōrum, a British nation on the south of the river Tamĕsis, (*Thames.*) They appear to have been subject to Cassivellaunus, at the time Cæsar attempted to add this island to the Roman empire. (B. V. Ch. 21.)

Segusiāni, ōrum, a people of Gallia Celtĭca, to the west of the Rhodănus, (*Rhone.*) Their country was traversed by the Ligĕris, (*Loire*,) towards the source of that river.

Senŏnes, um, a warlike nation of Gallia Celtĭca, who lived on the Sequăna, (*Seine*,) about 70 miles above Paris.

Septimius, i, (Lucius, i,) a tribune of the soldiers, sent along with Achillas, by Ptolemæus king of Egypt, to murder Pompey, in whose army he had formerly been a centurion.

Sequăna, æ, the *Seine*, a river of Gallia, (*France*,) has its source near Nevers in Bourgogne, runs in a northwest direction, and falls into that part of the Atlantic called Fretum Britannĭcum, (the *British Channel*,) at Havre de Grace. The course of this beautiful and picturesque river extends to 250 miles. Paris, the capital of France, originally a fort on a small island in the Seine, above 120 miles from the sea, now stands on both sides of this river, over which there are, in that city, 12 bridges.

Sequăna, æ, f. a district of Gallia, (*France*,) bounded on the east by Mons Jura, (*Mount Jura*,) which separated it from the country of the Helvetii; on the north by Mount Vosegus, (*Vauge*,) which divided it from that of the Leuci; on the west by the country of the Ædui and Lingŏnes; and on the south by that of the Ambarri and Allobrŏges.

Sequăni ōrum, (sing. Sequănus, i,) the people of Sequăna. This nation headed one of the factions of the Gallic states, and the Ædui the other.

Sesuvii, ōrum, (or Sesovii,) one of the Armoric states in Gaul, the situation of which is not known.

Sextius, i, (Publius S. Bacŭlus,) a centurion of the first rank in Cæsar's army, in the Gallic wars.

Sextius, i, (Titus, i,) one of the three lieutenants whom Cæsar sent to augment his army, in the sixth year of the war in Gallia, (*France.*)

Sibutzātes, um, a people of Aquitania, whose country lay along the Atur, (*Adour.*) Of their history nothing is known.

Sigambri, ōrum, a German nation, who lived on the east bank of the Rhine, to the south of the river Rura, (*Roir.*)

Silānus, i, (Marcus, i.) one of Cæsar's lieutenants, whom he ordered to levy troops for the war in Gallia, (*France.*)

Silius, i, (Titus, i,) an officer whom P. Crassus sent to the Venĕti, to procure grain and forage with Velanius. But the Venĕti, seized them in expectation of regaining their hostages by this measure.

Sotiātes, ium, a people of Aquitania, whose country extended along the Garumna, (*Garonne.*) Their territories formed part of what was afterwards called Novempopulāna, bounded by the Garonne, Pyrenees, and Bay of Biscay.

Suessiōnes, Suessōnes, um, a people of Gallia Belgĭca, whose country was bounded on the south by the Matrŏna, (*Marne.*) Although a brave and powerful nation, they were obliged to submit to the arms of Cæsar.

Suevi, ōrum, a nation of Germania, (*Germany,*) who inhabited a large tract of country, Suevia, æ, f. lying between the Albis *Elbe*, and the Vistŭla, (*Vistula,*) on the northern side of Silva, Hercynia. They made many inroads on the Roman territories.

Sulpitius, i, (Publius, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants. Q. Tullius Cicĕro, and P. Sulpitius, were stationed among the Ædui, at Cabillo, v. Cabillōnum, (*Chalons,*) and Matisco, (*Mascon,*) on the Arar, (*Saone.*) These two officers were entrusted with the care of provisions.

T.

Tamesis, or Thamesis, is, m. the *Thames*, one of the largest rivers of England, rises in Cotswold hills in the western extremity of Gloucestershire, runs eastward, and after passing through London, falls into the German Sea. With respect to commerce, this is the first river in the world. It is navigable about 130 miles, and the tide flows up as far as Richmond in Surrey, which taking the course of the river, is 70 miles.

Tarbelli ōrum, a people of Aquitania, whose country extended along the sea-coast, from the Pyrenæi Montes, (*Pyrenees,*) to the territories of the Cocosātes.

Tarusātes, ium, a people of Aquitania. The Tarbelli were between them and the Bay of Biscay.

Tasgetius, i, a nobleman of the nation of the Carnūtes, whose fore fathers had possessed the sovereignty of that state.

Taximagŭlus. i, one of the four kings who reigned over Cantium. (*Kent.*) They seem to have all been under the power of Cassivellaunus.

Tectosăges, um, and Tectosăgi, ōrum, a very valiant people of Gallia, a branch of the Volcæ, near the Pyrenees. (See *Volcæ.*)

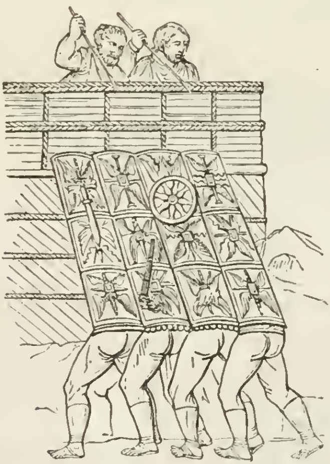
Tenchthĕri,ōrum,a people of Germany, on the river Rhenus, (*Rhine,*) south of the Sigambri.

Terrasidius, i, (Titus, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants, whom he sent into the country of the Esubii.

Testūdo, ĭnis, f. I. A wooden tower used by the Romans for protecting the soldiers when employed in undermining the walls of a town, or in battering them with the ram, (See *Aries.*) It was erected of wood, and covered with hides, earth, or any other kind of substance which is with difficulty set on fire.

II. When the soldiers of a company advanced to an assault, they frequently stood close together, and formed a shade or screen of their shields, to protect their bodies against the missile weapons, thrown by the enemy from the walls. This defence they also called *Testūdo,* from the resemblance which the locked shields had to the shell or covering of the tortoise, (See the following wood cut,) but it must not be confounded with the tower or mantelet just described.

TESTUDO.



Tigurīnus Pagus, one of the four cantons or districts, into which Helvetia (*Switzerland,*) is divided according to Cæsar, compre-

hending the modern cantons *Zurich*, *Schwitz*, *Schaffhausen*, and the lands of the *Abbey of St. Gal.*

Tigurīni, ōrum, the people of Pagus Tigurinus.

Titus, i, a common prænomen among the Romans.

Titurius, i, (Quintus T. Sabīnus,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants, often called simply, Titurius, killed by Ambiorix. (See *Aurunculeius.*)

Tolōsa, æ, *Thoulouse*, or *Toulouse*, a town of Aquitania, beautifully situated on the north bank of Garumna. Tolōsa was one of the most flourishing cities of Gaul, afterwards the residence of a Roman colony, and, at a later period, the metropolis of the Visigoths.

Tolosātes, ium, the inhabitants of Tolōsa.

Trebius, i, (Marcus T. Gallius,) an officer sent by Cæsar to the Curiosolitæ, to procure provisions.

Trevĭri, ōrum, or (sing. Trevir, ĭri,) a nation of Gallia Belgĭca, between the Mosella, (*Moselle*,) and Silva Arduenna. Their chief city, Augusta Trevirōrum, now *Triers*, or *Treves*, stands on the east bank of the Moselle, over which it has a large bridge.

Tribūni, ōrum, (sing. Tribūnus, i,) milĭtum, Tribunes of the soldiers; officers in the Roman army, who had the command of a division of a legion. To take care of the works and camp, to communicate the watchword to the guards, and to give judgment in certain cases, formed the duty of the military tribunes. Romŭlus first appointed the tribunes, to whom he gave that name from their being only *three* in number, one out of each *tribe*. But afterwards, each legion had six tribunes. The right of nomination belonged first to the kings, then to the consuls, or dictators, and, at a later period, to the people.

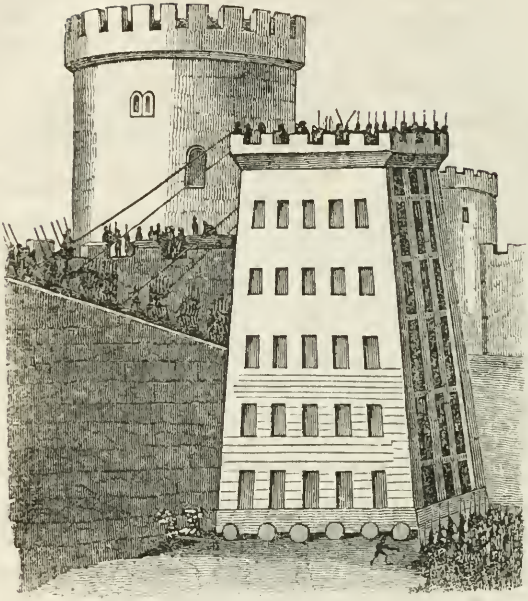
Trinobantes, um, a nation of ancient Britain, inhabiting the counties now called *Essex* and *Middlesex*. Cassivellaunus was their king at the time Cæsar invaded this island.

Tulingi, ōrum, a people of Germany, between the rivers Danubius, (*Danube*,) and Rhenus, (*Rhine*.)

Turōnes, um, or, i, ōrum, a people of Gallia Celtĭca, on the banks of the river *Loire*, about 140 miles from the sea. Their name is perpetuated by the modern appellation of the country, *Touraine*, and their city *Tours*, anciently Turōnes.

Turris, is, a tower. The towers used in the Roman military works were of two kinds, the fixed and the moveable. The fixed towers were erected on the *agger*, or mound, and were raised sufficiently high to overlook and command the enemy's ramparts, and from them showers of arrows, darts, and other missiles were thrown by means of various engines. The moveable towers (See wood cut, next page,) were pushed forward on rollers or wheels fixed below. To prevent them from being set on fire they were covered with raw hides and pieces of coarse woollen cloth. They were of immense size, sometimes forty or fifty feet square, and higher than the walls, or even the towers of the city. When brought up against the walls, a place was seldom able to stand out long. Sometimes they were provided with a species of drop or platform, which being let down reached from the tower to the top of the wall and formed a species of bridge by which the assailants took possession of the walls.

TURRIS.



U.

Ubii, ōrum, a people of Germany, whose territories were on the Rhine opposite to the Sigambri.

Unelli, ōrum, a people of Gallia Celtĭca, on the northwest of what is now called *Normandy*. Their country was bounded on three sides by the sea. Their chief town was Coriallum, (*Gouril.*) Off the coast of the Unelli, lay the islands of Cæsarea, (*Jersey*,) Sarnia, (*Guernsey*,) and Redūna, (*Alderney*,) which have long been in possession of the British.

Usipĕtes, um, or Usipii, ōrum, a people of Germany, on the right bank of the Rhenus, (*Rhine.*)

V.

Vahalis, is, m. *Wahal*, or, *Waal*, the left branch of the Rhenus, (*Rhine.*) It joins the Mosa, (*Meuse*,) at the island of Voorn, and falls into the German sea below the Breil.

Valerius, i, (Caius V. Cabūrus,) a chief man among the Gauls in Provincia, whose original name appears to have been Cabūrus.

On being made a Roman citizen, by C. Valerius Flaccus, he, as was usual, took the name of his patron.

Valerius, i, (Caius, V. Flaccus,) a noble Roman, who conferred the freedom of the city on C. Valerius Cabūrus.

Valerius i, (Caius V. Procillus,) the son of C. Valerius Cabūrus, was the chief man in Prŏvincia Cæsar, on account of his knowledge of the Gallic language, sent him and M. Mettius to hold an interview with Ariovistus, king of Germany. The German king imprisoned them both, but they were afterwards rescued by the Romans during the flight of their army.

Vallum, the ramparts of a Roman encampment, composed of the earth dug out from the ditch, and having sharp stakes stuck into it to keep it together. (See *Castra.*)

Vangiŏnes, um, a people of Gallia Belgĭca, on the west bank of the Rhenus, (*Rhine.*) They were originally from Germany, and, at one time, had probably lands on both sides of that river. Their chief town was Borbetomăgus, now *Worms.*

Velanius, i, (Quintus, i,) sent by Cæsar with Silius to procure corn from the Venĕti, who detained them in order to receive the hos tages which they had given to that general.

Velauni, ōrum, a small tribe in Gallia Celtĭca, on the sources of the Ligĕris. Their chief city was Anderitium, now *Javoli*, or *Javoux.*

Velĭtes, light-armed troops. They were equipped with bows, slings, seven javelins or spears with slender points like arrows, so that, when thrown, they bent, and could not easily be returned by the enemy; a spanish sword, having both edge and point; a round buckler (*parma,*) about three feet in diameter, made of wood and covered with leather; and a helmet or casque for the head, generally made of the skin of some wild beast. When the army was drawn up in order of battle, the *velĭtes* were placed in the spaces or intervals between the maniples, or else on the wings. (See *Legio.*)

Velocasses. (See *Bellocasses.*)

Venĕti, ōrum, a nation in the west part of Gallia Celtĭca, whose chief town was Venetiă. Their country lay on the sea coast, northwest from the mouth of the Liger, (*Loire.*)

Verăgri, ōrum, a people who lived in that part of Provincia, now called *Dauphine,* on the south bank of the Rhodănus, (*Rhone,*) above Lacus Lemanus, (the *Lake of Geneva.*)

Verbigĕnus, i. (sc. pagus,) or, Urbigĕnus, one of the four divisions of Helvetia, (*Switzerland,*) included the cantons of *Friburg* and *Bern,* with the districts of *Neufchatel* and *Vallengin.*

Vergobrĕtus, i, the title of the supreme magistrate among the Ædui, who was created yearly, and had the power of life and death over his countrymen.

Veromandui, ōrum, a people of Gallia Belgĭca, between the Nervii and Suessiones. Their chief town was Augusta Veromanduōrum, (*St. Quentin,*) on the right bank of the Samăra, (*Somme.*) Like most of the other nations of Gallia Belgĭca, they were originally from Germany.

Vertĭco. ōnis, a nobleman of the Nervii, who was in Cicero's camp, when attacked by the Eburōnes, and prevailed on a slave to carry a letter to Cæsar. communicating information of that event.

Verudoctius, i, one of the Helvetii. He and Nameius were at the head of the embassy sent to Cæsar, requesting permission to march through Provincia.

Vesontio, ōnis, f. *Besançon*, the chief town of the Sequăni. on the east bank of the river Dubis, (*Doux*)

Vigilia, æ, f. a watch, the time a Roman soldier remained on guard during the night. Of these there were four, each three hours long. (See Gr. App. I.)

Vineæ, ārum, f. a shed, used by the Romans for protecting the soldiers in besieging towns. It consisted of four upright posts, upon which was fixed a roof of hurdle or wicker-work. Above the hurdles were spread raw hides, a little earth, &c. to protect it from fire. The size of the vineæ differed according to circumstances. The whole rested upon wheels, so that this mantelet would be easily moved, and under it the besiegers either worked the ram, (See *Aries*,) or tried to undermine the walls. (See *Pluteus*.)

Virdomărus, one of the Ædui, more distinguished by political influence, than by noble birth. Cæsar, at the request of Divitiăcus, raised him to the highest dignity in the state.

Viridovix, icis, the leading man among the Unelli, who headed a powerful army in an attack on Sabīnus, one of Cæsar's lieutenants stationed among them, who defeated Viridovix by an artful stratagem.

Vocates, ium, a people of Aquitania, supposed by some to be the same with Vasātes, whose territories lay on the south bank of the *Garonne*, about ninety miles from the mouth of that river. Their chief town was *Cossio*.

Vocio, ōnis, king of the Norĭci, to whose sister Ariovistus was married.

Vocontii, ōrum, a nation of Gaul, on the banks of a small stream called Druna, (*Drome*,) which falls into the Rhodănus, (*Rhone*,) about 100 miles from the mouth of that river. Their chief town was Dia, *Die*.

Vosĕgus, i, or Vogĕsus, m. *Vauge*, is a branch of Mount Jura, stretching in a northern direction, in which are the sources of the Arar, (*Saone*.) the Mosa, (*Meuse*.) and the Mosella. (*Moselle*.)

Volcatius Tullus, Volcatii Tulli, an officer, who, according to Cæsar, sustained, at Dyrrachium, (*Durazzo*,) with three cohorts, the charge of a whole legion.

Volcæ, ārum, a numerous and powerful nation of Gaul, between the Garumna, (*Garonne*.) and the Rhodănus, (*Rhone*,) divided into the Arecomĭci, and Tectosăges, q. v.

Volusēnus, i, (Caius, i,) an officer whom Cæsar sent with a galley to survey the coast of Britain opposite Gaul, and to acquire as correct information as he could, respecting the harbors and landing places, previously to his sailing against that island.

[THE END.]

Farmer, Brace & Co.'s Publications.

THE STUDENTS' SERIES FOR READING AND SPELLING.

1 ...

...nce, that the
...spelling in
...em, while it
...chool, says it
...of teachers in

...hem more than
M. S. HULL.
W. FRISBEE.

...the New York
...ed by eminent
...nd a variety of
...oted.

...udet and Rev.
..., and to aid in
...est academies
...e character of

...eminent teach-
...in the form of
...High Schools,

...t substantial
...most reason-

...CO.,
...RD & Co.,
...REET, N. Y.